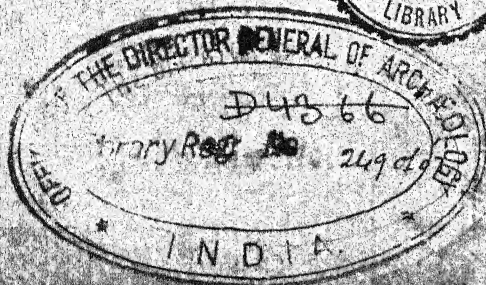


THE  
HISTORY  
OF  
TIMUR-BEC,  
Commonly call'd  
TAMERLAIN.

954.023

*che*





CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL  
LIBRARY, NEW DELHI.

Acc. No ..... 12055  
Date ..... 22-11-1961  
Call No ..... 954.023/che

*Just Publish'd,*

**T**HE History of *Genghis* can the Great, first Emperor of the antient *Moguls* and *Tartars*; in four Books: Containing his Life, Advancement and Conquests; with a short History of his Successors to the present Time: the Manners, Customs and Laws of the antient *Moguls* and *Tartars*; and the Geography of the val Countries of *Mogolistan*, *Turquestan*, *Capschac*, *Tugurestan*, and the Eastern and Western *Tartary*. Collected from several Oriental Authors, and *European Travellers*; whose Names, with an Abridgment of their Lives, are added to this Book. By the late *M. Petis de la Croix* Senior, Secretary and Interpreter to the King in the *Turkish* and *Arabick* Languages. And now faithfully translated into *English*.

---



---

T H E  
French editor's  
P R E F A C E.

**O**F ALL the oriental pieces which the late M. Petis de la Croix the son has translated, there is not one which more deserves to see the light, than this we now present the public, for which the learned world hath express'd so much impatience. The remarks he hath left behind him, to instruct the reader in several obscure passages, will serve for the ground-work of this preface; in which we shall often make use of his own words.

M. DE LA CROIX having found a manuscript of the history of Genghiz-Can, the most illustrious of the ancestors of Timur-Bec, extracted from the best authors by his late father; and considering it might give much insight into the history of Timur-Bec; the respect due to an author so nearly ally'd to him, and the connection between the two histories, engag'd him to publish that history of Genghiz-Can; in which are related some of the most considerable transactions of the thirteenth century, as this of Timur-Bec is one of the principal ornaments of the two following. The conformity of the subject, and the

greatness of the events, will render the reading of this history very agreeable to those particularly, who are acquainted with that of Genghiz-Can. Here they will find, among the most remarkable particulars, an exact description of the roads of the empire of the Moguls, and vast light into the geography of the greatest part of Asia, with a continuation of the history of the Mogul and Tartar emperors. And tho from the death of Genghiz-Can \*, to the birth of Timur-Bec †, there is an interval of one hundred and ten years, during which time twenty one emperors reign'd, who descended from Zagatai-Can the son of Genghiz-Can, of whose history the Europeans are ignorant †; yet this defect has in some measure been supply'd, and the reader conducted as far as the time of Timur-Bec: for M. de la Croix the son has added to the history of Genghiz-Can a list † of those emperors, with an abridgment of the principal points of their history.

I.  
Who the  
author is,  
of whom  
we publish  
the trans-  
lation.

THE author of the history, of which we now publish a translation, is a writer universally applauded by the Orientals, and even by those who have written on the same subject; which is indeed uncommon. They agree that he is the most valuable of those who have written the history of Timur-Bec. Condemir, among the rest, prefers him before all the writers of the history of the Moguls and Tartars; as well for the delicacy of the Persian language, as for the

---

\* An historian, nam'd Taschkunt, has written upon this subject; but M. de la Croix assures us that this work has not yet appear'd in Europe.

† This list is extracted out of the chronological history call'd Lubtanic, and from those of Condemir and Hussein Efendi.

force of his expressions, and the beauty of his style.

HADGI Calfa, a modern Turk, in his Oriental library, says that his name is Moulla Scherefeddin Ali Yezdi, native of Yezd, a city of Persia: that he died in the year of the Hegira 850: An. Dom. 1456. that he call'd his book, *Zafar Namé Emir Timur Gourcan*, that is to say, The history of the conquests of prince Timur, son-in-law of the Can: that this book was publish'd at Chiraz, the antient capital of Persia, by order of Ibrahim Sultan, son of Charot, son of Timur-Bec: and that he finish'd it in the year of Christ 1424, that is, nineteen years after the death of Timur-Bec, which happen'd in the year of Christ 1405. He adds, that this book has been since translated into the Turkish language by Hafiz Mehemmed Bin Ahmed Alagemi. He also says, that our author had before compos'd a first volume, under the title of *Moucaddamey Zafar Namé*, that is, Preliminaries of the history of conquests: which book of preliminaries properly contains the history of the Oulous, or Mogul hords<sup>3</sup> and familys, who follow'd Zagatai-Can, son of Genghiz-Can, in the countrys which his father assign'd him as his share, and which for that reason have ever since been nam'd Zagatai. These hords, being distributed into a great number of Tomans<sup>4</sup>, and govern'd by

---

<sup>3</sup> Hords among the Moguls and Tartars are the same as tribes among the Israelites and Arabians.

<sup>4</sup> Toman is a country given to a hord or family, the chief of which possesses it as a sovereign, and governs it according to the laws of Genghiz-Can, furnishing ten thousand men to the Can or emperor. Toman also signifies a sum of fifty abassis, a piece of money, each of which in Persia is worth eighteen French sols.



chiefs selected out of the most illustrious familys of the Moguls, form'd the empire which bore the name of Zagatai Can, of which Transoxiana was both the seat and center.

If this history had been deliver'd down to us, it wou'd have serv'd very well to connect the histories of Genghiz-Can and Timur-Bec: but the list of the Mogul emperors, which is join'd to the former, may supply that defect.

II.  
True ori-  
gin of Ti-  
mur-Bec.

A GENEALOGY so well attested as that of Timur-Bec, gave room to M. Petis de la Croix to refute a prejudic'd notion, which almost every one has entertain'd till this time, that Timur-Bec was a sort of an adventurer, and had rais'd himself by robberys and violences. He tells us, that these are calunnys and impostures, which have been publish'd by authors of romances, and Turkish writers who were his enemies, and envious at his glory: among whom is Ahmed Bin Arabschah, translated into French by M. Vazier. They make this prince a shepherd, and a person of little consequence, who, as they assure us, rais'd his fortune by robbing on the high-way. They have disguis'd his name, to make one which shou'd give us a base and despicable idea of this prince: to which purpose they have feign'd that he was lam'd by an arrow, with which he was shot by a certain shepherd, whose sheep he was stealing. Thus they have alter'd the name of Bec, which signifies prince, into that of Lenc, which signifies lame: for it is an easy change, in the writing and pronunciation of the Orientals, to say Timur-Lenc<sup>3</sup>, instead of

<sup>3</sup> To make this change, we need only take away the points under the e of Bec, and place one over it, which will become an n. Then carry the B a little higher, and it will be L. Thus for Bec we read Lenc.

Timur-Bec. The Europeans have form'd the name of Tamerlain and Tambourlan, out of Timur-Lenc, which is compos'd of his true name, and a ridiculous nick-name. As Timur-Bec had conquer'd the Turks and Arabians of Syria, and had even taken the Sultan Bajazet prisoner, it is no wonder that he has been misrepresented by the historians of those nations, who, in despite of truth, and against the dignity of history, have fallen into great excesses upon this subject<sup>6</sup>. We find by reading Condemir, and several other historians, that what they have written concerning the origin and adventures of Timur-Bec, are mere fables, which their prejudice against this prince put 'em upon inventing. Wherefore setting aside the fable, we will keep to the name of Timur-Bec, and drop the supposititious name of Tamerlain.

W e come now to speak of this translation, and the copy from which it was done. When M. Patis de la Croix was in the Levant, he was very diligent in attaining a knowledge of the best authors. It was not long before he heard of our historian, from those learned men with whom he convers'd: and he soon found the value of it, when he perus'd it himself, as he says, with a singular satisfaction. When he was at Ispahan, the capital of Persia, he purchas'd a very handsome copy, which he brought to Paris, and ex-

IH.

The method observ'd in this translation.

---

<sup>6</sup> These prejudic'd historians have invented the fable of the iron cage, in which they say our conqueror put Bajazet: and they have been follow'd in this by several Europeans. But we see the folly of this in our author his contemporary, who on the contrary tells us, that Timur always treated Bajazet as his equal, and render'd him all the honors due to the greatest princes.

plain'd several passages of it to M. Colbert. This minister conceiv'd so great an idea of it, and judg'd of its worth so well, by the account which M. de la Croix gave him, that he order'd him to translate it into French. He accordingly began it, but was interrupted by the voyages<sup>7</sup> and negotiations, which the king order'd him to perform, and in which he was employ'd for several years. Therefore not being able to finish his translation before the death of M. Colbert, he presented it to the marquis of Seignelay. This minister, whose penetration and fine genius are known to all the world, found the matter of this history so delightful, that he judg'd it worthy of the king's knowledg and perusal. His majesty was pleas'd to hear the most beautiful passages of it read by this minister, who had discover'd a conformity between the great actions of the Gallic hero, and those of the Tartarian conqueror, abating the excess of rigor and severity, which he cou'd not but acknowledg and blame in the latter\*.

---

<sup>7</sup> His voyages, which were eleven in all, were in the fleets which the king sent several years together against the republics of Barbary, and the ports dependent on Morocco, when his majesty resolv'd to reduce 'em to reason, and make 'em demand a peace; as they have since done. There is a short account of these voyages at the end of this preface.

\* The reader is left to judg what color the French editor had for paying this compliment to Lewis XIV. for tho Timur might persecute those who did not believe in MAHOMET, in case they submitted not to him; yet we don't find he ever persecuted any of the followers of that prophet, tho differing from himself in some points of doctrine: while 'tis notorious, that Lewis rais'd bloody persecutions against vast numbers who believ'd in JESUS CHRIST, altho they were his own subjects, willing to live quietly under him; nay, had been instrumental in setting the crown upon his head.

M. DE LA CROIX made a literal version of his author, which he plac'd over-against the Persian text: but however prejudic'd he was in favor of a language, which was in a manner natural to him (as he us'd to say) and which he extremely lov'd; yet he foresaw the French reader cou'd never digest the figurative and frequent poetic expressions of the Persian style, with which this work is every where intermix'd. The truth of the history, and the most beautiful thoughts, we find wrap'd up in strain'd metaphors, which our manners and the genius of our language can't bear. This historian in that has conform'd to the way of writing of his countrymen, us'd to the boldest hyperboles and metaphors: besides that he wrote for people of the same taste and humor, and his subject was susceptible of all the most rich and beautiful ornaments of the Persian language and poetry, we may say that he hath display'd in this work all the vivacity which the Orientals affect in their expressions. But all this is so foreign to our genius, that tho M. de la Croix paid a decent respect to expressions of that nature in the sacred writings, and even bore with something like them in the style of Homer; yet he would not tire the reader's patience with those flourishes of Tartarian rhetoric.

HE therefore thought it best to make his version truly French, that is, rather to give the sense and thoughts of his author, than his turns and expressions, always retrenching what is not conformable to the taste of our nation: and in doing so, he hath met with the approbation of several learned men.

THE Mahometan writers are oblig'd by their law to place the name of God at the beginning of all their works, to give praise to God, and  
after-



afterwards to bless Mahomet<sup>s</sup>, whom they usually call the seal of the prophets, believing none other will come after him. M. de la Croix wou'd not translate this form, with which the author begins his discourse, or his introduction to the history: and he has also suppress'd the elogium which he makes on God in Persian poetry, after having first done it in prose; and another elogium<sup>s</sup> on Mahomet, to whom he gives very pompous titles. This is all too full of figures, and of a very great length. In fine, in this part of the work, which is a sort of preface of the historian, M. de la Croix has retrench'd what appear'd too allegorical and foreign, that he might come to the essential part of the discourse, and enter as soon as possible upon the principal subject.

THESE are the reasons which have engag'd our translator to follow in his version the method we have mention'd: which reasons are all taken out of his own papers. It is not to be thought that they who are fondest of the literal translation of an author, wou'd have done otherwise, if they had had a like piece to translate.

IV.  
The Mo-  
gul epo-  
cha.

IN the same papers we find some short notes, as to the epocha of the Moguls. As it is necessary to the understanding of the different epochas in the life of Timur-Bec, we have inserted them here, according to the design of M. Petis de la Croix.

\* They call this false prophet the saint of saints, the strong by way of eminence, the great apostle, the royal prophet, the legislator, &c.

\* The author's preface likewise contains a figurative elogium on Timur-Bec; which signifies nothing more than that he is going to begin the history of his hero, whom he styles the conqueror of the universe.

THE Moguls divide their time by cycles of twelve years, to each of which years they give the name of an animal, always beginning to count and name them in the same manner, as will easily be understood by this small table.

Mogul years.	Christian years.	Mahometan years.
The Mouse	1369	771
The Ox	1370	772
The Leopard	1371	773
The Hare	1372	774
The Crocodile	1373	775
The Serpent	1374	776
The Horse	1375	777
The Sheep	1376	778
The Monkey	1377	779
The Hen	1378	780
The Dog	1379	781
The Hog	1380	782

THE Persians to this present time make use of this epocha, especially in their registers and public acts. Their copper-coins also bear the figure of the animal, which answers to the year they were stamp'd in. As to the origin of this epocha, call'd either Catayan, and Yugurian, or Turkish, Tartarian, and Mogul; we learn from Oulouc-Bec, son of Charoc, son of Timur-Bec, a learned prince, and the greatest astrologer of his time, that the astronomers of China and Turkestan constituted a cycle of twelve animals, as well for their years, as for their days, and parts of days, to which they gave the names specify'd in the table above: and he professes that he is ignorant both of the origin and constitution of this epocha. M. de la Croix refers those who

are desirous to look farther into this matter, to Mr. John Greaves a learned Englishman, upon the most noted epochas handed down by Oulouc-Bec, printed at London in 1650.

V. AFTER M. Petis de la Croix had finish'd the translation of this history of Timur-Bec, he had the sight of a Spanish book printed at Sevil one hundred and thirty years before, which bears authentic testimony to some facts related by the Persian historian. This book is the relation of a journey and embassy of Ruy Gonzales de Clavijo, who was sent ambassador extraordinary to Timur-Bec by Henry III. king of Castile; of which embassy our Persian historian makes mention. This ambassador in his relation gives an account of another embassy from the same king to the same Tartar emperor, which preceded his. In the first were two ambassadors, one nam'd Payo Gomez de Sotomayor, and the other Herman Sanchez de Palacuelos, both gentlemen of the king's household. They had a very handsom reception from Timur-Bec, and were at the battle wherein the Ottoman emperor Bajazet was taken prisoner. Timur-Bec made 'em several presents; and when he sent 'em back, he order'd a great lord of his court, nam'd Mehemet Alcagi, to accompany 'em, in quality of his ambassador to the king of Castile, giving him a letter for this prince, with abundance of rich presents. The letter contain'd compliments and marks of friendship, and gave advice of the victory lately obtain'd against Bajazet, and the cause of that war, appealing to the Castilian ambassadors as witnesses of that great action. Among the presents were two ladys of very great beauty, taken out of Bajazet's seraglio after his defeat; one of whom was daughter of court

John an Hungarian prince, and niece to the king of Hungary, nam'd Dona Angelina de Grecia; and the other was a Greek nam'd Dona Maria. These ladys were respected at the court of Castile, and met with a fortune futable to their quality: Dona Angelina marry'd Diego Gonzales de Contreras, regidor of Segovia; and Dona Maria espous'd Payo Gomez de Sotomayor, one of the ambassadors. The tomb of the former is yet to be seen in the principal chappel of St. John of Segovia; the other is inter'd in a monastery three leagues from Pon-tevedra.

IN the mean while the Tartar ambassador having acquitted himself of his commission, the king of Castile sent a second embassy to Timur-Bec, the chief of which was this Ruy Gonzalez de Clavijo, a gentleman of his bed-chamber, author of the Spanish ' book, we have mention'd, and from whom all these facts are taken. He departed from Madrid, accompany'd by two colleagues and the Tartarian ambassador, the 21<sup>st</sup> of May 1403, and he return'd into Spain the 24<sup>th</sup> of March 1406. After having related his journey thro Natolia and Persia, as far as Samar-cand, he gives us the particulars of his first audience, and afterwards describes the magnificent

---

The title of it is, *Historia del gran Tamerlan, e itinerario y enarracion del viage, y relacion de la embaxada que Ruy Gonzalez de Clavijo le hizo per mandado del muy poderoso senenor rey don Henrique al tercero de Castilla, &c. En Sevilla 1582.*

In English,

*The history of Tamerlain the great; and a journal or narration of a voyage, or relation of an embassy which Ruy Gonzalez de Clavijo perform'd by command of the most potent prince Henry III. king of Castile. At Sevil 1582.*

feasts



feasts and banquets, which Timur-Bec gave on the marriage of his children, and to which these ambassadors were invited: which is entirely conformable to what the Persian historian says upon that matter. The single point, in which the Spanish relation varies from the Persian history, is on the subject of the audience of leave. The Castilian ambassador assures us that he never had one, because Timur-Bec, as he says, died in that city about this time: when according to our author, the ambassadors of Spain and Egypt had their audience of leave, and were sent back with a great many rich presents; and after their departure Timur-Bec set out himself for Samarcand to wage war in China, and did not die till six months after in the town of Otrar, beyond the Jaxartes, on the road to China. If we may suspect the ambassador of a great king, of having base and self-interested views, we may here say that the Spanish lord might perhaps have his reasons for concealing from the king his master this last audience, and suppress it in his relation. However it be, this contradiction cannot easily be reconcil'd at this distance of time.

VI. WE have promis'd in the former part of this preface to give a short account of the studys of M. Petis de la Croix, and of his voyages and negotiations, wherein he was employ'd by the king. We will begin with his voyage to the Levant, which he undertook, only to make a progress in the learning of that country.

M. PETIS de la Croix the father, who had been secretary and interpreter to the king from the year 1650, and had worthily executed the same for forty-five years, having learnt that M. Colbert, minister and secretary of state, had a design to send into the Levant a young man



man, to gain a perfect knowledge of the language, manners, history, sciences, arts, and religion of the Orientals, recommended his own son to him; who, besides his great progress in the eastern languages, knew most of those things which were necessary for a person who would travel with advantage, as the mathematics, geography, astronomy, music, drawing, &c. The minister consented; and sent him, by the king's order, into Syria, Persia and Turkey. To this end he left Paris in the year 1670: and, tho not quite sixteen years old, yet well furnish'd by the wise counsels and learned instructions of his father, and a good measure of piety and virtue which he had always a regard to, he embark'd at Thoulon; and after a dangerous voyage landing at Alexandretta, he went from thence to Aleppo, where he staid several years. He was afterwards at Ispahan, the capital and residence of the kings of Persia; and after that at Constantinople. We may naturally suppose that he made choice of these three cities for his residence; because in them a person meets with all the helps, which can be desir'd to advance his studys. He there translated into French several oriental pieces, and some French books into the oriental languages. The life of the French king as far as 1673, and his campaign in 1672, which he publish'd in Arabic, made a great noise in those countrys: every one was willing to have copys of 'em, and they were dispers'd thro a great part of the east. During his stay at Aleppo, the sieur Dupont, French consul in that city, made use of him in carrying on the king's affairs; as did afterwards messieurs de Nointel

and de Guilleragues, ambassadors from France to the Port.

AFTER ten years stay in the Levant, M. Colbert consented to his return home: he arriv'd at Paris at the end of 1680, and gave that minister an exact account of his whole voyage, and the commissions sent to him into the Levant from court. The king himself was pleas'd to hear him explain some of the oriental books (of which there are great numbers in the royal library) when his majesty came to Paris to see it in 1681.

M. DE LA CROIX, after his return, design'd to apply himself more than ever to the oriental tongues, and clear the greatest difficultys in 'em: but the king's affairs call'd him another way. In 1681 he translated the treaty between France and the king of Morocco. In 1682 he was sent to Morocco with the commission of secretary and interpreter in the royal navy, and in quality of secretary to M. de Saint-Amand, ambassador from his majesty to Moula Ismael king of Morocco. He pronounc'd the ambassador's speech in Arabic before that prince, in so elegant and polite a style, that both he and his whole court declar'd, that he understood and spoke their language with more purity and politeness than themselves, tho in this kingdom it is spoke best. That prince had several conversations with him in the night, on the grandeur of the king and kingdom of France, and upon history, and religion.

THE two following years, *messieurs du Quesne, de Tourville, and d'Amfreville*, lieutenants-general of his majesty's fleets, successively beg'd of him to accompany 'em in the war against the republic of Algiers; with which generals he made

made seven voyages. He serv'd there in the negotiation for peace in 1684, and translated the treaty into the Turkish language, which he read in a full Divan. He caus'd the title of Padischa, which signifies emperor, to be inserted in the registers of Algiers, instead of Cral, which signifies a petty prince, the title they had given to the French king till that time. One of the conditions of the treaty was, that the republic of Algiers shou'd send a solemn embassy to beg his majesty's pardon. M. de la Croix accompany'd this ambassador, nam'd Safar, into France, and explain'd to the king the famous harangue, wherein this ambassador, in the name of the Divan, did in effect beg pardon. It has been printed in many parts of Europe, and been the subject of a medal which was struck upon it, with this motto, *Africa supplex*.

IN 1685 he accompany'd another envoy of Algiers, nam'd Boudarba, into France, and pronounc'd his compliment to the king, when the said ambassador presented his majesty with twenty-five beautiful Barbary horses from the Dey Mézomorro.

THE same year he embark'd in the squadron which the king sent twice to Tunis, under the command of the marshal d'Estrées. These infidels desir'd a peace, which was granted 'em. M. de la Croix translated the conditions, and publish'd 'em in a full Divan, as he had done before at Algiers. We obtain'd by this treaty a reimbursement of three hundred thousand livres to the king.

FROM Tunis the fleet was sent against Tripoli in Barbary, where the fear of the king's arms had the same success as at Tunis and Algiers. The Tripolitans sued for a peace, and obtain'd



tain'd it. M. de la Croix having successfully negotiated it, he translated, read, and publish'd the articles in the Divan of Tripoli. By this treaty we obtain'd a reimbursement of six hundred thousand livres. On this occasion, as on many others, he gaye a proof of his fidelity. He was offer'd a considerable sum of money, to put in the treaty crowns of Tripoli, instead of crowns of France; which cou'd never have been known, but wou'd have produc'd the difference of more than one hundred thousand livres. The marshal d' Estrées gave an account of it to the king at his return; as the marquis de Seignelai did of a secret negotiation, carry'd on by M. de la Croix alone, with the Arabian princes of the country of Tripoli, to join their forces with the king's at the first signal, if his majesty wou'd have permitted that city to be taken.

IN 1687 he negotiated a treaty at Morocco, under the duke de Mortemart, with the Alcaid Ali chief minister for maritime affairs.

IN fine, he manag'd, by the immediate orders of the ministers and secretaries of state, the affairs of the ambassadors and envoys of Morocco, Constantinople, Algiers, Tunis and Tripoli, who were sent into France, and explain'd to the king their harangues, compliments, and letters, from 1680 to his death; except in some audiences, wherein his father perform'd the ordinary functions of his post in his majesty's service.

IT is remarkable, that never any interpreter before M. de la Croix the son, translated the answers out of French into Arabic, Turkish, or Persian, in a style esteem'd in the Levant and Africa, and sutable to the dignity of our monarch.



narch. This he thought exceeding difficult, and always said he never cou'd have acquir'd it without very great study.

IN 1692, the chancellor having obtain'd for him of the king the Arabic professorship in the royal college, and at the same time the reversion of the antient post of interpreter to the king in Arabic, Turkish, and Persian, which his father enjoy'd; he did not leave France any more, but entirely apply'd himself to the translation of oriental authors. He has left many volumes translated, the most considerable of which we shall mention in a list of his works. One of his best performances, by which he gain'd the greatest applause, is the history of the king's medals, which he had orders to translate from French into Persian, and which was presented in 1708 to the king of Persia, by the sieur Michel, envoy extraordinary from the king to that monarch, who shew'd the greatest esteem for the translation which so fine a work can merit.

M. DE LA CROIX join'd to his knowledg of the Arabic, Turkish, Persian, and Tartar languages, that of the Ethiopian, and Armenian. The former he learnt on occasion of a long letter from the king of Ethiopia to his majesty. The king's affairs made him use his utmost efforts to learn the Armenian, in which he perfectly succeeded, but with prejudice to his health; for he died, as he was continuing to translate all the Armenian books which fell into his hands. He certainly had the greatest knowledg of this language of any man, as well of the learned part, as the vulgar.

THE list of his most valuable books is as follows.

1. The oriental library \* of Hadgi-Calfa, Cadi of Constantinople, compos'd in Arabic in two volumes in folio; with two tables, one of the matters, and the other of the authors; which likewise make two volumes.

2. The history of all the Mahometan monarchys, by Hussein Efendi Hezarfen, a modern Turk.

3. The history of the conquest of Syria by the Arabians in the seventh century: the author, who is an Arabian, is nam'd Ouakidi.

4. The history of the Arabians of Spain, from the seventh to the fourteenth century.

5. The history of Morocco, call'd Alcartas, in Arabic, from the seventh to the sixteenth century.

6. The history of Tunis, from the eleventh to the fifteenth century.

7. A description of the city of Aleppo, translated from the Arabic.

8. A treatise of the religion of the Druses, translated from the Arabic; in two tomes.

9. The geography of Bakouzi an Arabian.

---

\* This piece alone may undeceive several people, and even some learned men, who believe that the Turks and other Mahometans neglect the sciences, being deceiv'd by travellers, who being ignorant of the languages, could not converse with the learned men of the countrys they have gone thro. This library is very different from that which the late M. Herbelot has given under the name of the oriental library, in which there is no connection as to the disposal of the words and matters. This is a true body of all the arts and sciences in use among the Orientals.

10. The geography of Bin Rabya an Arabian.
11. The voyage of Mir Sidy Aly, admiral of the Ottoman fleet in the East-Indian seas, under the great Solyman; and his return by land to Constantinople; in Turkish and Tartarian.
12. An history of the animals of Demiri, in Arabic.
13. A description of the city of Constantinople, in Turkish.
14. The history of Algiers, in Turkish and French.
15. The history of Tripoli in Barbary, in Turkish.
16. An Arabic grammar, with the vulgar practice, in two volumes.
17. A French and Arabic dictionary.
18. A French and Turkish dictionary.
19. A French and Persian dictionary.
20. A French and Armenian dictionary; and another Armenian and French.
21. The history of Armenia, translated from Armenian into French.

WE design to present the public with a journal of the voyages of the late M. Petis de la Croix, the translator of this history; to which will be join'd a relation of those of M. Petis de la Croix his son, who has been six years in the Levant by the king's order, and is at present secretary and interpreter to his majesty.

WE might have added to this list several other works, some of which are wholly translated, and others only in part: but it is sufficient to have mention'd the principal and most important.

---

T H E

Author's Preface.

**I**N THE name of God, whose bounty and justice extend over all beings. He disposes crowns according to his pleasure, and grants victory to those whom he judges most fit to accomplish his eternal decrees: he defends and continually advances Mahometanism, for the increase of his glory: and it is certain that a fortune rais'd by his hand is immovable, and easily overcomes all the difficultys which tend to obstruct it.

SUCH was the fortune of the great and invincible Timur, whose history we undertake. The reader will not be surpriz'd at the heroic actions which rais'd him to the supreme dignity of emperor of Tartary, and subjected all Asia to him, from the frontiers of China to those of Greece, that is, the countrys of Turkey, Tartary, Persia, India and Syria; when he shall be acquainted with the sublime qualitys with which this prince was endow'd. He was a very pious and religious observer of the Mahometan law. He was so prudent, that he always govern'd the state himself, without having recourse to a prime minister; and he succeeded in all his enterprizes, wherein



wherein he had no other end than the glory of God, the increase of religion, and the good of the people. He was exceeding liberal and courteous to every one, excepting those who refus'd to obey him, whom he punish'd with the utmost rigor. He was a great lover of justice; and none under his government ever exercis'd violence and tyranny unpunish'd. He esteem'd learning and learned men: and 'twas his constant endeavour to render the arts flourishing thro-out his empire. He discover'd the greatness of his soul on so many occasions, that it wou'd be needless to speak of it here. As to his bravery, he never committed any action unworthy the quality of his ancestors, who had been all kings or princes: and this history contains a series of incontestable proofs of it. He was fearless and courageous, equally capable of forming a great design with wisdom, and of executing it with vigor. He was very kind to his domestics; exceeding charitable to the poor and afflicted; and built a great number of hospitals, convents of dervises, and mosques. In fine, one may justly say, that nothing was wanting in this prince to render him worthy of the glory, to which God was pleas'd to advance him.

TIMUR'S father was the wise and virtuous prince Emir Tragai, and his mother the chaste and beautiful Tekine Catun, the lawful wife of the Emir Tragai. He was born in the town of Sebz, situate without the walls of the deli-

---

\* One need not wonder to hear the author, speaking of Timur's mother, say she was the lawful wife of the Emir Tragai; the Mahometans being permitted by their law to have concubines, whose children are not accounted legitimate.

An. Dom.  
1336.

cious city of Kech<sup>a</sup>, capital of the said Emir's dominions, on tuesday-night the fifth of Chaban of the year of the Hegira 736, which answers to that of the Mouse in the Mogul calendar, under the reign of the Sultan Cazan, king of Transoxiana and Turkestan.

THIS prince's birth had been predicted to Cachouli Behader, one of his ancestors, in a dream, wherein eight stars seem'd to shoot out of him, and the eighth cast so great a splendor, that it enlighten'd the four quarters of the world; which Toumene Can, Cachouli's father, interpreted, that a prince of his race shou'd be born in the eighth generation who shou'd fill the world with the splendor of his virtues and conquests.

TIMUR's horoscope, which was drawn at the moment of his nativity, predicted to him the crown and empire, with all manner of prosperity, and a numerous issue.

THIS prince from his childhood discover'd his excellent dispositions to the accomplishment of the predictions of his horoscope: for as soon as he attain'd to the age of reason, something might be seen in all his actions, which shew'd an air of sovereignty: he wou'd talk of nothing but thrones and crowns; his favorite diversions represented the military art, in which he dispos'd of the youth who attended him, as a prince disposes of his subjects, raising to the highest dignities those who appear'd most deserving, and giving to others the bare title of soldiers; he made figures of canes to represent the army of an enemy, and then attack'd 'em with

---

<sup>a</sup> A town of Transoxiana, long. 99. 30. lat. 39. 30.

his troops, among whom he observ'd a military discipline.

WHEN he was more advanc'd in age, and capable of applying himself to the exercises of the body, far from chusing those pleasures which most young persons fall into, as dancing and the like, which rather effeminate than ennoble the mind, he gave himself up to the science of arms. His chief diversions were riding, racing, fencing, and the like. He was likewise often at the chace, the only recreation he took after his continual fatigues.

IN these noble exercises Timur pass'd that part of his life which preceded his great and wonderful actions, that is, from his tenth year till the twenty-fifth or thereabouts; for at that age ambition having got possession of his heart, he began to despise dangers, to gain victorys, and acquire the name of a great conqueror and intrepid hero. In the midst of all his glory, he had an admirable conduct over himself, and made justice the rule of all his actions: he never us'd the privilege which conquerors claim, of treating those ill whom fortune has made their slaves; except when his honor was concern'd, or he was oblig'd to it to preserve his conquests.

IF Timur was so great and noble during the whole course of his life, the Mirzas<sup>3</sup> his children did not in the least degenerate from him; especially the great and invincible Charoc his eldest \* son, and since his successor in the empire, who tho as powerful as Solomon, always made such use of his authority, as not to

---

<sup>3</sup> Mirza signifies the son of a prince.

\* This seems to be a mistake; for by the last chapter of the following work, it appears he was Timur's youngest son.



give the least matter of complaint to any of his subjects. This prince never addicted himself to plays and pleasures, with which he was constantly surrounded. His only employment was to take care of the affairs of state, and to render justice to his people: and if he was oblig'd to recreate himself for some hours, he employ'd his time in contemplation, and reading useful books; so that one may say he liv'd the most solitary life, and free from all manner of vanities, in the midst of the tumults of a court. I can't here pretend to give a detail of all the virtues of the great Charoc, and of his son the invincible Ibrahim Sultan, who excell'd as well in letters as in arms, and was an admirable writer: wherefore I refer the reader to the second and third parts of this work, where I have related all their great and noble actions<sup>1</sup>.

To return to our history: I may venture to say it is preferable to all which have been yet written, even of the most renown'd conquerors; and that for three reasons.

THE first is the knowledg every one may draw from thence, as it will instruct 'em in the chronology, geography, and history of Asia, and in those virtues, which are proper for the imitation of the greatest princes. This history is like a theatre, where fortune is represented deriding the policy of men, sometimes baffling their designs at her pleasure, at other times favoring 'em; sometimes suffering her self to be govern'd by it, at other times destroying all the artifices it

---

<sup>1</sup> The second and third parts of this work, which the author speaks of, have not been translated; and I believe there are no copies of 'em in France.



makes use of, to avoid the dangers to which it is expos'd. In this work we see Timur laying the foundations of a monarchy, which at first appear'd chimerical in the eyes of the wisest men: yet by degrees he raises himself above his equals. Sometimes we see him in a manner seeking his fortune as a private soldier; at other times commanding armys and dethroning kings: sometimes he is oblig'd to quit his conquests, and wander about abandon'd by every one; till at length he deprives emperors of their crowns, and is settled in the empire of Asia by the conquest of Tartary, India, Persia, Arabia, Egypt, Natolia, and other kingdoms; all which part of the world became subject to his laws. And after these noble actions we see him quit terrestrial crowns for immortality, which was his principal aim, and the glorious end to which all these enterprizes tended, leaving his empire in a happy and profound peace.

THE second reason which may make this work deserve approbation, is the exactness with which the actions of Timur are related, a quality seldom to be met with in the historys of great princes; all his exploits being related even with the minutest circumstances. The author of Timur's life in Turkish verse tells us, that this prince wou'd not permit him to insert some particular facts in his work, fearing they shou'd appear fabulous in verse, and reserving 'em (as Timur himself often said) for this present history.

THE third reason why this work shou'd be esteem'd, is, that truth appears in all the facts herein related, and that not the least exaggeration has been us'd. To convince the reader of this, I need only inform him of the method

us'd in compiling it. Timur had always Tartar and Persian secretaries to attend him, who were some of the most learned men of his empire, whom he order'd to write down all his actions and discourses, with every circumstance which might any way relate either to religion, the public, or his ministers; and all this without the least addition, either to embellish the style, or to set off the glory of any of his soldiers or generals, by lessening that of the enemy. And thus this history, as well as that in Turkish verse, has been compos'd.

BESIDES, as several officers and great lords of the court had caus'd some particular facts to be wrote down, of which themselves were eye-witnesses, having had a considerable share in 'em; this prince order'd all these fragments to be collected, and had the patience to range 'em in order himself, after which he caus'd 'em to be compar'd and examin'd in the following manner. A person read over one of these papers, and when he was come to some remarkable action, the witnesses verify'd the circumstances of it, relating 'em exactly as they had seen 'em. Then the emperor himself examin'd the truth of the fact; and having confronted what the witnesses said with the contents of the memoirs, he dictated to the secretaries the manner in which they shou'd insert the facts in the body of the work, and then order'd it to be read over to him again, to see if nothing cou'd be added or taken from it.

THE reader will find by what I have said, that this history has been written with all imaginable fidelity; and that the honor of its composition ought to be ascrib'd to Timur himself, since he took the trouble of collecting and comparing all the parts of it. The author only gave

gave the finishing stroke, adorning it with all the elegance and beautys of the Persian language, to bring it to its utmost perfection.

WHAT is further remarkable in this work, is the exactness with which the chronology, and the day and hour of the event, are observ'd: all the encampments and roads are also remark'd, with the distance of one place from another.

LASTLY, as the events are all link'd together, and naturally follow each other; we thought it advisable to relate several facts, which preceded the time that Timur-Bec perform'd any thing so remarkable, as to deserve the observation of the world, because we suppos'd it necessary to a perfect knowledge of his history.

---

T H E





---

THE  
HISTORY  
OF  
TIMUR-BEC.

---

BOOK I.

*Several events which preceded Timur-Bec's  
ascending the throne of Zagatai.*

---

CHAP. I.

*Of Sultan Cazan, grand Can of Zagatai ;  
his defeat and death. Mir 'Cazagan, a  
Turkish Prince, takes upon him the govern-  
ment of the empire, and establishes a grand  
Can. The war of Mir Cazagan against Ma-  
lek Hussein, prince of Herat.*

**I**N the year of the Hegira 733, Sultan Ca-  
zan<sup>1</sup>, the son of Isour Aglen, who sprang  
from Genghiz Can, ascended the throne of  
the Cans of Zagatai, (*that is, of the coun-  
try that was given to Zagatai Can, the son of Gen-*

Chap. I.  
An. Dom.  
1332.  
Mog. The  
Hen.

---

<sup>1</sup> Mir is a contraction of Emir, which among the Eastern  
nations signifies a chief prince or commander.

<sup>2</sup> He was the 21st of the successors of Zagatai Can.

Book I. *ghiz Can, as his share*<sup>2</sup>.) But this Prince being naturally inclin'd to tyranny, carry'd his violence and injustice to so great a pitch, that the people were reduc'd to despair.

His tyranny had so far intimidated every one, that when he sent his orders to the Princes his dependents to come to any place, and particularly to the assemblies of the states, which he held, they had so little thoughts of returning with their lives, that they commonly made their wills before they went.

This general discontent was at length the cause that Mir Cazagan, who was one of the most considerable princes of his time, and of the tribe of Tabit, revolted and join'd some other princes of the country to make war on the grand Can; they rais'd troops in<sup>3</sup> Saliferaï, and brought a great army into the field.

The Can had no sooner receiv'd advice of their march, than he prepar'd to resist them; and when he had got thro a narrow passage nam'd Coluga, or the iron gate, the two armys met, and fought in a plain of the village call'd Derry Zenghi, in the year of the

An. Dom. Hegira 746.

1345.

Mog. The  
Dog.

The battel was unfortunate to the confederate princes: for Mir Cazagan their leader was wounded by an arrow in his right eye, by Cazan himself; and he not only lost that eye, but was a long time wholly blind.

---

<sup>2</sup> The country given to Zagatai Can, was Transoxiana, the country of the Yugures, the great city of Cashgar near Tebet, the kingdom of Bedakchan, and the city of Balc, which in the opinion of learned men, was the ancient Bactria.

<sup>3</sup> A town situate on the river Gihon, that is to say Oxus.



After this expedition Cazan return'd to Carſ- Chap. i.  
chi<sup>4</sup>, at which place it was ſo very cold this  
winter, that the greateſt part of the cattel and  
horſes of the army periſh'd. Mir Cazagan,  
when he heard of it, loſt no time, but got toge-  
ther his beſt troops, and march'd to attack him  
even in Carſchi; and was no ſooner arriv'd in  
the plain belonging to this city, than Cazan be-  
gan the fight: the grand Can was unfortunatel-  
ly conquer'd, and dy'd in the field of battel; in  
the year of the Hegira 747<sup>5</sup>, after he had  
reign'd in Tranſoxiana and Turkeſtan fourteen  
ſolar years<sup>6</sup>.

An. Dom.  
1346.  
Mog. The  
Hog.

After his death, Mir Cazagan, the chief  
of the confederates, diſpos'd of the kingdom,  
and ſet upon the throne a prince of the  
race of Oſtai Caan, ſon of Genghiz Can,  
call'd Dachmendge Aglen<sup>7</sup>; but ſoon af-  
ter he put him to death, and at laſt ad-  
vanced to the dignity of grand Can, Beyan  
Couli Aglen, the ſon of Sorgadou ſon of Dava

---

<sup>4</sup> A city of Tranſoxiana, long. 99. lat. 39. whoſe ancient  
name was Neſef, and alſo Naſcheb. The name of Carſchi  
was given it becauſe of the palace which Kepek built there,  
Carſchi in the Mogul language ſignifying palace. In this place  
was a well, wherein one might ſee a moon, which the coun-  
try people believed to be perform'd by magic; tho it was only  
a porringer of quick-ſilver, which the cunning Iſnel Macaſſa  
had plac'd at the bottom of the well.

<sup>5</sup> We muſt not confound this Cazan Can, who deſcended  
from Zagatai, with the great Gazan Can, the ſon of Abaca,  
who ſprang from Hulacou Can, ſecond ſon of Tuli, ſon of  
Genghiz Can; which Gazan was King of Perſia, and died  
An. Dom. 1303. Heg. 703.

<sup>6</sup> The Perſians count by ſolar years as well as lunar.

<sup>7</sup> Hezarfen, a modern Turkiſh author, calls him Daneſch-  
mendge Can, the ſon of Iſour Aglen.

Book I. Can<sup>a</sup>, who was also of the race of Genghiz Can.

This new Can render'd himself so much the more agreeable to all the people, by his justice and liberality, during the six years he reign'd, in that they had not yet forgot the tyranny of Sultan Cazan, and had great expectations from the conduct of Mir Cazagan, who had taken upon him the government of the kingdom; which he acquitted with so much prudence and equity, in remedying the public disorders, that his name deserves to be immortaliz'd in history.

Battle of  
Herat.

The most remarkable things which happen'd in his time, are, that having brought his army into the field at<sup>b</sup> Arhenk-Serai, he came even unto the gates of Herat<sup>c</sup>. But the better to understand the reason of this expedition, it is requisite one shou'd know, that from the death of the emperor Aboufaid<sup>d</sup>, there had not set upon the throne of the empire of Persia any absolute prince of the race of Genghiz Can; and that the princes of the Turks, Moguls and Tartars, had no longer the sovereign authority in Corassana; besides that in the country of Zagatai, at that time, Sultan Cazan, thro the excess of his tyranny, had drawn upon him the aversion of the people, as before mention'd.

During this time Malek Hussein, surnam'd Moazeddin, the son of Malek Cayaseddin then

<sup>a</sup> Dava Can was the ninth successor of Zagatai, and was the son of Berrac Can, who died An. Dom. 1260.

<sup>b</sup> A city of the province of Tocarestan, upon the river Gihon, long. 102. lat. 37.

<sup>c</sup> Capital city of Corassana, long. 94. lat. 34.

<sup>d</sup> Aboufaid Can was the eighth successor of Hulacou Can, second son of Tuli the son of Genghiz Can, who reign'd in Persia, and died An. Dom. 1335.

## The history of Timur-Bec.

5

Chap. i.

prince of Herat, whose genealogy we have given at length in our *book of preliminaries*, daily so far increas'd his authority, that he oblig'd Cheik Hassan Youry, and the prince Massoud, surnam'd Vedgidin, king of the Serbedals<sup>3</sup>, to march from the fortrefs of Sebzuar with forces to attack him. He prepar'd to give him a warm reception, insomuch that on the thirteenth of the month Sefer, in the year 743, the two armys met in the territory of Zave<sup>4</sup>, where they had a furious battel, in which the army of Malek Hussein was defeated, and a great number of his soldiers kill'd. But this prince got upon an eminence, and made a sign for the standard to be display'd, and the drum to be beat: at which order only three hundred horse got together near his person. He renew'd their courage by his speeches, and perswaded 'em to attack the enemys, who were busy'd in plundering. They obey'd him, and Massoud, who descry'd 'em, fell presently upon 'em; Cheik Hassan follow'd him, but he was kill'd by an arrow shot into his side by one of his own men, of which he dy'd upon the spot. He was an old captain, in whom the young prince Massoud very much confided, and had order'd him to retire, lest by chance he shou'd be kill'd in the fight; which misfortune accordingly happen'd. Massoud fled, and so the army of Malek became victorious, after having been conquer'd; they put all the Serbedals to the sword, and made a total plunder of their camp. This victory render'd Malek Hussein so proud, that

---

<sup>3</sup> The Serbedals were petty kings of Sebzuar in Corassana, who had revolted at the death of Sultan Aboussaid, and had form'd a small kingdom.

<sup>4</sup> A Town in Corassana between Herat and Sebzuar.



Book I. tho he knew his ancestors had never enjoy'd any thing in Herat but by the particular favor and protection of the kings and princes of the race of Genghiz Can, yet he acted the part of a sovereign, and affected those distinctions which belong to kings, such as having the kettle-drums beat five times a day, and setting up the imperial standard upon his tent. Nay, he further shew'd his rashness; for he many times brought his troops into the field, and made incursions as far as the frontiers of Andecoud and Cheburgan<sup>1</sup>.

These outrages oblig'd even his relations, who were very much discontented with him, to complain to the prince Mir Cazagan, who by his good conduct, moderation and virtue, restored the empire of Zagatai to its former splendor. The princes of Erlat and Aperdi, with whom Malek Hussein had made war, failed not to join their complaints with the others; they in a lively manner represented to Cazagan the pride of this prince. "What! said they, is the race of Genghiz Can extinguish'd? is there no further notice taken of the royal majesty? This upstart of Gour<sup>2</sup> does not know himself, and believes there is no one above him."

Mir Cazagan gave attention to these complaints, and enquir'd into the truth of 'em; he then spake to 'em in these terms: "Shall a private man set himself up for king, and throw off the allegiance due to emperors? We will dispute with the sword the pride of this au-

<sup>1</sup> City of Corassana near Balc, long. 100  $\frac{1}{2}$ . lat. 36  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

<sup>2</sup> A little kingdom, N. of Sistan, S. of Raver, E. of Herat, and W. of Bamian. Its capital is Zout, long. 99. lat. 33.

“dacious person; and after having ruin’d his  
“towns and fortresses, we will make a river  
“as big as the Gihon, with the blood of his  
“scoundrel soldiers.”

Chap. 1.

For this purpose he sent orders into all the provinces for the troops to cross over the river Gihon, and march to the appointed rendezvous; after which he went to join the grand Can Beyan Couli and the princes of the empire<sup>7</sup>, at the head of whom he march’d towards Herat.

This news coming to the ears of Malek Husein, he sent an Emir with three hundred horse to know the truth of it, ordering him to advance as far as he cou’d for that purpose, but to return immediately if he found the army of Zagatai had pass’d the river Gihon. This Emir had no sooner cross’d over the river Morgab, than he found that the Tartar army had pass’d the Gihon; for which reason he soon return’d to give notice of it to Malek, and thus address’d himself to him: “Cazagan  
“the general of the Turks<sup>8</sup>, is upon his arrival;  
“he hath brought his army from Tartary into  
“Persia; the vast number of arms and the instruments of war he has with him, have rais’d the  
“dust up to heaven; and the people say, when  
“they see the glittering of his soldiers armour,  
“that he has used all his power to furnish the  
“empire of Tartary with iron.” On this ad-

---

<sup>7</sup> The names of the chief princes of the empire of Zagatai are, Emir Beyan Selduz, Mehemed Coja Aperdi, Setilmich, Oladgia Itou Aperdi, Abdalla son of Taifou, and the kings of Bedakchan.

<sup>8</sup> The names of the Turks, Tartars, Moguls and Zagataians, are here used promiscuously.

Book I. vice Malek having summon'd his council, which consisted of the princes, the generals of the army, and the principal lords of his kingdom, made this speech: "There hath march'd  
 " from the country of the Tartars into Persia  
 " so numerous an army, that even the sun is  
 " obscur'd by the dust they have rais'd; it is  
 " compos'd of men who in an assault are as  
 " firm as rocks, and when they see their ene-  
 " mys give way, they resemble the torrents  
 " which swiftly fall from the tops of mountains,  
 " These undaunted persons put not on their  
 " helmets, before they have resolv'd to sacrifice  
 " their lives to the honor of a victory."

Hereupon each person deliver'd his sentiments: and because the Tartar army was not only more numerous than that of Herat, which consisted of only four thousand horse, with about fifteen thousand foot, but also more accusom'd to war, and more dextrous at fighting a pitch'd battel; Malek Hussein thought it not advisable that his army shou'd remain in the city, nor under covert of the citadel, nor in the streets and gardens of the suburbs, lest they should discover fear. The more to surprize their enemies, it was resolv'd to bring 'em into the field, to meet the Tartars, and first engage with 'em, if possible; and that in the mean time they shou'd build a wall to the east of the city, which shou'd be fortify'd with large ditches from Paymore to Kestestan. Immediately every one prepar'd himself to execute these resolutions, and the arms and all things necessary for the battel were remov'd out of the city.

The army got ready; and Malek Hussein fail'd not to harangue his soldiers, and excite them to fight like brave men, when they shou'd be call'd to it. He told them it was not the  
 great

great number of soldiers which render'd ar-  
mys victorious, but courage and conduct; and if they were possess'd of those two qualitys, they might assure themselves that their enemys would soon find the world it-self too little for their security.

In the mean time Mir Cazagan pass'd the narrow passage of Pachnan, and came down to Kedestan with his army, which consisted of valiant soldiers; and the next morning he took horse with the Can, and the princes Oladgia Itou, Setilmich, and others: they went near the camp of the enemy, got upon a rising ground, and strictly view'd the army of Malek Hussein. After that Mir Cazagan said, " This novice understands not the rules of military art; and the place which he hath chosen to encamp in, will soon be the cause of the defeat of his army, for two reasons: one is, that in the battel his men will be oblig'd to ascend to meet us, while we shall descend: and the other is, that when the sun shall appear, they will have the rays in their eyes, and will not be able to see those who come against 'em." Mir Cazagan, and the other lords, came down from the eminence, almost assur'd of the victory. The next day they rang'd their army in form of a half-moon; and after the prince had harangu'd his soldiers, they march'd towards the city, and at length arriv'd in the field of battel which Malek Hussein had pitch'd on. Then Mir Cazagan ascended another eminence, from whence he openly saw the two armies, and immediately order'd his soldiers to advance towards the enemy.

The Tartars instantly fell upon the army of Malek Hussein; but the attack was sustained  
vigo-



Book I.

vigorously, and the fight was bloody: they cry'd out, *Sela!* in both the armys; that is, let no quarter be given. Every one shew'd his valor and strength, and the field was soon cover'd with blood, bucklers, helmets, and lances, mix'd with the dead, who every moment fell from their horses. At length the army of Malek Hussein, after a long and vain defence, was put to flight: and as that prince had drawn together a large quantity of water behind his camp, to hinder his men from running away, a great many perish'd in the mire; and the rest were pursu'd by the Tartars, who made a horrible slaughter of 'em.

Malek Hussein retreated with great difficulty into the city of Herat, attended only by his guards, who made themselves masters of the by-streets and gardens which join'd the city; while Mir Cazagan, flush'd with the victory he had obtain'd, return'd to his camp with the Tartar princes.

From this time the army of Herat did not once sally out of the city; and the next day Mir Cazagan approach'd it, and began to besiege it in form: his brave soldiers had skirmishes every day with the besieg'd; and even in the night they assaulted it on all sides by the light of fires.

The siege lasted forty days; the place was briskly attack'd, and vigorously defended: but at length Malek Hussein, weary with delaying, and considering the city as his prison, assembled the princes and lords of his council, to consult about obtaining a peace. He told 'em he did it to serve 'em; and for that reason he wou'd go the following year to cast himself with confidence at the feet of the grand Can and Mir Cazagan, to ask pardon of them for what he had done.

All

## The history of Timur-Bec.

11

All the lords approv'd his proposal: he then sent presents of horses sumptuously harness'd, curious stuffs, and rich carpets, with a great quantity of silver-money; and promised, that when Mir Cazagan shou'd return to the place of his residence, he wou'd not fail to go there in person to pay him his respects, and make all the submission he shou'd require. His promise was accompany'd, according to custom, with a solemn oath.

Mir Cazagan, who was an equitable prince, and of a sweet and merciful temper, granted whatever Malek Hussein desir'd, in consideration of the troubles and hardships the people suffer'd from that war; for he doubted not but the country wou'd be entirely ruin'd if they continu'd the siege.

He then consented to the peace, on the conditions Malek himself had offer'd; for which reason he took the road of Transoxiana, with the grand Can, at the head of his army, in the year of the Hegira 752.

From this time the affairs of Malek Hussein were daily upon the decline, and the esteem conceiv'd of his person began to diminish: this caus'd the captains of his army, who, for the most part, were of the country of Gour, to become so proud and insolent, that they conspir'd together to depose him, and to settle Malek Baker, his brother, in his place.

Malek Hussein had advice of it, but he was not in a condition to prevent it: all he cou'd do, was to be upon his guard. The captains of Gour had resolv'd to seize him as he took horse: and one day as he came out of a pleasure-house, he discover'd, when he was about to get on horseback, that these men had some design against him, and were in a readiness to fall

Chap. I.  
An. Dom.  
1351.  
Mog. The  
Hare.

**Book I.** fall on him: for which reason, as he perceiv'd a company of jockeys, who came from the city of Badghiz, and were then employ'd in selling horses which they had brought with 'em; Malek Hussein cry'd out to the Gouris, "Chil-dren, do you see those fine horses of Badghiz?" "I give 'em you if you can take 'em." The greedy Gouris rush'd on 'em, and while they were busy'd at the pillage, Hussein fled away full speed into the fortress of Eskildge, which his ancestors had built in the meadow of the town of Herat, between the south and west, and which was full of treasure and ammunition of all sorts.

An. Dom.  
1352.  
Mog. The  
Crocodile.

In the year of the Hegira 733, Malek Hussein, according to promise, went from Eskildge to Transoxiana, to pay his homage and respects to Mir Cazagan and the Can: Mir Cazagan order'd him a magnificent entry; and not only gave him a favorable reception, but was also serviceable to him in regaining Herat, which the Gouris had put into the hands of his Brother, Malek Baker; the property of which he resign'd to him.

Notwithstanding the caresses of Mir Cazagan, the princes of the empire form'd designs against Malek Hussein; for which reason they besought Mir Cazagan to order him to be seiz'd; but they could not obtain their desires, whatever instances they made: for which reason they resolv'd on the assassination of Malek Hussein, on condition, that after his death, none among 'em shou'd demand vengeance for his blood.

Mir Cazagan no sooner heard of this design, than he call'd Malek Hussein, to tell him what these princes had contriv'd against him; and he advis'd him to depart that very evening  
for

for Herat, since he cou'd not answer for the consequences of his stay. Chap. I.

Malek, having return'd his thanks to the prince for such great favors, took his leave of him: he departed as soon as night approach'd, and made such haste, that he arriv'd at Herat before any one knew of it, which he enter'd with his troops without resistance. He got possession of the throne in the citadel; and at the same time sent guards to seize on Malek Baker, and to put him in prison.

During these transactions, Mirza Abdalla, son of Mir Cazagan, departed from Samarcand with a great army for the conquest of Carizme<sup>\*</sup>, of which he made himself master.

In the mean while Mir Cazagan, who commonly had his winter-quarters in the camp of Saliserai, pass'd the spring at Caranver, because that country was agreeable, and very full of flowers at that season; and in the summer and autumn he dwelt in the city of Mounec, situate in a country proper for hunting, which was an exercise this prince delighted in.

One day he took horse to follow this diversion, and parted unarm'd from Saliserai, attended by fifteen persons only, not fearing any surprize: he cross'd the Gihon, with a design to hunt in the country of Arhenk; and while he was at the chase, he was surpriz'd by Cotluc Timur, his son-in-law, the son of Bourouldai, of the tribe of Ournat, who had resolv'd to revenge himself of this prince for an affront he

---

<sup>\*</sup> A kingdom situate on the shore of the Caspian sea, near the mouth of the Gihon, whose capital was Corcange, otherwise call'd Jorjana.



Book I. had receiv'd from him. He fell upon him with a company of robbers, who immediately wounded him with an arrow; and at length these villains assassinated this great prince, so famous for his virtue and justice. Some officers of Mir Cazagan pursu'd the assassins with so much speed, that they over-took Cotluc Timur near Condoz<sup>2</sup>: they shew'd the affection they bore their master; for they bath'd their swords in the assassins blood. After this revenge, they carry'd the body of Mir Cazagan to Saliserai, where they bury'd him in the year of the Hegira 759.

An. Dom.  
1357.  
Mog. The  
Dog.

---

## CHAP. II.

*Of the government of the Mirza Abdalla, the son of Cazagan; and of the difference which happen'd between the princes of Zagatai.*

**A**FTER the unfortunate death of Mir Cazagan, his son, the Mirza Abdalla, succeeded him; for which reason he departed from Samarcand, and came to Saliserai, where all the princes unanimously paid him that homage which declar'd a perfect obedience.

As soon as he had the sovereign authority in his hands, he confirm'd Beyan Couli upon the throne of the Cans, with the same authority as before. But having, during the life of Mir Cazagan, his father, dwelt some time at

---

<sup>2</sup> A city of Tocarestan near Kulm, long. 101  $\frac{1}{2}$ , lat. 37.

Samarcand, he was so taken with the pleasures of that country, that he cou'd not keep from it: for which reason he wou'd make it the capital of his kingdom, and the place of his residence; and accordingly he return'd to Samar- cand with the grand Can, Beyan Couli.


The Emir Coutcou, the other princes; and the lords of his father's court, merely from their affection to him, represented, that it was false policy thus to abandon Saliserai, the antient and ordinary residence of the Cans; but all their ad- vices had no effect upon the mind of Abdalla: the poet says, *He who won't hear the counsel of his friends, will one day bite his fingers in token of repentance.*

The same year this young prince became in love with the empress, wife of the grand Can; and his passion carry'd him so far, that he got the Can assassinated in the city of Samar- cand: he afterwards plac'd upon the throne Timur Chah Aglen, son of Bisun Timur Can: then he order'd the body of Beyan Couli to be car- ry'd to Bocara, where he was bury'd near the venerable doctor Cheik Seifeddin Bakresy, to the great regret of all the People.

The death of the grand Can was unfortu- nate to Abdalla; for the prince Beyan Selduz rais'd an army to revenge it, with which he departed from the fortress of Chaduman for Samar- cand: when he was arriv'd on the fron- tiers of Kech, the prince Hadgi Berlas<sup>3</sup>, who was prince Timur's uncle, join'd him with all his troops; and they came in a body to attack Abdalla, who after having defended himself

Army brought into the field by Beyan Selduz.

<sup>3</sup> The son of Bourlaki, son of Nemonle, son of Isoumenga, son of Caratchar Nevian.

Book I.  some time was routed, and fled; and they put his brothers to death, as also Timur Chah Aglen, whom he had rais'd to the dignity of grand Can of Zagatai.

The defeat  
of Abdalla.

Thus Mirza Abdalla was soon punish'd for his crime, and oblig'd to abandon the country: he cross'd the river Gihon, took the road above Bacalan, and went to Anderab, a city of the little kingdom of Bedakchan, where he spent the remainder of his days.

All the friends of the late prince, Mir Cazagan, were dispers'd; and the princes Beyan Selduz and Hadgi Berlas, who at that time had great reputation and authority, made themselves masters of the country, and took upon 'em the government.

The prince Beyan Selduz was of a good-natur'd pleasant disposition, and never inclin'd to mischief; but he extremely lov'd wine, and scarce pass'd eight days without some debauch of that kind, which caus'd great confusion in his kingdom; for each prince attempted to make himself sovereign, and even those who wou'd otherwise never have had such a design, seeing the empire, in a manner, without a chief, thought themselves oblig'd, for their own safety, to do as others did.

The city of Kech, with its dependences, remain'd in the possession of the princes Timur and Hadgi Berlas, as it had always belong'd to their ancestors, till the time of Caratchar Nevian; no one having made any opposition to it: the country of Cogende was possess'd by prince Bajazet Gelair; and Mir Hussein, the son of Musella, son of Mir Cazagan, made himself master of Cabul, and several other lordships, and maintain'd himself as long as he was able in the dignity of his grandfather, with

the officers of his court: Oladgia Bogai Sel-  
duz with his party, made himself sovereign of  
Balç; and Mehemed Coja Aperdi, prince of  
the tribe of the Naimans, took possession of Che-  
burgan; the kings of Bedakchan had fortify'd  
themselves in their mountains, that they might  
be independent; and Kei Cofru, and Oladgia  
Itou Aperdi, made themselves masters of Cat-  
lan and Arhenk; and Keder Jesouri, prince of  
the tribes of Serpol and Tacun, caus'd himself  
to be declar'd king thro his own power.

All these princes, who were at enmity with  
one another, were continually at war; some  
of 'em were slain in battel, and among the rest  
Mehemed Coja Aperdi, in the following manner.

Prince Setilmich, lord of Couhestan, fatigu'd  
with the war he had carry'd on against Malek  
Hussein, prince of Herat, which we have al-  
ready mention'd, had join'd himself with Me-  
hemed Coja after his return from Transoxiana,  
and contracted a strong friendship with him.

They took up a resolution vigorously to attack  
Hussein, and for that end rais'd an army, with  
which they went to assault Herat: Hussein also  
brought his army into the field to withstand em.

Mehemed and Setilmich, having a great opini-  
on of their own valor, swore they wou'd not turn  
back befor they had cut off Hussein's head.

Malek Hussein cross'd the river Morgab, and  
the two armys met on the plain of Yapaghou:  
as soon as the two princes, animated by the  
sight of their enemy, had put themselves in a  
condition to execute their resolutions, they  
went from the army, and advanc'd full speed  
with sword in hand against Malek; but, thro  
a fatal destiny, they were shot by two arrows  
from the army of the enemy; so that they fell  
from their horses, and expir'd that very hour.



Book I. This accident put the army of the princes in confusion; and notwithstanding it was so numerous and formidable, it fled, and left the field of battel to the conquerors.

All these disorders, and the wars of the princes of the empire of Zagatai, serv'd to augment the misery of the country; tumult and sedition spread themselves every where; and nothing was heard and seen among the people but groans and marks of despair.

### C H A P. III.

*Togluc Timur Can\*, king of the Getes, marches into Tranfoxiana. The flight of Hadgi Berlas.*

AS the country of Tranfoxiana was in confusion, and almost entirely ruin'd, Togluc Timur, king of Gete, the son of Aimel Coja, son of Dava Can, who descended from Zagatai Can, to whom the crown of this country belong'd, had a design to make himself master of it; and after having call'd his officers and courtiers to him, he rais'd an army, and in the month of March, in the year of the Hegira 761, march'd to the conquest of Tranfoxiana. It is remarkable, that in the space of thirty three years, from the death of Turmeschirin<sup>†</sup> Can, there reign'd eight Cans in the empire of Zagatai.

An. Dom.  
1359.  
Mog. The  
Mouffe.

\* The 25th successor to the crown of Zagatai: he was the son of Aimel Coja, son of Dava Can; he dy'd in 1372.

† The 16th successor of Zagatai Can; he dy'd in 1336.

As soon as Toglug Timur arriv'd at the foun- Chap. 3.  
tain Chanak Boulak, near the Sihon<sup>6</sup>, in the  
fields of Tachkunt, formerly call'd Alchasch, he  
sent Oluc Tocatmur, prince of the hord<sup>7</sup> of  
Kerait, Hadgi Bei of the hord of Arkenut, and  
Bikidgek of the hord of Cangouli, for his scouts.  
These three princes us'd all possible diligence;  
and when they had cross'd the Sihon at Co-  
gende, Bayazid Gelair, a very prudent prince,  
thinking it wou'd be for his advantage to keep a  
correspondence with 'em, join'd his troops with  
theirs, and march'd towards the city of Sebz.

Prince Hadgi Berlas, uncle of Timur, rais'd  
as many troops as he was able in the citys of  
Kech and Carschi, and other neighbouring pro-  
vinces, to withstand 'em; but he at last chang'd  
his resolution, and before the two armies met,  
march'd to Corassiana.

#### C H A P. IV.

*The rise of Mir Hussein, grandson of Mir Ca-  
zagan: he is assisted by Timur-Bec.*

The first  
mention of  
Timur-  
Bec.

**P**OLICY is preferable to valor; but when  
these two virtues are united in a general,  
they never fail to form a great man.

Good counsel defeats armys; with the arms  
of policy, a single man may destroy a hundred;  
and an arrow well aim'd, never fails to find a  
place in the heart of the enemy.

<sup>6</sup> Otherwise, the Jaxartes, which separates Tranfoxiana from  
the country of Gere.

<sup>7</sup> These are the antient Mogul hords, mention'd in the histo-  
ry of Genghiz Can.

## Book I.

Timur-Bec  
first shews  
his wisdom  
at the age  
of 25.

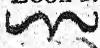
This is plainly to be seen in the affair we are going to relate: for when the prince Hadgi Berlas, on advice of the march of the troops of Gete, had abandon'd his own country, and all his effects, to retire into Corassana, and had cross'd the river Gihon; Timur-Bec, his nephew, who was a prince of a discerning spirit, well knew, that if he kept a long time from action, his country and principality wou'd not fail of being ravag'd and destroy'd, since his father Tragai dy'd the same year, and his uncle Hadgi Berlas was fled: he believ'd there was no other prince than himself who cou'd put a stop to the ruin or insult a foreign army was about to bring on his country; he had to do with a mighty enemy, who had already brought the empire into great danger; he saw the evil which was about to fall on his people, and that the storm was approaching. This young prince, who had scarce arriv'd at his 25th year, and by consequence had not yet obtain'd sufficient experience, fail'd not to undertake an affair so full of difficultys; he repair'd to the banks of the Gihon, and gave his advice to prince Hadgi Seifeddin Berlas, concerning the great dangers a country is expos'd to in the absence of a prince, and the violence the enemys were about to offer his people if he did not prevent 'em. " As a " kingdom without a leader, says he, resembles " a body without a soul, I think it proper, since " you design to go into Corassana, that I shou'd " return to Kech; and after I have given fresh " encouragement to the inhabitants of that " country, I shou'd go thence to throw my-self " at the feet of the grand Can, and offer him " my service: I will gain acquaintance with " the princes and lords of his court, and lastly " endeavor, by all ways imaginable, to divert " the

“ the tempest that threatens our country : by Chap. 4.  
“ which means I will save from inevitable ruin  
“ the poor people whom God hath put under  
“ our care ; an account of which he will one  
“ day require of us.”

Hadgi Berlas was persuaded, that Timur in these discourses was inspir'd from heaven ; wherefore he approv'd his advice, and this young prince departed. When he was arriv'd at Cuzar, he met Hadgi Mahmud Chah Yefouri, who was order'd to conduct the scouts of the army of Gete, and in hopes of a large booty had made great haste, having a design to spare nothing. He behav'd himself so handsomly towards this general, that he promis'd to commit no hostility against him before he had had a conference with the princes, and made a truce with 'em : the soldiers, notwithstanding the desire they had to commit disorders, stay'd at this place. Timur-Bec departed for Kech, where he found the three princes of Gete already arriv'd ; he had a conference with 'em after a handsom reception. They shew'd the pleasure they had in his submitting to the grand Can of Gete, and gave him the command of ten thousand men, who were formerly under prince Caratchar Nevian, his grandfather's great grandfather ; as likewise the principality of Kech, with all its dependences. Thus, by the good conduct of this prince, the torrent of misfortunes, which were about to over-run this country, was stopp'd, and the people again enjoy'd peace, of which they had utterly despair'd ; for which reason, it was said, that at the sight of him alone, sorrow was chang'd into joy, and mortality into immortality. Those who had the least insight into things, imagin'd that this good success, how small soever, wou'd be of conse-

Timur  
made  
prince of  
Kech.



Book I.  quence to Timur-Bec; but they did not foresee that this was nothing in comparison of the vast grandeur which he must attain to.

Timur-Bec, after this conference with the princes of Gete, took his leave of 'em, and apply'd himself in a particular manner to the care of his country: he gave orders for troops to be rais'd between the country of Sebz and the river Gihon, and got together a good army, with which he march'd to join Kefer Yefouri. In the mean time there arose a dissension between the princes of Gete, for which reason they caus'd all their troops to march out of this country to attend Togluc Timur Can; and at that time Bayazid Gelair join'd our prince with all his friends.

## C H A P. V.

*Several intrigues between Timur and Hadgi Berlas; as also between the other princes.*

**T**HE Emir Hussein, grandson of Mir Cazagan, at that time departed from Cabul, with intention to make war on Beyan Selduz; for which reason he sent an ambassador to Timur-Bec, Bayazid, and Kefer Yefouri, to beg their assistance, whilst he rais'd an army. Our princes held a council, wherein it was resolv'd, that Timur-Bec and Kefer shou'd go in person to assist the Emir Hussein, and that Bayazid shou'd repair to Togluc Timur Can, to remove all occasions of blaming 'em from the princes of the court of Gete, and to be present and able to answer the objections made against the assistance given to Hussein.

Bayazid

Bayazid immediately departed to execute this design: but when he learnt at his arrival at Cogende that Toglug Timur Can was return'd with his army, he waited till his men were join'd on the bank of the Sihon; after which he chang'd his resolution, and went no farther. On the other hand, the princes Timur-Bec and Kefer march'd with their troops in order of battel; for the soldiers were so well instructed in the military art, that they never broke their ranks either upon their march or during action.

When they had pass'd the iron gate, which we have already mention'd, they join'd the Emir Hussein, and march'd with him towards the fortrefs of Chaduman, where Beyan Selduz was: but this prince, who did not think himself in a condition to resist 'em, resolv'd to retire to Bedakchan, whither they pursu'd him; so that Chah Behaddin, who was king of that country, was also oblig'd to fly, and to abandon that city, which caus'd the whole country to fall into the hands of the Emir Hussein, who there made laws at his pleasure, and assur'd himself of the government of it: after which he put to death Kei Cobad, brother of Kei Cosru, prince of Catlan. When the Emir Hussein, contented with what had been done, by the assistance of Timur-Bec and Kefer Yefouri, saw himself in possession of the greatest honors, he thank'd 'em; and they immediately departed for their own country. And as it was requisite, to arrive at that of the Emir Kefer, for 'em to pass over the territorys of Timur-Bec, this prince, who was generous, and lov'd to appear magnificent, fail'd not to give him a good reception on this occasion; for when the Emir was arriv'd at Kechem, on the frontiers of Bedakchan, Timur went before him with so much haste, that in four days

*Book I.* and four nights he arriv'd at the city of Sebz, fifteen days journey on horseback from thence; and at nine in the morning at Oluc Meidan, a pleasure-house belonging to Kech, where he generally pass'd the summer. He presently gave orders for a magnificent feast; and when Kefer was near the place, Timur-Bec went to meet him, and receiv'd him with all the respect due to his birth and quality. The most delicious meats, the most excellent liquors, and the choicest fruits and perfumes, were at this banquet. The guests were no less pleas'd with the ball which follow'd, and the concerts of musick with which they were entertain'd.

After the feast prince Kefer departed for his own country, and the noble Timur stay'd in his usual place of residence. His clemency extended equally to the poor as well as the rich; all the country felt the effects of his justice; the people enjoy'd a constant pleasure under his happy government; and the state became more flourishing than it had ever been.

Mir Hussein begs assistance of Timur a second time.

Soon after, Togluc Selduz committed several acts of hostility against Mir Hussein, who having been formerly protected by Timur-Bec, sent an express to let him know that prince Togluc had violated the peace: he also sent the like advice to Bayazid and Kefer Yefouri.

Timur, according to his wonted generosity, caus'd troops to be levy'd, to assist Mir Hussein a second time: he march'd at their head; and having met Emir Kefer at the iron gate, who came to join his troops with him, they went together to the Emir Hussein, who was at Hissar, otherwise call'd the fortress of Chaduman.

The enemy no sooner had advice of their approach than he fled. The Emir Hussein, who was thus deliver'd from him without drawing a sword, fail'd

fail'd not to go and meet his protectors: he acknowledged his obligations; and having magnificently treated 'em, he waited on each of 'em back. Chap. 5.

When Timur had pass'd the iron gate, he learnt, that Hadgi Berlas, his uncle, who, whilst the troops of Gete came to attack his country, was retir'd into Corassana, was now upon his return to Kech; that he had had a conference with Mir Bayazid; that they had both resolv'd to join their troops to make war on prince Kefer Yefouri; and that Hadgi Berlas had already began to put the army in order which he was to command. This news being soon confirm'd, Timur pass'd with his troops by the frontiers of the province of Kech, and join'd prince Kefer, with whom he departed for the city of Kech.

Hadgi Berlas no sooner had advice of their march, than he put himself in a posture of defence; and when he was near Kech, the two armies came in view at a place call'd Akiar. They gave the signal for battel by the sound of kettle-drums, and presently there were heard on all sides the cries of soldiers who were encourag'd to smite their enemys: there was so great a dust, that one cou'd not see a person at four paces distance; yet the soldiers of both armies did not mix together: blood flow'd from all sides, and every one gave the best proofs of his valor. The fight was so bloody, that the authors, who have mention'd the battels of Roustem and Esfendiar, have describ'd them less terrible than these. At length the victory fell on the side of the brave Timur, by the death of the principal officers of the army of Berlas, who was oblig'd to fly to Samarcand to join Mir Bayazid.

Timur's  
victory  
over his  
uncle.



Book I.

Timur<sup>a</sup> with the army of Sebz, and Kefer with his, resolv'd to pursue him as far as Samarcand; but fate had otherwise order'd it: all the troops of Kech, I know not by what motive, abandon'd Timur in the midst of his march, and came over to Hadgi Berlas, inso-much that there remain'd with Timur only prince Yakou<sup>b</sup>.

This desertion of the troops of Kech had so sad an effect on the mind of Kefer Yefouri, that he began to grow jealous of Timur; and had so bad an opinion of him, that he could not forbear giving marks of it both by his words and actions; for this reason Timur at length quitted him, and return'd to his own country with prince Yakou, who was willing to accompany him.

Hadgi Berlas gave Timur a friendly reception, and conducted him to Mir Bayazid; they shew'd abundance of joy at his return, and in appearance entertain'd him as handsomly as he cou'd expect.

The rup-  
ture of the  
friendship  
between  
Timur and  
Kefer Ye-  
fouri.

Timur the more resented this action of Kefer, in that he had always behav'd himself in a friendly manner towards him, and had never omitted shewing marks of his sincerity and perfect friendship; he was so sensible of the affront, that he thought himself obliged in honor to resent the injustice done him, for which cause he willingly consented to the resolution that Mir Bayazid and Hadgi Berlas had taken to make war on Kefer; whereupon they got together an army, and march'd towards his country. Timur, animated

<sup>a</sup> Timur-Bec is sometimes call'd Timur only, because Timur is his name, Bec being a title that signifies lord of a province.

<sup>b</sup> The son of Mobarek, son of Dogan, son of Cadan, son of Caratchar Neyian.

by his desire of revenging himself on Kefer, Chap. 5:  
march'd at the head of the vanguard. After having past the mountain of Keech, they met the enemy's army in a place nam'd Surouch. Kefer then reflected, but too late, on the fault he had committed: he thought repentance wou'd be useless, and thereupon gaining fresh vigor, he with great difficulty ranged his army in order for battel; the soldiers mix'd together with frightful cries, and the field of battel was in a moment red with their blood. Prince Kefer, after a long and vain resistance, was oblig'd to yield to the valor of the enemy, and fly.

This victory secur'd prince Bayazid in the throne, and put Hadgi Berlas in peaceable possession of his own country; but the unlucky star of Bayazid did not permit him to foresee in what manner he ought to behave himself to preserve his good fortune; the next day he had an intrigue with Hadgi Berlas to the disadvantage of Timur: this prince, thro his foresight, discover'd it in the council, and being then persuaded that he did not act sincerely with him, pretended that his nose bled, and went out, and as soon as he got home, took his quiver and other arms, mounted his horse and went into the field, confiding in the assistance of heaven, which had never abandon'd him: and so he sav'd himself from the snare prepar'd for him.

As soon as Hadgi Berlas knew of the departure of Timur, he sent after him to let him know, that he had just receiv'd advice that Abdalla the son of Taifou, and Zende Hacham son of Mehemed Aperdi, had rais'd troops to make war on them: for which reason he desir'd him not to pass the River, but to get together the troops of the desert; that for his part he wou'd send

Book I. send forces under the conduct of prince Chougam, to oppose them, and to hinder the sad accidents that might happen. As soon as Timur was advertis'd of what was past, he assembled the troops of the desert, and without waiting the arrival of Chougam, he march'd back, and Mir Bayazid departed at the same time from Kech to return to Cogende. Timur was no sooner arriv'd near Termed, than doctor Ali Gurguri, leaving the study of the sciences, took on him a command in the army; he came to meet this prince with his troops to give him battel in a place named Encar. The meeting and defeat of the warlike doctor were the same thing to Timur, since he routed him at the first charge; and pursuing him as far as the old city of Termed, he dispers'd his troops, did what he thought fit in the country, and even encamp'd in that city.

## CH A P. VI.

*The king of the Getes returns to Transoxiana with a great army. The death of Hadgi Berlas. The Can confirms Timur in the possession of his country of Kech, and of a Toman of ten thousand men.*

An. Dom.  
1360.  
Heg. 762.  
Mog. The  
Ox.

THE ambition of governing in Transoxiana was rekindled in the mind of Togluc Timur Can, which caus'd his bringing into the field a great army, with which he fell upon that kingdom. As soon as he was arriv'd at Cogende, Mir Bayazid, who was prince of that place, paid him his respects according to custom. Beyan Selduz went to meet this Can with abundance

dance of ceremony as far as Samarcand; and Hadgi Berlas, far from opposing him as he had before done, trusted in providence, and went likewise to meet him.


During these transactions, the Can seiz'd on Mir Bayazid, and put him to death, which made Hadgi Berlas afraid lest he shou'd be serv'd so too; he therefore fled into his country of Kech, whence he brought some troops, with which he cross'd over the river Gihon: they were overtaken by the regiment of Cachmir belonging to the army of Gete, who follow'd their track. The Cachmirians immediately attack'd 'em, and there was a bloody battel, in which Chougam Berlas was kill'd. Hadgi Berlas retir'd into Corassana; when being at one of the villages of Jouvin named Corache, which is dependent of Sebzuar, he was surpriz'd by a company of robbers, who assassinated him and his brother Idekou. Corassana was soon after conquer'd by the army of Gete; and one may truly say, that Timur was wholly reveng'd by the hands of the Getes for all the unjust and traiterous actions of the princes of that country: for after he had slain the assassins of his uncle, he join'd by the Can's permission the village of Corache to the hereditary countrys of Hadgi Berlas; the soil of which is fruitful thro the industry of the people.

Death of  
Hadgi Ber-  
las, uncle  
of Timur.

Justice  
done by  
Togluc  
Timur  
Can to  
Hadgi Ber-  
las.

There was at that time at the court of Gete a prince whose name was Mir Hamid, of the tribe of Kurlukut, who highly distinguish'd himself among the other lords of the court by his fine genius, prudence, and policy, which obtain'd him the favor of the grand Can; inso-much that whatever he propos'd was approv'd of, and he was never refus'd any thing he request-ed. As he was a friend to Timur, he laid hold  
on



Book I.  on every opportunity to represent to the Can the good qualitys and extraordinary valor of that prince, in so enticing a manner, that the Can took pleasure in hearing him: he begg'd of him the countrys which belong'd to Timur by right of succession; the Can granted 'em, and at the same time sent an express to our prince to come before him: he gave him the handsomest reception imaginable, and confirm'd him in the sovereignty of all the province of Kech, and of a Toman, which descended to him by the death of Hadgi Berlas, with all its dependences.

A body of  
ten thou-  
sand men,

In the winter of this year the Can resolv'd to make war on Mir Hussein, and he brought an army into the field for that purpose; Mir Hussein also rais'd troops, and march'd as far as the river Vakech, where he encamp'd to wait the army of the Can, which arriv'd there after having pass'd the iron gate of Coluga.

When the two armys came in view, they were rang'd in order of battel. Kei Cosru prince of Catlan, whose brother, Kei Kobad, Mir Hussein had put to death, abandon'd with his troops Mir Hussein, and came over to the army of Gete. This desertion oblig'd Mir Hussein to fly; the victorious Can pursu'd him, cross'd the Gihon, and came as far as Condoz. His troops plunder'd all the people of that country even to the mountain of Hendoukech, and the army encamp'd the following spring and summer in those parts.

Return of  
Togluc  
Timur to  
Samar-  
cand.

At the beginning of autumn the Can return'd to Samarcand, and in his way put to death the prince Beyan Selduz and others, who he suspected were inclin'd to revolt from him: at the same time he behav'd himself obligingly to those who, as he was assur'd, remain'd firm

in his interest : and having made the empire of Transoxiania submit to his authority, and constrain'd all the princes, some by his sweet temper, others by force, to take an oath of fidelity to him ; he gave the government of the conquer'd countrys to his own son Elias Coja Aglen, and order'd several lords and captains of his court to attend on the person of the prince under the command of Bikidgek. Prince Timur had in charge the principal administration of affairs of state under that prince, because of his wisdom. At length the Can departed for the place of his ordinary residence.

---

C H A P. VII.

*Timur-Bec marches in search of Emir Hussein.*

WE always find that adversity succeeds prosperity ; Joseph did not arrive to the highest pitch of grandeur, till he had suffer'd the utmost disgrace : the same happen'd in a manner to prince Timur ; for after Tögluc Timur Can had departed from Transoxiana to return to Gete, Bikidgek, to whom he had given the superiority over all the lords of Gete, of whom consisted the court of his son Elias, was not obedient to the orders of the Can ; for besides his not rendring justice to others, he was even so insolent as to commit acts of hostility against the Can himself. Timur, who foresaw the great disorders this contempt of the Can's commands wou'd cause in the kingdom, thought it not advisable to stay there, and therefore went to seek Mir Hussein ; he underwent many difficultys to join this prince, who he knew  
was


**Book I.** was in the deserts, because they had receiv'd no intelligence of him: but at last he met him in the deserts of Kivac, near the well of Sag-hedg.

These two malecontent princes went to find out Tekil governor of Kivac; but he had a villanous design to seize 'em: his malice was discover'd, and they parted from him, accompany'd by no more than sixty men, and went towards Layab. Tekil pursu'd them with a thousand horse well arm'd, and overtook them: they immediately prepar'd themselves to give him battel, notwithstanding their small number: the fight was bloody, and it was carry'd on with an admirable intrepidity and prudence. Tagi Bonga Berlas, and Seifeddin distinguish'd themselves among the rest; tho' their horses were kill'd, they fail'd not to fight on foot in the sand, as did Eltchi Behader, who had his horse shot under him, yet nevertheless fought with extreme valor, with his bow in his hand. Timur, who was willing to partake of the glory, and had a particular regard to the safety of so great a man, snatch'd the bow out of his hand, and broke the string, lest his intrepidity shou'd cause his death. They fought with so much vigor, that there remain'd only fifty horse of the thousand which Tekil had brought into the field, who were not kill'd or wounded; and of the sixty whom our princes had with 'em, there remain'd but seven. Hussein, if one may so say, collected all his strength into his arm, and rush'd full speed upon Tekil; he split in two the enemy's standard, and struck terror into the most courageous. In the mean time Tekil's men surrounded Hussein, and had slain him, if Timur with sword in hand had not made his way thro' the midst of 'em, and dispers'd

pers'd 'em, to facilitate the means for Mir Hussein to disengage himself. They presently rally'd, and return'd to the charge; Hussein's horse being wounded with an arrow, fell under him; and this Prince had continu'd fighting on foot, if the princess Dilshadaga his wife had not got off her horse to give it him. Timur, whose valor and good fortune had never let him miss an opportunity of acquiring glory, turn'd about in the perilous condition he found himself in, and with an invincible courage rush'd into the midst of the enemy's troops, with his sword in one hand, and his bow in the other. He aim'd an arrow so successfully, that he shot Tekil the general of this unfortunate army in the face; who fell from his horse, and Timur with a half-pike, which he took from off the ground, gave him so violent a blow, that he join'd his body to the earth. And thus ended the battel with the ambition of the perfidious Tekil.

Timur made Hussein mount his horse; they re-entred the desert, tho they had but seven soldiers, and at last were abandon'd by three of this small number, who were of Corassan. Timur was not more surpriz'd at this misfortune than at any other; for this prince had as much resolution in adversity, as he had moderation in prosperity: he comforted the companions of his troubles, and encourag'd 'em by his discourses. At last it was resolv'd, they shou'd separate, that they might not be known in the desert; he went before with the princess Turcan Aga his wife, the sister of Hussein, accompany'd only by one faithful servant. He pass'd the desert, and arriv'd at Joursei, where he met a hord of Turcomans: these brutish men gave the alarm to their com-



Book I.  panions, and they surrounded him. Timur hid his princess in a sort of pit, recommended himself to God, and then march'd towards 'em sword in hand; but a Turcoman nam'd Hadgi Mehemed knew him, and prevented their attacking him: the Turcomans made him satisfaction, and endeavour'd by their services, and an entertainment which lasted all night, to make reparation for the want of respect which they had shewn to his person. The next day prince Timur gave 'em marks of his liberality; presenting 'em with a ruby of great price, and two embroider'd suits of armor cover'd with pearls of inestimable value. Hadgi Mehemed made choice of three horses, which he presented to Timur, with all things necessary for his journey; and gave him a servant nam'd Sareg Coulangi to serve him as a guide: in this condition he went to join Emir Hussein, who had taken another road; and after their meeting they came to a place call'd Mahmoudi, and got off their horses near a well in the desert, where they staid about twelve days.

Mir Hussein and Timur betray'd by Ali Bei,

In the mean while, Ali Bei the son of Argon-chah had advice of their arrival at Mahmoudi; his ill fortune prompted him to march against them with sixty arm'd horse: our princes were surpriz'd, and led to Macan, where Ali Bei for their prison order'd 'em a dark chamber, the furniture of which was very mean; and it was so very nasty, that there was no living there.

Mehemed the brother of Ali Bei, having advice of the injurious manner in which his brother treated these lords, foresaw that this affair wou'd one day be of ill consequence to him: he therefore sent from the frontiers of Tous presents to Timur and Mir Hussein; and wrote to his

his brother in terms which reproach'd his indiscretion, and expressly advis'd him to give the princes their liberty, and to ask pardon of 'em for the ill treatment he had us'd towards 'em, and to comfort them as much as possible. But the malice of Ali Bei wou'd not let him take this advice. He seiz'd on his brother's presents, and did not free them from their prison till the end of sixty two days: and he was of so ungenerous a temper, that when he granted them their liberty, he gave them but one poor lean horse, and an old camel. They were in this distress, when Mobarekchah prince of Sandger, and a friend to Timur, had advice of their misfortune; he went to seek them with his children, and having testify'd his sorrow for their affliction, presented Timur with several fine horses, and gave him all the assistance he was able. Timur receiv'd them with joy, and, according to his wonted generosity, gave the horses to Mir Hussein.

Then these two princes consulted what they shou'd do in their present condition: and they came to a resolution that Mir Hussein shou'd go to Hirmen, a place proper to pass the winter in; and that Timur shou'd return into his own country, that he might be able at length to rejoin Mir Hussein at Hirmen, with Tounen, prince of the tribe of Mikouzeri.

They departed according to this resolution; the Emir Hussein towards Hirmen, and Timur towards Kech. After he had cross'd the river, and arriv'd at Bocar-Zendan, a village of Bocarra, he there left the princess Olagiaz Turcan one of his wives, because his affairs oblig'd him to that precaution, that he might not be discover'd in his journey: he departed secretly, and pass'd without being discover'd thro his

Book I.

Timur  
swims o-  
ver the  
Gihon.

own country of Kech. In the mean while Te-  
monke Coutchin knew of his arrival, and came  
to meet him with about fifteen men. Timur  
order'd him to follow him, and they went to  
the mountain Cuzar, which they pass'd over next  
morning; and in the evening arriv'd at Acoubi,  
where they cross'd the Gihon, and enter'd the  
desart: but because the weather was exceeding  
hot, they were oblig'd to stay a whole month  
on the bank of the river, under the shade of a  
little wood, during which time the litter\* of  
the princess Turcan, which was departed from  
Bocar-Zendan, and mov'd but slowly, arriv'd  
there. And perceiving at some distance a dust  
rais'd by a great number of horsemen, they  
thought it convenient to cross the river; Ti-  
mur went on horseback into the water, whilst  
the horse that carry'd the princess's litter fol-  
low'd him: this oblig'd all the company to do  
the same, notwithstanding the rapidity of this  
great river, which they all safely cross'd. From  
thence they enter'd into the desart, where they  
staid some days, during which time Timur learnt  
that the people were gone out of their Ilak, that  
is, a place proper to pass the summer in: And  
this news made him desirous to go thither, and  
enjoy the cool season; he repair'd thither with  
his company, and having pass'd a month there,  
they march'd towards Samarcand. Timur went  
down to the princess Cotluc Turcan, his eldest  
sister, and staid with her forty eight days; but  
as soon as he learnt that the people knew him,  
he took horse and went to the meadow of

\* By the word litter is to be understood a four-corner'd nich,  
adorn'd with brocade within, and cover'd on the outside with  
red Indian linen, in which the ladies in the Levant are carry'd.  
This nich is convey'd by a horse, camel, or mule.



Kech, where he lodg'd in a village call'd Achi-  
ghi forty eight days longer : after this he de-  
parted along the banks of the Gihon, where he  
met Timur Coja Aglen, and Behram Gelair,  
with whom he went to Candahar, as he had  
promis'd Mir Hussein. God favor'd their de-  
sign; for when they were arriv'd at Hirmen,  
which was the place of rendezvous, they found  
Mir Hussein with Toumen : and here Behram  
Gelair parted from them, and fled into India.

Chap. 8.

C H A P. VIII.

*Several warlike exploits of Timur and  
Hussein.*

A Bout this time the prince of Sistan was en-  
gag'd in war; but being too weak to  
defend himself against his enemy, he was oblig'd  
to beg assistance of our princes, to whom he  
made known the danger he was in. Upon this  
they march'd to join him with a thousand good  
soldiers well equipp'd: the prince went to re-  
ceive them with great ceremony, and promis'd  
that if thro their assistance he shou'd be de-  
liver'd from his enemy, and regain his former  
prosperity, he wou'd in return present them  
with a great many precious stones, and ac-  
knowledg the obligation as long as he liv'd.  
These princes forthwith march'd against his ene-  
my, attack'd and defeated him; but the prince  
of Sistan not being in a condition to perform  
his promises, only return'd 'em thanks for what  
they had done. When our princes were departed  
from Sistan, they met a great company of Segh-

Mir Hus-  
sein and  
Timur de-  
part for  
Sistan.



Book I. zians\*, who waited their coming, with design to fight 'em. The arrows and darts flew from both sides, and particularly from Timur's, who being got into the midst of his enemys, let fly his arrows against 'em, and also rush'd with sword in hand upon the most valiant men, several of whom he slew outright; his war-club and lance also render'd him as formidable to all those whom fortune plac'd in his way. The slaughter which he soon made, oblig'd the enemys to employ all their strength against him alone; they oppress'd him with their arrows, and tho he always made a vigorous defence, he was dangerously wounded in the hand: nevertheless the Seghzians being over-power'd by our brave men, were put to the rout, and at length entirely defeated.

Timur wounded in the hand: Hezarfen says that he became paralytic, and lame by that wound.

After this victory, our princes return'd to Kichlac. Timur staid at the camp of Toumen to be heal'd of his wound, and Hussein march'd towards Bacalan with ninety men: he met Ajouni younger brother of Bikhidgek, who oppos'd his passage with his troops. Hussein was necessitated to fight; but his soldiers, over-power'd by the great number of the enemys, were vanquish'd; and Hussein troubled at this disgrace, fled to Cheberto, accompany'd by twelve men only.

Timur recovers of his wound, and marches towards Arsef.

Timur was no sooner heal'd of his wound, than he march'd towards Arsef with Timur Coja Agien, and twenty four others. When he was arriv'd at Kehmerdi, he learnt news of the defeat and flight of Hussein; and sent one of his


\* A people inhabiting the country of Seghze, near Segestan or Sistan.

\* Winter-quarters.

\* Saddle Berlas, descended from Ulder, son of Caratchar Neviau.

men to let him know of his recovery, and to invite him to come to Arsef. Timur continu'd his road, and met Saddic Berlas<sup>†</sup>, who with a design to serve under him, had pass'd the desert with fifteen of his domesticks to seek him. Timur receiv'd him handsomly, and immediately sent to Hussein, to let him know that the sooner he came to join him the better. In the mean time, Timur on the road perceiving a hundred horse, sent a foot-soldier to know who they were; who brought him word that their chief was Cazanchi the son of Hasan, who upon the news of Mir Hussein's arrival in the country of Bacalan, came to seek him. In short, Timur found these men were friends, because their leader had wheel'd his horse about on an eminence in token of joy: he then join'd them, and they went together towards Arsef, from whence he sent spys, who brought him word the next day that they perceiv'd at some distance a body of horse. Timur immediately mounted, and advanc'd to join them: he ask'd them who they were; they answer'd, we are officers of the invincible Timur: he spur'd his horse into the middle of them, and found Tocluc Coja Berlas, prince Seifeddin, Aiche and Tutuk, accompany'd by seventy chosen soldiers. These brave men, from the esteem they had for the valor of Timur, had voluntarily engag'd in his service: when they had found what they sought for, they alighted off their horses, and kissed the ground on which he stood, a ceremony us'd towards the greatest princes. Timur return'd home, and the next day they

<sup>†</sup> Saddic Berlas, descended from Uder, son of Carachar Nevian.

Book I.  descry'd another body of horse who came from Kehmerdi; they found that it was Chir Behram, who after having staid at the camp of Toumen, whilst Timur departed thence, came to find him, repenting of what he had done. He learnt that Mir Hussein was also coming to meet Timur, being informed of his cure by Saddic and his servant Sevendge.

Ouloum Couli with a hundred and thirty horse, and Mamut Keli with a hundred and fifty foot, also offer'd their service to our prince in Arsef: he receiv'd 'em willingly, and they had the satisfaction to learn from his own mouth the adventures which had happen'd to him during his absence.

They also having advice that Mengheli Bouga Selduz, their sworn enemy, had fortify'd himself in Olatchou, immediately march'd towards this citadel to force it: but Chir Behram, Mengheli's friend, warded off this blow by desiring Timur to let him go to him, under pretence of persuading him to relent by his remonstrances, and even to bring him before him. The prince consented to it, but Mengheli prefer'd flight to all other advice.

About the same time three hundred men of Doulan Jaoun, dependent of Culm, who formerly were in the service of Timur's relations, came to offer him their service.


These troops very much strengthen'd the two princes; they departed from Arsef for Souf, which is a defile of mountains, where Amles son of Toumen was at the head of two hundred men, to favor the march of the cavalry of Balc.: and this captain, being inform'd of the good condition Timur and Hussein were in, join'd those princes.



In the mean while Temouke was sent with Chap. 8.  
three persons to the iron gate to gain intelligence; he arriv'd there after having pass'd the river Termed, and learnt that the army of Gete was retir'd from thence, having first ravag'd all the country. Temouke at this place met his relations, who, after a thousand caresses, told him that his wife and children were encamp'd in the neighbourhood, and they besought him very much to go and see them: but the generous Temouke refus'd to do so, and bravely answer'd, that when the master was driven from his house, it was not decent that the servant shou'd enter his.

Timur and Hussein departed from Souf with their little army, pass'd the straits of Ghez, and came into the plain of Oliai Bouga. They there learnt that the princes Soliman Berlas, Emir Moufa, Yakou Berlas, Hendouke Berlas, and many others with their troops, hearing of the success of their affairs, had broke the peace with the Getes, in order to join them, and that they were already arriv'd at Termed; but to be more particularly inform'd, they hasten'd Toulan Bouga towards the Gihon, with order to march all night, and even to cross the river, to learn news, and to return forthwith. For their part, they departed from Oliai Bouga, and enter'd into the country of Balc: here three princes their enemys, viz. Aboufaïd, son of Taisou; Mengheli Bouga Selduz, who had fled from the citadel of Olatchou to Aboufaïd his son-in-law; and Haider Andkoudi, were united, after having got together six thousand men, with whom they design'd to attack our princes. In short, they no sooner heard of the arrival of the two princes, than excited by hate and ambition, they march'd with their troops



Book I.  troops towards their camp, stopp'd on the banks of the river Abysiah, which separated the two camps, and laid ambuscades in all the passages of that river.

Timur, who was well skill'd in the art of conquering, came to the bank of the river to put a stop to the first onset of the enemy, and to wait the arrival of his friends: he insensibly gain'd what time he had need of; and behav'd himself so circumspcctly, with regard to the march of each, that the enemy's army was oblig'd a great while to move along the bank of the river near the straits of Ghez to find a place fordable, with design to come to blows; which, thro Timur's prudence, they were not able to do till they came in sight of the city of Balc.

Then the two parties rang'd their troops in such manner, that the main body was between the right and left wing; and the brook nam'd Abdalla lay between the two armys. During these preparations, the princes, who we said before were near Termed, join'd our party: Temouke arriv'd also, and gave advice of every thing he had observ'd beyond the Gihon, as well in relation to the army of the Geres, as concerning other particulars.

Mr Huf-  
sein and  
Timur  
fight A-  
boufaid,  
Mengheli  
Bouga,  
and Hai-  
der.

The combat began about noon, and lasted till night: Temouke was dangerously wounded: guards and centinels were fix'd in all places convenient for 'em. As soon as day-light appear'd, the soldiers of both armys, on the sound of the kettle-drums, gave a great shout, excited by a desire for fighting. Timur, with his wonted intrepidity, pass'd the bridge, and fell upon the enemy, tho their army was much more numerous than his, and wholly compos'd of valiant soldiers. This boldness struck fear into all the enemy,

enemys, who cou'd not withstand the bravery of our prince, but fled with great confusion.

After this victory Hussein and Timur review'd their soldiers, and found only two thousand horse: Timur reserv'd one part to himself, and with 'em went before towards the Gihon, which he cross'd at Termed in a bark; and after having encamp'd on the bank of the river, he sent scouts to the iron gate of Coluga, who being fatigu'd, fell asleep, insomuch that Ajouni, younger brother of Bikidgek, unexpectedly came upon 'em with his troops. Timur, who rely'd on his scouts, was afraid of nothing; and his soldiers were resting themselves in their tents, when, on a sudden, both the scouts and enemy arriv'd at their camp.

Our men had not time to rally, nor fix themselves in order of battel to oppose the enemy: all they cou'd do, after abandoning their tents, was to embark for repassing the river; whilst our hero maintain'd his ground with a handful of brave men, and staid in an isle, where he sustain'd the enemys attack with more than human valor; so that he gave time to his troops to cross the river, and he himself soon follow'd.

The two parties remain'd a whole month in sight of each other, on each side the river; and Timur having caus'd the barks to be burnt, departed at length for Culm, on the frontiers of Balc, where he join'd Hussein with the rest of the army.

The two princes march'd to Condoz, where they got together the troops of the tribe of Boroldai, with which they turn'd towards Bedakchan. At their arrival at Taikan, they made peace with the kings of Bedakchan. They then return'd to Arhenk, and after having cross'd the river near Saliserai, went to Carlan, pass'd the desert,

Hussein  
and Timur  
make  
peace with  
the kings  
of Taikan  
and Be-  
dakchan.

fart, and encamp'd in a place nam'd Ghulec. Here Hussein openly complain'd of Chir Behram, even before his face, and before Poulad Bouga, in that he wou'd return to his province : he told him he did not act with honor, in abandoning them when they were near the enemy, and had so great occasion for soldiers. Timur gave him his advice, and us'd him very kindly, that he might oblige him to stay with 'em ; but he wou'd not : and tho his humorfom temper was enough to provoke Hussein, yet he disssembled his resentment ; and Chir Behram parted for Belgevan<sup>†</sup>.

---

## C H A P. IX.

*The rencounter of the army of Gete, and its defeat, caus'd by the policy of Timur-Bec ; with the reduction of the city of Kech.*

**I**N the mean while the news was confirm'd, that Tocluc Selduz, Kei Cosru, and several other princes of Gete, were come at the head of an army of that kingdom ; and that moreover Timur, son of Bubecan Saric Chancoum, Tocluc Coja Berlas, Hadgi Bei, Couch Timur, son of Bikidgek, and other princes of tribes, with their troops, had encamp'd with twenty thousand men between Giala and the bridge Senghin ; and besides all this, above six thousand men had deserted our princes, so that their forces were much inferior in number to those of the Getes : but Timur, who trusted in God, and

---

<sup>†</sup> A town in the province of Catlan, long. 104<sup>°</sup> E. lat. 39<sup>°</sup>



incessantly besought his assistance, frequently repeated this passage of the Alcoran; *How often has a small number of troops, by the permission of God, conquer'd an infinite number of soldiers?* And he was not ignorant, that if God was for him he had nothing to fear. In this disposition of mind, he march'd with two thousand men towards this great army; and meeting 'em at the foot of the bridge of Senghin, he boldly disputed their passage; he fought with extraordinary courage from nine in the morning till night, which gave his Soldiers an opportunity of taking breath. In the mean time Timur reflected upon the great inequality of the forces, and perceiv'd he shou'd not be able to succeed in his designs if his valor was not seconded by policy; he therefore had recourse to this stratagem: he order'd the princes Moufa, Muvaïd, Erlat, and Ouscara Behader, to post themselves at the foot of the bridge with five hundred of the bravest soldiers, whom he wou'd leave with 'em, whilst he swam over the Gihon with the rest between the plain of Issan and Rassic Kech, and posted himself on the mountains.

Timur  
crosses the  
river at  
the bridge  
Senghin.

The next day the enemys scouts knew, by the marks of the horses feet, that troops had pass'd the river in the night. This report made the leaders of the enemys army look about 'em, and hinder'd their fighting that day. When night came, Timur order'd his men to approach 'em, and to light fires on the tops of the hills round their army. This cast fear into the soldiers of Gete, who imagin'd they were surrounded by a numerous army; they therefore fled that night in disorder without fighting: they dar'd not fly towards the bridge because of the five hundred men posted there, and whom they believ'd to be a much greater number, altho the Getes were more

Flight of  
the army  
of the  
Getes.



Book I. more than ten to one. It may be truly said, that the fires kindled on the mountains broke the general's measures, and put a stop to the soldiers valor, since the disorders began among 'em from that time. As soon as Timur perceiv'd the effect of his stratagem, he came down from the mountain like a torrent, and fell upon the enemy sword in hand ; they slew so many of 'em, that there were nothing seen thro-out the field but dead bodys : he pursu'd 'em as far as the plain of Hedgerat ; and Mir Hussein, who arriv'd with the rest of the army, continu'd to make a terrible slaughter of 'em. This defeat wonderfully encourag'd the soldiers of Timur and Hussein, who encamp'd in that plain, while the renown of this victory spread it-self on every side, and gain'd Timur great reputation.

He then decamp'd, and march'd with two thousand men to the iron gate, where he met the inhabitants of Kech, and of the neighbouring places, who had fled from the army of the Getes, and came in multitudes to seek him, and implore his protection. Here Timur chose three hundred men to guard his person, and order'd the others to stay there. He then sent the Emirs Soliman Berlas, Yakou Berlas, Behram Gelair, Gela-leddin Berlas, Seifeddin and Yoltimur, with two hundred of his guards towards Kech ; ordering 'em to form four squadrons, and to fasten on each side their horses two long branches of trees well furnish'd with leaves, that in drawing 'em along they might raise a great dust. They punctually executed this order, which had its desir'd effect ; for the governor of Kech, who saw so much dust upon the plain, believ'd there was a great army : this struck a terror into him, and made him abandon the city ; which Timur's men enter'd without opposition, and there establish'd officers

officers of justice, and all things necessary. Thus Chap. 10.  
fortune, which was always favorable to Timur, caus'd him to triumph over an army by fire, and to conquer a city by dust.

C H A P. X.

*The death of Toglug Timur Can, king of the Getes; and the defeat of his army by the princes Timur-Bec and Hussein.*

ABOUT this time the Can Toglug Ti-  
mur dy'd; and when Elias Coja, his son, receiv'd the news of it, he was encamp'd at Tach Arighi, four leagues from Kech: he had with him the princes and lords of his court, with a numerous army of horse and foot. The princes who brought him this news, were Oluc Tocatur, and Mir Hamid, who came principally to conduct him into his country of Gete, where he was to take possession of the imperial throne of his father.

Death of  
Toglug  
Timur  
Can, in  
1372.

Timur, with his hundred horse, march'd all night to arrive at Cuzar: a vast concourse of people came the next day to prostrate themselves before him: he rais'd some troops out of 'em, which he join'd to those of Kech, and order'd that Coja Selaberi shou'd command the rear of the army, with which he wou'd encamp at Chekedalic; to which place the Cheik Mehemed came to join Timur with seven regiments. They remain'd seven days encamp't at Chekedalic; during which time Mir Hussein arriv'd with his troops, and those Timur had left at the iron gate. Chir Behram, who parted from 'em in the plain of Ghulec, and was gone to see his  
\* family,

Book I. family, return'd also to join 'em with his troops after forty three days absence. They march'd in a body towards Cuzar, under the command of Hussein and Timur; and when they were arriv'd there, they visited the tomb of the illustrious Coja Resmes. After having pray'd to this great Santon to intercede with God for the prosperity of their army, they embrac'd one another, contracted an indissoluble union, and confirm'd the alliance by solemn oaths, taking the Santon to witness the sincerity of their promises.

It is remarkable in history, that great men have often a sort of fore-knowledge of the events which will happen to 'em: the coming of Joseph's father and brothers was reveal'd to him; as was the conquest of Mecca to Mahomet.

Timur's dream, which he imagin'd a good omen; and on it undertakes the battel against Elias Coja.

As Timur was one day considering in what manner he shou'd attack the great army of Elias with the few troops he had, he fell asleep, and in a dream heard a voice, which said to him distinctly, *Fear nothing, for the most high God will graciously give thee the victory.* He awak'd on this; and the more to confirm himself that the revelation was true, he ask'd if any one had spoken while he slept; they answer'd him in the negative: he therefore no longer doubted that the voice came from heaven. This inspir'd him with so much vigor and resolution, that he immediately went to seek Hussein; he told his dream to him, and afterwards to all the army, who were very much encourag'd by this omen, and only sought an opportunity to fight. This happy news chang'd the prince's inquietude into pleasantry and good humor; and the soldiers, whom the present danger had render'd fearful, grew dauntless as soon as it was made known to 'em.

The princes pray'd to God for the prosperity of their arms, and at length took horse, and made all necessary preparations for the battel; ranging their army in order, and dividing it into two bodys. Emir Hussein put himself at the head of the right wing, and Timur commanded the left: and in this order they march'd against Elias.

This new emperor, being encamp'd at Tach Arighi, also divided his army into two bodys: he commanded in person the left wing, and made Mir Hamid his lieutenant-general; and the Emir Tocatmur, and the prince Bikidgek, put themselves at the head of the right.

As soon as the two armies were in fight, they rang'd themselves in form of a half-moon; and the soldiers, animated by their general's speeches, were even mad to engage: a great cry was immediately heard in both armies, and the combatants erected their lances in token of resolution.

The battel began in a place call'd Cabamitan, by the enemys skirmishes, who trusted in the great number of their soldiers, which far surpass'd that of the army of Timur: but these men did not long continue in this disposition; for Timur, without stirring from his post, let fly his arrows against the enemys with such skill, that there was not one who advanc'd that return'd.

Timur's horse at length began the general fight with such a terrible cloud of arrows, that they darken'd the sky, and slew the most forward of the enemys.

Then Timur, follow'd by his soldiers sword in hand, broke thro the opposite wing of the enemy with so much vigor, that he did not give 'em time to make the first discharge of their arrows; the fury with which he rush'd into the



Book I.

middle of the squadrons, struck such a terror into 'em, that they were soon put into disorder : and as on the other hand Hussein was fighting at the head of his men with Bikidgek, never was a battel fought with so much fury, nor so bravely sustain'd. The slaughter of so many men exceedingly fatigu'd our warriors, but at the same time very much heighten'd their courage in exciting their revenge. If Timur charg'd the enemys with so much fury at the beginning of the fight, in the end he behav'd himself with greater bravery; for being seconded by his soldiers, who were animated by his example, he rush'd on the enemys on each side, bearing down all before him : he at length drove the first rank upon the second, which cou'd not sustain the strength of our men, encourag'd by the indefatigable valor of Timur.

At the same time this prince made a great cry to excite his soldiers against those who fled; they pursu'd 'em with their lances, destroying all who fell into their hands : they wou'd never have been weary of slaughter, if Timur had not commanded 'em to desist, and to advance to the right, to charge the rear of the troops commanded by Bikidgek and Tocatmur : these princes fought with extraordinary intrepidity, and by their valor render'd the issue of the battel doubtful; but when they were attack'd on both sides, how bravely soever they behav'd themselves, and notwithstanding the number of their troops, they cou'd not withstand the courage of Timur, their soldiers being constrain'd to give way to his strength, and follow the example of their companions, especially when they saw the bravest of their leaders expire; as Donmsa, colonel of the regiment of Behrin;

Tchanpo,

Tchanpo, a favorite of the grand Can, whom the soldiers regarded as the only support of their valor. The general Tocatmur caus'd no less consternation in the army by his death; as well as Biki, brother of the great general Bikidgek. Dolelet Chah, and two other princes of the blood, increas'd by their death the affliction of the soldiers. Thus at length this army, so formidable for its number, was entirely defeated by a handful of men, if compar'd with the great number of the enemy.

The emperor Elias Coja Can, the princes Bikidgek, Eskender Aglen, Mir Hamid, Josef and Coja Josef, were made prisoners: but the natural generosity of the Turks was of service to the emperor of the Getes; for he was known by some soldiers of Timur's army who had taken him; they got off their horses, and without acquainting their commanders with it, set Elias and Bikidgek on 'em, who fled, and alone sav'd themselves.

Timur march'd all night thro by-ways to the river Yam, to hinder the retreat of those that fled, of whom there were at that place so great a number slain, that the water of the river was red with their blood; and in the mean time he sent the Emirs Yakon and Seifeddin towards Samarcand, to make themselves masters of it, which they did without any resistance. This famous battel happen'd in the year of the Hegira 765.

An. Dom.  
1363.  
Mog. The  
Crocodile.

Timur immediately held a council with Mir Hussein and Chir Behran; after which they departed with all haste to overtake the rest of the enemys that were fled, and especially the grand Can and Bikidgek: they pass'd the Sihon at Cogende, and went to encamp before the city of

E/2

Tach-

Book I. Tachkunt<sup>6</sup>. Here God mix'd bitterness with their prosperity: these princes fell sick, but their sickness did not endure long, for they were cur'd at the arrival of the illustrious princefs Olijai Turcan, who came from a Kichlac, or winter-quarters.

Timur then resolv'd to return home, and repass the river at Cogende. Having a desire to hunt, he had a vast tract of land encompass'd by men; the Emir Hussein did the same in the plain of Dizac: they follow'd this diversion for many days, and then return'd to Samarcand, which they enter'd in a magnificent manner; which was very agreeable to the people, who expected from these princes a milder government than they had enjoy'd under the Getes.

## C H A P. XI.

*The assembly of the princes convened by Timur and the Emir Hussein, in which they elevated Cabulchah Aglen to the dignity of grand Can.*

AFTER the famous victory over the Getes, Tranfoxiana and Turkestan were deliver'd from tyranny: but our princes were in great danger from the small deference the lords paid 'em; for all those who had had any hand in the defeat of the Getes, wou'd have set themselves up for sovereigns, and been independent in their provinces: and they flatter'd themselves

<sup>6</sup> The same as Alchah, a town upon the Sihon, long. 99. lat. 42  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

the more in this design, in that they imagin'd they had sufficient strength to do it. This disorder oblig'd Timur and Hussein, who had the greatest authority, to convene a general assembly, to consider thorowly of the affairs of state; and what appear'd of most consequence, was the choice of a grand Can. The two princes represented to 'em the indispensable necessity of an empire's having a head; and shew'd, that without one it wou'd be impossible to protect themselves against their enemys, and to preserve peace; because if many princes had an absolute command, every one wou'd strive to get the better of the others, and by this means there wou'd be continual wars, which wou'd entirely ruin the people who were under their protection. And that no one might refuse to submit to this chief, they resolv'd to chuse one of the race of Genghiz Can, to preserve the antient custom of the kingdom: they therefore propos'd Cabulchah Aglen<sup>2</sup>, who, that he might not incur the disgraces which commonly happen to princes in great revolutions, had chosen a solitary life, and taken on him the habit of a Dervise, which they stripp'd him of, and put on him the royal mantle. Publick rejoicings were then order'd to be made throout all the city of Samarcand; the people were feasted at the expence of the court, the grandees endeavor'd to appear magnificent by distributing gold and silver; every one dress'd himself in his best clothes; and the most precious furniture, and richest stuffs were hung out; consorts of musick were heard every where, and nothing was spar'd to make this feast magnificent.

---

<sup>2</sup> The son of Dourgi, son of Ilchi Cadai, son of Daya Can.



Book I.

The princes made Cabulchah Aglen ascend the throne, and presented him with the royal cup, according to the custom of the Turkish kings: at length all the princes in their turns bow'd nine times before him, as the chief of each tribe is oblig'd to do to the Can.

After this ceremony they committed Haider prince of Andcoud, who was in irons, into the hands of Zende Hacham, to put him to death; which was accordingly executed the same night, to punish him for the hostilities he had committed against our princes.

Timur continu'd the feast by a noble banquet, with which he entertain'd Mir Hussein; and he thought himself the more oblig'd, in that the place of the assembly was in his own country, and that of his ancestors, and the other lords were strangers.

Title of  
Saheb-Ca-  
ran, i. e.  
Hero of  
the age,  
given to  
Timur.

After this banquet Timur made considerable presents to Hussein, as horses, swords, helmets, and the finest belts; and to render the joy compleat, Timur, to whom was given the surname of great, and Saheb-Caran, that is, the hero of the age, propos'd to Mir Hussein, and prince Oladgia Itou Aperdi, an old man of great experience, to deliver out of prison Emir Hamid, the lieutenant-general of the enemys, whose father had always been his friend; as also prince Eskender his companion, who had been taken in the war. Hussein consented to it in complaisance to Timur, against the proverb, which says, *When the enemy falls into your hands, put it out of his power to hurt you another time, lest you repent of it.* When Mir Hussein had departed for his hord and antient residence at Saliserai, Timur sent the Emirs David and Seifeddin to release Hamid and Eskender Aglen from their confinement, with order to pay

'em all the civilitys imaginable, and to bring them back; but Bayazid and Aimen, in whose hands the prisoners were, had no sooner perceiv'd the two messengers at a distance, than they imagin'd that they came with orders to put Hamid to death; but to save them the trouble, one gave him a great blow with a club on his head, and the other cut it off: thus died the Emir Hamid lieutenant-general of the Getes. When the Emir Hussein had advice of it, he said that the action of the servant was greater than that of the master; and sent an ambassador to demand Eskender Aglen his private enemy, who was sent to him, and put to death.

Our princes staid at their respective habitations all the winter: their affairs were in so good a condition, that they could not at that time desire more prosperity than they enjoy'd.

---

## C H A P. XII.

### *The battel of Lai, or of the sloughs.*

**T**HIS prosperity did not continue long; for at the beginning of the spring news was brought that the Getes had rais'd another army, and that they were marching towards Tranfoxiana. Timur sent advice of it to the Emir Hussein, who order'd Poulad Bouga, Zendechem, and Malek Behader, to put themselves at the head of their troops, and to march forthwith to Timur, who had already rais'd an army. Immediately after their arrival he departed; and when they were got to the plain of Akiar, they review'd the troops, and

Book I. staid some time to refresh the cavalry. They then departed to meet the enemy, and after having pass'd the Sihon at Cogende, they encamp'd on its banks between Tachkunt and Tchinaz. Timur commanded his captains to fortify their quarters; and the enemy's scouts advanc'd when the Emir Hussein arriv'd with his army. He pass'd the Sihon, and encamp'd in a place which was mark'd out for his troops.

Each wing  
had its  
vanguard  
and rear.

Aglen was  
of the roy-  
al house of  
Genghiz  
Can.

The enemy's army encamp'd also on the bank of the river at Ezam; for which reason our princes quitted their camp, and advanc'd towards the Getes. The scouts of the two armys were no sooner in sight, than they rang'd themselves in order of battel. The Emir Hussein commanded the right wing; his rear being led by Petlandgi Erlat, and his vanguard by Oladgia Itou Aperdi, and other brave men. Timur, who was the soul of the army, put himself at the head of the left wing; he gave the command of the rear to prince Sar Bouga, with the troops of Capchac, and of the vanguard to Timur Coja Aglen; he kept the princes Yakou, Seifeddin, Mourad Berlas, and many other valiant men near his person. They march'd in this posture to attack the enemy's army, commanded by the emperor Elias Coja Can. Timur's soldiers were full of presumption and vanity, because they had not only once before conquer'd this very enemy, tho he was superior to 'em, and better provided, but because they themselves were now possess'd of those advantages. But for this their pride they were punish'd, that the observation might be verifi'd, *The day will be unfortunate to the army which depends upon the multitude of its soldiers.* God permitted the Getes, who in the battel of Cabamitan were defeated, notwithstanding their great number,

number, to get the advantage in this, tho they had by far the fewer troops. They us'd for this purpose a stratagem which is said to have been taught 'em by a famous magician.

It is commonly believ'd, that the stone call'd Gedi steep'd in water at a certain hour, has a power to change the air, to produce wind; rain and thunder, and terrible hurricanes; to which stone the Getes, being satisfy'd of their weakness, had recourse. However that be, so great a tempest was rais'd, that the world seem'd ready to fall into its original chaos: it rain'd so excessively, that it look'd like the deluge; many thunderbolts fell, and the lightning and the noise of the thunder astonish'd the most fearless: the earth cou'd no longer be distinguish'd from the sea; horses and oxen swam in the water; the feet of the horses of our army, which were the best in Asia, were stuck so far in the mire, that the skin of their bellies was peel'd off; this excessive moisture caus'd at length an Esterca, a cruel distemper, which slackens the nerves, renders the limbs paralytic, and corrupting the flesh, dries it up, that in a manner nothing appears but the bones and nerves.

Virtue of  
the stone  
Gedi.

Esterca, a  
disease be-  
longing to  
horses.

The enemys, to prevent the ill effects their stone wou'd produce, had provided themselves with good felts, with which they cover'd their camp, persons and horses; and they had prepar'd canals to carry the water off: whilst ours were reduc'd to a miserable condition; their clothes becoming extremely heavy, and the horse being more embarrass'd than the foot.

When the rain was over, their bad condition did not hinder their advancing, and they attack'd the enemy with an heroic valor; but the Getes, whom the rain and tempest had scarce

disor-



*Book I.* disorder'd, mounted on fresh horses, and well-arm'd, receiv'd our army with a briskness so much greater than that of our men, that our soldiers were oblig'd to fly; and there were terrible cries in both armies. Then Timur, who saw he must either die shamefully or fight, turn'd himself about, and crying out to his soldiers to come to him, found himself insensibly in the middle of the enemy's right wing. As his men were surrounded by 'em, there was the most terrible slaughter that was ever known; blood flow'd in little rivers, and the dead bodies of both sides fell promiscuously over one another, both friends and enemys, without knowing who were conquerors. The rules of war were not observ'd; every thing was in confusion, and every one of the soldiers had been slain in the heat of the battel, if by an unexpected accident, Chem Coun Nevian, brother of the Emir Hamid, who commanded the right wing of the enemy, had not been slain: for Timur being about to give him a blow with his ax, this prince, who was one of the most valiant of the Getes, fenc'd off the blow with his buckler, but as he was rising up to strike Timur with his sabre, he was pierc'd with lance by prince Yakou Berlas.

The emperor Elias Coja Can had no sooner heard of the misfortune which happen'd to his general, than he retreated; and his soldiers who saw him fly, despairing of the victory, fled after him: but Timur and his men pursu'd them, and did not cease the slaughter till their horses fell under them, not able any longer to bear the fatigue; whilst the enemy's horses, which had not suffer'd thro the tempest and sloughs, were swifter and fled. But if we had the victory on one side, we were beaten on the other; for the  
left

left wing of the enemy fell so briskly on Petlandgi and Zende-hachem who commanded the van of our right wing, that they approached the Emir Hussein, whose guards being surpriz'd, fled in disorder, notwithstanding the courage of Chir Behram and Poulad Bouga, who on this occasion gave marks of the greatest valor. Hadgi Bei lost no ground, but briskly attack'd the captains Ferhad and Oronc Timur with their regiments, who began to give way; but prince Chamseddin unexpectedly came to their assistance with a great squadron, which not only prevented their flight, but beat back Hadgi Bei: the fight was bloody, and the enemys were triumphing, when Timur, who perceiv'd the disorder, arriv'd with seventeen companys, and fell upon Chamseddin, who was not able to sustain the attack, but lost ground and fled. These advantages gave the Emir Hussein an opportunity to rally his guards. Timur sent Behader his aide-de-camp to him, to desire him to advance, and to tell him that if they briskly attack'd the enemy, he wou'd no longer be able to resist: but this prince, either thro jealousy of the great actions of our hero, or thro presumption, resented the message of Behader, abus'd him, and beat him off his horse. Timur who perceiv'd they had so good an opportunity of overcoming, dissembled his resentment, and sent to him a second time Hamdi and Malek who belong'd to him; but he treated them as he had Behader. "Have I fled?" said he to "them; why then doth he press me to advance? Whatsoever happens, whether we conquer or are conquer'd, none of you shall save himself from my hand." Malek and Hamdi return'd in a great passion, and Timur vex'd that the most favorable opportunity shou'd be

Book I. be lost thro the caprice of the Emir Hussein, resolv'd to be reveng'd: he ceas'd from attacking the enemy; and as the two wings of both armys had been reciprocally routed, and had taken each others place, they encamp'd where they were at that time, with design to give some refreshment to the soldiers during the night, after the excessive fatigue of the day. In the mean while the Emir Hussein recover'd from his ill humor, sent several messages to Timur, to intreat him to come and see him; but this prince, weary with his manner of acting, refus'd to go.

The sound of the trumpet Kerrena<sup>\*</sup> waking the soldiers before morning, every one prepar'd himself to continue the fight. The two parties fell upon one another with great cries, mix'd with a confus'd noise of drums and trumpets, and the victory was not long in suspense: the army of the Getes fled, and Timur and his men pursu'd 'em, and in the pursuit perceiv'd the standard of prince Chamseddin, who was separated from the rest, and came with a great number; so our men abandon'd the fugitives, and turn'd towards the white standard: but the enemys, as soon as they perceiv'd the ensign, rally'd and return'd to the charge. The combat was bloody, and at length our men were vanquish'd; the Getes had the victory, and oblig'd us to turn our backs. Fear caus'd a great number of our men to perish in the sloughs and marshes. The enemys in the pursuit of the rest kill'd a great many, and there remain'd slain in the field of battel more than

---

<sup>\*</sup> Kerrena is a large trumpet of brass, eight foot long, which serves to wake the soldiers, and sound a retreat.

ten thousand of our men. This famous battel Chap. 13.  
of Lai, that is to say, of the sloughs, happen'd  
on the first of Ramadan, in the year of the An. Dom.  
Hegira 766. Astrologers remark, that the 1364.  
tenth of the trine celestial conjunctions was in Mog. The  
Scorpio, about the time of this fatal defeat: Serpent.  
I mention this circumstance only for the per-  
fection of this history, and not to infer that ac-  
cidents are caus'd by the influences of the hea-  
venly bodies: on the contrary, I believe there  
are no influences nor accidents in nature, of  
which God is not the disposer and primary  
author.

### C H A P. XIII.

#### *The Retreat of Timur-Bec and Hussein. Samarcand besieg'd by the Getes.*

AFTER this great defeat, the princes arriv'd  
at Kech, where they did not think them-  
selves sufficiently secur'd against the Getes,  
who yet pursu'd them; they therefore resolv'd  
to pass the Gihon, every one with the troops  
of his hord: the Emir Hussein told Timur that  
it was proper he shou'd do the same with his  
family and troops; but this prince answer'd  
him, that the other princes might do what they  
pleas'd, but that he was not of that mind, and  
that his temper wou'd not suffer him to aban-  
don his country to the tyranny of barbarians;  
that he wou'd rally as many troops as he was able,  
and march against the enemys; and if fortune  
oppos'd him, he shou'd nevertheless have the  
glory of dying in defence of his subjects.



Book I. The Emir Hussein went to Saliserai, where he made his men cross the Gihon, and retir'd with 'em by by-ways to Cheberto; from whence he sent spys to the places round about to learn news of the Getes, that he might fly into India on the first advice of their approach.

As soon as the Emir Hussein was departed from Kech, Timur neglected no opportunity of levying troops; his good conduct, and the affection of the people towards him, was the reason that he rais'd seventeen companys: he sent Timur Coja Aglen to command the half of these troops, and order'd Chaourchi and Abbas Behader to carry forage to Samarcand, and raise other troops there. But Chaourchi staid in the way to drink hard of some of the best wines: this liquor, which makes many men courageous and generous, dispirited him even to excess; he told David Coja and Hindoucha, that Timur had a design to seize 'em, and to send 'em to the Emir Hussein to be put to death. Upon this these two captains were afraid, and fled in haste to the Getes, which was a great loss to Timur; the others continu'd their road, and met at Kukeng a party of the army of the Getes, commanded by Kepec Timur, son of Oluk Totatmur, and by the captains Chiraoul and Inkirsac son of Hadgi Bei; ours were surpriz'd and entirely defeated, with the four or five companys who remain'd with 'em.

Timur soon receiv'd advice of this fresh loss; he well knew that his prosperity must be at a stand for some time, and that there was no more likelihood of defending his country, to whatsoever hazard he expos'd his life: for this reason he cross'd the Gihon, and went for Balc, where he rally'd the troops of his Toman, and the

the other troops of his country who had fled Chap. 13. thither. He also got together the Tomans of Kepec Can and Olaja Bouga Selduz, part of whom he sent to the river Gihon to guard the passages, and to get information of what happen'd there. Timur Coja Aglen arriv'd at this time, and he was punish'd for his bad conduct by a fine impos'd on him.

In the mean while the army of the Getes arriv'd at Samarcand, which at that time was without a citadel. Moulana Zade Samarcandi, Moula Cardec Imam of Bocara, and Aboubeker Kelevi, men whose probity and knowledg had acquir'd them an authority and power over the people, and who imagin'd the tyrannick government of the Getes wou'd cause an entire desolation of this city, undertook to defend it against these barbarians. They represented to the inhabitants by their pathetic speeches the miserys which this insupportable tyranny had brought on them; that what was to come wou'd be much worse, because of the particular affection the Getes imagin'd they bore to the princes of Tranfoxiana; that in this condition they ought to take arms to defend themselves from the cruelty of these tyrants, till it shou'd please God to grant the princes sufficient strength to resist them. The inhabitants of Samarcand, who had a great veneration for their Imams, and love for their princes, being desirous to take arms, were easily persuaded to do so: and without the princes at their head, they undertook to dispute with the Getes their entrance into the city: they fix'd chains cross each street, and every one arm'd himself, even from children of twelve years of age, to the oldest men. The enemys strove several times to surprize the city; they enter'd into  
the

Siege of  
Samarcand  
by the  
Getes.

Book I. the suburbs ; but they were always repuls'd with loss ; and even the citizens made such vigorous falls, that they beat back the Getes into their tents, chas'd them entirely out of the suburbs, and kill'd a great number of them. But as this city was well peopled, and the inhabitants were not accusom'd to the fatigues of war, victuals became very dear ; the artisan work'd no longer, and every one began to be tir'd with the siege ; infomuch that being reduc'd to the last extremitys, they had been constrain'd to surrender, if God had not deliver'd them on a sudden from the evil which threaten'd them. There was a mortality among the horses of the Getes, of which there perish'd three fourths, so that they were at a loss to get horses for the couriers. This misfortune ruin'd their army, and disabled them from continuing the siege, so that they were oblig'd to return home in a miserable condition, almost all of 'em on foot, with their quivers tied to their backs, and their swords on their shoulders. The principal men of the city were fill'd with pride, because the Getes were retir'd ; and attributed to themselves the glory of sustaining the attack of so great an army, and even of having repuls'd it. Moreover, they wou'd have respect paid 'em, and claim'd a sort of superiority over the rest : they at length form'd great partys, spilt the people's blood, and caus'd strange disorders in the city, to maintain themselves in their usurpation.

On the other hand, Abbas Behader, whom Timur had sent to the iron gate, to observe the motions of the army of the Getes, return'd in all haste to that prince. He gave him an account of the miserable condition the enemys were in, and represented to him at the same  
 time

time the state of the inhabitants of Samarcand, Chap. 13. who suffer'd a great deal under the tyranny of the usurpers. When Timur was inform'd of these things, he sent in haste to the Emir Hussein, to give him advice of them, and to invite him at the same time to march thither with his troops. Hussein was extremely well pleas'd with the news, and departed forthwith from Cheberto to Saliserai. Timur order'd all his family to cross the Gihon, and sent 'em to Kech, his antient residence.

This prince then took horse to meet Hussein, which he did at the entry of the meadow of Bacalan. They embrac'd each other, and having renew'd their friendship, they promis'd to be more closely united than ever. They had a long conference on what had already pass'd, and what they had to do; and they concluded to be at Samarcand the beginning of the spring: Timur return'd, cross'd the Gihon, and encamp'd at Carschi. The name of Carschi was given to this city because of the palace Kepec built two leagues and a half from Nakcheb<sup>1</sup>, in the mogul language Carschi, signifying a palace. Timur pass'd the winter there; during which time he built the citadel, which was finish'd before the end of that season.

---

<sup>1</sup> Nakcheb, Nefes and Carschi, are the same place.



## C H A P. XIV.

*Departure of the princes for Samarcand, and the dissension which happen'd between 'em.*

THE princes departed in the spring for Samarcand; and as soon as they were arriv'd at this capital of Tranfoxiana, they agreed on what was of most importance; to wit, the punishment of the insolence of the Serbedals, who pretended to take upon 'em the highest posts, and had entirely confounded both the state and religion by the violences they had exercis'd. It was resolv'd that they shou'd seize on all those petty tyrants; which was accordingly done. The Emir Hussein, after having reproach'd 'em for the horrid crimes they had committed, order'd their heads to be cut off, after their trial at Canighul, where the army encamp'd; inso-much, that there remain'd only Moulana Zade, whom Timur sav'd thro a motive of piety.

After the princes had regulated the civil government of this city, restor'd the laws and the ordinary course of justice among the inhabitants whom the Serbedals had seduc'd, Hussein made known his reigning passions. He saw himself at the height of his desires; and at the same time discover'd an insatiable avarice and meanness of spirit, which did not in the least shew him to be the grandson of the great Emir Cazagan. He employ'd all his care and authority to heap up riches; and avarice had so vast a possession of his soul, that he had no regard to honor or equity: and without considering that Timur had as much or a greater share in the  
good

good or ill success of the wars they had been engag'd in, he even ventur'd to tax the domesticks of Timur: he exacted immense sums from the princes Yakou, Seifeddin, Acbouga, Eltchi, Behader, and Dolet Cha Balki. The battel of the sloughs, where these princes lost their treasure, and most part of their baggage, had put 'em out of a condition to satisfy him immediately. All they cou'd recover thro their industry, was not sufficient to assuage his thirst after riches: but Timur furnish'd 'em with enough to make up the great sum they were tax'd at; and as this prince had not a sufficient quantity of ready-money, he gave 'em even the necklaces and ear-rings of the princess Olajai Turcan his wife. Hussein receiv'd all they brought him; he saw, among the rest, his sister's jewels; and he had a soul base enough to forget the duty of a brother, and not to refuse 'em. After having fix'd a price on 'em, he examin'd whether they had intirely paid the tax, and found there yet remain'd three thousand dinars <sup>2</sup> unpaid: this ungenerous prince demanded 'em, and Timur gave his own horses to satisfy him. Hussein wou'd not accept 'em; but he said he wou'd go to Saliserai, from whence he must send a sum of money to Carezem, there to demand in marriage the daughter of Hussein Sofi, and that he wou'd wait for the remainder of what was due. He was no sooner departed, than Timur rais'd the sum at Kech, which he sent him.

These actions gave the Emir Hussein a bad reputation; but the fear the people were in, because of the union between him and Timur, made 'em dissemble it: nevertheless, the aver-

---

<sup>2</sup> A ducat of gold, or a sequin.

Book I.


sion which the principal lords bore to him was so great, that they resolv'd to use all their efforts to disunite 'em; and after having humbled the haughtiness of Hussein, they propos'd to themselves to give the absolute power to Timur, who was of a sweet temper, had a generous soul, noble passions, and, in fine, every virtue that was necessary to the forming of a great prince. But as the sun never shews itself till the stars have disappear'd, Timur cou'd not arrive at that pitch of greatness destin'd for him, without the ruin of Hussein. The Emir Moussa Ali Dervis, son of Bajazet Gelair, who was his wife's brother, and Ferhad, to break the union of the princes, made use of an artifice, first thought of by Ourda Catoun, a princess belonging to the seraglio of Turme-chirin Can, whose daughter, the mother of Ali Dervis, was ally'd to the Emir Hussein: they wrote a letter to him full of falsehoods; the particulars of which were, that Timur, offended at the grand Can and him, had sought means to revenge himself by an open war; and that he was so far resolv'd on it, that he had already began to make preparations, which wou'd no sooner be finish'd, than he will make known his designs by divers hostilities. This letter was given to Hussein, who read it, and at the same time shew'd it to Can Cabulchah Aglen. They immediately sent men to Timur to be inform'd of the truth from himself, and to desire him to come to Samarcand to Ourda Catoun, with those who had given him advice of it, that being brought face to face the truth of the things asserted might more easily be brought to light. Timur, who not so much as thought of what he was accus'd of, took horse without fear, or using any precautions, and went to Samarcand;

but

but the Emir Moussa and Ali Dervis having notice of his arrival, abandon'd the intrigue, and fled to Cogende, for fear of coming to dishonour. This was enough to persuade Hussein, and the rest, that Timur had no hand in the conspiracy: but it had a very different effect with regard to Hussein. Timur, who by his long familiarity with him, knew what his heart was capable of, and how jealous he was, since he believ'd what was contain'd in this false letter, did not doubt his having a constant suspicion of him, and that there wou'd be continual quarrels between 'em; he therefore thought it prudent for him also to be mistrustful of the Emir Hussein, to avoid the dangers which might happen. He seriously consider'd how he shou'd for the future deal with a prince whose proceedings were so unaccountable, and who had shewn so much baseness and avarice. The Emirs on the other hand were extremely discontented with Hussein, because of the tax he had impos'd on 'em, and were continually endeavouring to deliver themselves from slavery.

One day, in a conference with 'em, this prince open'd his heart to 'em; and after having testify'd his resentment of the tyrannical actions of Hussein, he declar'd his intention to remedy this evil. Chir Behram and Behram Gelair, who, for fear of displeasing Timur, never dar'd to discover the mortal hatred they bore to Hussein, because of the firm alliance between these two princes, then took off the mask, and acquainted Timur with the unanimous design of all the princes; which was founded on their assurance that Hussein did not act faithfully with any of 'em. They declar'd to him they were all resolv'd to break off with him, and to treat him for the future as an enemy; that he had



Book I.  dissembled in every thing; and if they did not soon bring an army into the field to give him battel, he wou'd begin first with 'em. These princes were so warm on this design, and by their discourses so heighten'd Timur's discontent against Hussein, that they brought him to a resolution to make war upon him. They enter'd into a treaty, and confirm'd it by an oath; which import'd that Chir Behram shou'd go to his principality of Catlan, and there raise troops, while Timur regulated the affairs of the army. Chir Behram carry'd with him an officer of Timur's, nam'd Adel, and left one of his own, call'd Tacoja; so that when Adel came, Tacoja departed, and so the two armys kept a constant correspondence. Chir Behram arriv'd at Catlan; and as soon as he had rais'd troops, he led 'em to a mountain situated behind Terac, where he began many hostilitys against Hussein. But this politick prince by his artifices gain'd over to his interest Chir Behram: he brought him from the mountain, on conditions somewhat advantageous to this faithless prince. Timur, when he had advice of it, wrote a letter to Chir Behram, to reproach him for his baseness and inconstancy: at the end of which he had these words; "I pray God you may soon receive from Hussein the punishment of your faithlessness, when repentance will avail you nothing."

Timur fail'd not to pursue his enterprize: he assign'd troops to Behram Gelair, prince Yakou, and Abbas Behader; and sent 'em to Cogende to make themselves masters of the hord of Gelair, and to seize on the Emir Moufa, and Ali Dervis the son of Bajazet, whose malice had been the first cause of this disorder: but these seditious men had notice of it, and fled. Behram

ram got together the hord of Gelair, and establish'd himself in his principality. Chap. 14.  
~~~~~

After this expedition, Timur being apprehensive how difficult it was to extricate himself out of this troublesome affair of attacking the Can and the Emir Hussein at the same time, took horse with those who were of his side; and after having put to death the men belonging to Ali Dervis, he march'd with his household and troops towards Gete.

Whilst Timur was gone to Samarcand to raise troops, the Emirs Soliman and Chaourchi, who were necessary to the discord between the two princes, came over from Hussein to him; and prince Kefer Yefouri being dead, Ali his brother, Elias, and Hadgi Mamut Chah, came with the troops of the hord of Yefouri to submit themselves to Timur. This prince made Cara Hendouke Berlas governor of Samarcand during his absence; after which he took horse to return. But Hendouke prov'd faithless to him, and went over to Hussein, whilst Cara Joun, who found himself not in a capacity to govern, seem'd to have lost all his courage.

Whilst Timur was gone from his palace to recruit his troops, the princess Olajai Turcan Aga, his wife, dy'd. He was very much afflicted at this loss, and on this occasion distributed great alms among the poor of the country. The Emir Hussein was the more touch'd at this misfortune, in that it was doubly fatal to him, since, in losing his sister, Timur was disingag'd from his alliance, and the regard and friendship which that princess had kept up betwixt 'em, was now dissolv'd.

Death of  
Timur's  
wife.

## C H A P. XV.

*Timur-Bec brings an army into the field  
against Emir Hussein.*

An. Dom.  
1365.  
Mog. The  
Horse.

**I**N the autumn of the year of the Hegira 767, Timur having rais'd an army, consisting of the most valiant men of the empire, in order to oppose the Emir Hussein, gave the command of the vanguard to prince Seifeddin, and directed him to march without interruption. Hussein, whose artifices had succeeded so well with regard to Chir Behram, as to bring him over to his obedience, imagin'd he cou'd do the same by Timur; on which account he sent to him Malek Behader and Abdalla Pirau with a treaty ready drawn up, after the most enticing manner. He put Timur in mind that he had always desir'd to cultivate a good understanding with him; that they had been concern'd together in the most dangerous affairs of the empire; that their union had been the cause of their success; that they were now lifted up above their equals; and that it was time they shou'd both enjoy their grandeur: in fine, he besought him entirely to confide in this treaty, and not to suffer jealousy to take possession of his heart. Malek and Abdalla arriv'd at Isoun, where the army of Timur was encamp'd, after having pass'd the iron gate; who having first paid their respects to him, they presented him with the treaty of the Emir Hussein, and then su'd for peace. But Timur, whose fortune seem'd to be in the disposal of providence, told 'em he ought to give no more credit to the words of Hussein than to the east-wind,

wind, and he wou'd not regard what his ambassadors said. However, this overture of peace was of ill consequence to Timur; for the Yefourians had so little thoughts of succeeding, that their uneasiness made them resolve to desert Timur.

At this time the princes Abbas and Yakou went to Cogende with Behram Gelair. Being arriv'd, a council was held upon the affair of the Yefourians; and it was unanimously resolv'd to secure the chiefs of that people, who had enter'd into a conspiracy to change their master: but Timur oppos'd it, and told 'em, that in so happy a conjuncture violence and indignation shou'd have no part in his actions, and that it wou'd be an injury to his glory and reputation, because when the rest of the people shall hear of the ill treatment us'd towards these men, they wou'd no longer continue under his protection; that it was necessary that moderation shou'd be the basis of a rising monarchy, and that his throne shou'd be establish'd on the pillars of justice and goodness.

After this discourse, which gain'd the hearts of all the captains, he order'd that they shou'd behave themselves courteously towards the Yefourians; whom having permitted to return home, he went to encamp at Carschi.

Hussein, who had rais'd the best troops he was able, march'd with Chir Behram, and brought with him the princes Mobarekchah and Mehemmed Beyan Selduz, who had a great friendship for Timur: but as the army of Hussein had join'd 'em, they were oblig'd to go with him.

Hussein, not being content with having a great army, wou'd again make use of artifice and imposture to bring over Timur. He sent to him his treasurer Kefer with an alcoran, and

Hussein  
by a trick  
sends to  
beg peace  
of Timur.



*Book I.* a letter, wherein he told him he had taken an oath on that book to give him a full account of the truth in his letter; the contents whereof were as follow.

“ The misunderstanding between us will infallibly end in the ruin of the state, and the misery of the people. I know you are a prince of a sweet temper; that you have excellent dispositions; that you love the musfulmans; shew a great deal of goodness to your subjects; and by consequence ought not to approve of what is doing. For my part, I think it advisable that my army shou’d stay at Gegana, and yours at Cazana; and that we have a conference together, accompany’d by a hundred men only, in Chekitchec, where we will renew our friendship, and confirm our former union by solemn oaths; so that hereafter incendiarys shall not be able to find means of sowing dissension among us: for the nation can never enjoy rest till there is a hearty agreement between us.”

When Timur had read the letter, he presently knew it was a trick of Hussein, and look’d upon his promise only as an artifice: but as all the princes thought it better to have peace than war, provided Hussein acted with sincerity, he consented to what was propos’d; and leaving the army at Cuzar, he took only three hundred men for his guard, who were the bravest he cou’d chuse, and who had always shewn themselves faithful to him, designing to leave two hundred of ’em at Dehno for fear of a surprize, and then to march with one hundred only to Chekitchec, the place of interview.

In the mean while the Emir Hussein put to death Chir Behram in Nevendac, according to the

## *The history of Timur-Bec.*

75

the prediction of Timur; for the words of great men are often the oracles of fate. Chap. 15.

The Emir Hussein did not fail in preparing to put his artifice in execution; and without regard to his oaths, or the veneration due to the alcoran, on which he had sworn, he dispatch'd with great expedition three thousand chosen men to surprize Timur. A peasant, who had formerly been a domestick of this prince, fled from the rest of the troops, and came with all haste to give Timur advice of it, whom he found already arriv'd at Dehno. An officer nam'd Behram, who had no talent in politicks, was by ill luck plac'd as a centinel at the gate of the palace, to whom the peasant immediately address'd himself; but this silly fellow wou'd give no credit to what he said, and imagin'd this news wou'd displease the prince, because a peace was actually on the anvil: he even beat the peasant, and sent him away without mentioning to Timur what had been told him. In the mean while Hussein's horse, who made great haste, arriv'd very soon in the morning at that quarter; and Timur had already taken horse with his hundred men to go to the place of rendezvous. He was very near it, when he had advice of the treachery of Hussein, and the arrival of this troop: nevertheless he advanc'd; and when he had got into the middle of the straits of Haram, he plac'd his men in ambuscade, to render the passage the more difficult to the enemy, and to oppose 'em with advantage. The enemy arriv'd, and there were great cries on both sides; the arrows fell like hail, and the fight was bloody. Hussein's men finding themselves in a place which was narrow, and ill-dispos'd for fighting, stop'd, to give Timur an opportunity to draw off; then they pursu'd him, and all he cou'd do was to retreat fighting

Book I. fighting as far as to Catlich, they not being able to pursue him any farther, where the two branches of the river of Chekedalic join.

In the mean while the news of Hussein's artifice was brought to Cuzar; and the army, who imagin'd all hopes were lost, dispers'd themselves. Timur, with the few men he had left, went to Cuzar, where he learnt this sad news; at which turn of fortune he was not daunted. But having return'd thanks to God, he came to Carschi, where he held a council with the princes; in which it was resolv'd to send the ladys to Macan, and thence to the confines of the country of Senger, the people whereof had always been faithful to Timur; to their care he trusted the princesses, and was very well contented they shou'd be sent away, that he might the better carry on the war. The princes also resolv'd that they shou'd rendezvous with their troops at Isaac's well, in the neighbourhood of Bourdalic. Every one departed at the same time for his own country, where he levy'd troops, and made all necessary preparations, while the ladys went to Macan.

The next day the army of Hussein arriv'd at Carschi, and the Emirs Moussa and Hindouchah made themselves masters of the fortress which Timur had built there. Timur came to Isaac's well, where he waited for his friends and officers, who arriv'd there one after another; and when they were all got together, they departed for Macan, cross'd the Gihon, and enter'd the desert. Timur sent to all the lords of Herat, and to Mehemed Youn Garbani, to know the state of their affairs. He encamp'd near the well of Chourab till the return of these messengers, which was two months after their setting out: he also stop'd all the caravans which came from Corassa-

na to Transoxiana. When all the envoys were Chap. 16.  
return'd, by his orders it was rumour'd that the people of Herat had sent for him, and that these envoys were ambassadors of that country : upon which he gave leave to the caravans to depart. He then took the road to Herat in their presence with all his men. The merchants arriv'd at Carschi, and fail'd not to give out that they had seen Timur depart for Herat ; which news the Emir Moussa believ'd, it being told by persons disinterested, and who had seen him depart : for which reason he went out of the fortrefs of Carschi ; and after having got together his troops, he march'd with seven thousand horse to encamp at Bimrac, with design to go to Uz-kunt. Malek Behader, who commanded the five thousand horse Hussein had sent, went to Cuzar, and stop'd at the hill of Carcachun, and at Gonbedluli.

---

C H A P. XVI.

*Several exploits of Timur, and intrigues of the princes. The march of Timur to Carschi.*

WHEN Timur knew that the caravans were at some distance, he return'd immediately to the place he came from, where he staid as long as was needful for the caravans to get to Carschi ; and then he resolv'd to revenge himself on his enemys, tho he had not above two hundred men. With this small number he took the road to Carschi ; in the neighbourhood of which city were 12000 horse, with many princes and lords, whom the desire of fighting had brought thither : which renders the action of Timur the more remarkable, who



**Book I.** who expos'd himself to so great a danger with an unheard of intrepidity. These are events which man can no ways comprehend, and which are only known to the divine being.

Rash action of Timur, which prov'd successful.

Timur march'd all night; and when he was come to the bank of the Gihon, he first made his own horse go into the water, and then was follow'd by forty more, who swam over. They left the village Kustar, that no one might give notice of their arrival; and there procur'd barks, which they sent to the other side of the river, that the rest of the troops might cross over.

Princes who accompany'd Timur.

The prince Siorgatmich Aglen, the prince Daoud, chief of the hord of Douglat, and husband of Cotluc Turcan Aga, eldest sister of Timur; the Emir Yakou Berlas; the Emir Muaid Erlar, who espous'd another of Timur's sisters; the Emir Sar Bouga Gelair; Hussein Behader; the Emir Seifeddin Nekur; the valiant Abbas of Capchac; Acbouga Behader of the country of the Naimans; and Mamutchah of Bocara; were of the number of those men who accompany'd Timur.

All those lords departed together, and arriv'd at Bourdalic; at which place were the ambassadors of the Emir Moussa, whom they seiz'd: they enter'd into Bourdalic, where they stay'd till the next evening, when they continu'd their march, and in the night went down to old Fezed. The next day they block'd up the passages, and lay in ambuscade: they stop'd all those who came to draw water, but soon after let 'em go. In the night they took horse for Chirkunt. The Emir Yakou told 'em he thought it advisable to fall upon the Emir Moussa during the night; believing that if they cou'd seize his person, they might make themselves masters of the rest, and do whatever they pleas'd. But Ti-

mur answer'd him, " We are but a small number ; and if unhappily any accident befall us, we shall be reduc'd to great extremitys : it is better therefore to do nothing inconsiderately. Let every one stay here, while I alone go to Carschi, where I will use such precautions that I may not be surpriz'd. I shall by this learn where one may best enter the city, and observe what machines will be necessary to make our-selves masters of a town of this importance." Thus Timur wou'd do every thing himself, without depending on the conduct of his generals. He immediately, with Moubacher and Abdalla, took horse for Carschi, and came down to the bank of the ditch surrounding the citadel. As this ditch had much water, he gave the horses to Moubacher to take care of, and enter'd up to the knees in the aqueduct Ternavi, which passes over the ditch, and conveys water into the citadel. He cross'd this current with Abdalla, who follow'd him every where ; and when they were arriv'd at the gate which looks towards Cuzar, Timur knock'd at it, but they found it wall'd up. They went round the walls with great precantion, for fear of being discover'd, and in order to find out a part lower than the rest. Timur perceiv'd a place, which he shew'd Abdalla, and which he thought proper to fix the ladder against. After this discovery Timur return'd by the same aqueduct, took horse, and rode with all speed to his troops, with whom he march'd immediately for the taking of Carschi. He left forty three men to guard the horses, and sent a hundred to the walls with their ladders, which they had brought from Bourdalis, who also pass'd by the aqueduct we mention'd, being conducted by Abdalla, whilst Timur remain'd with a hundred soldiers

Book I. at the gate, to watch the time when it shou'd be open'd in the morning, that he might enter the city.

Timur sur-  
prizes  
Carschi.

Those brave men who, according to Timur's order, went to the foot of the walls, fix'd their ladders at the place agreed on; and scaling the walls, ran sword in hand to the gate, where finding the guards drunk and asleep in their mistresses arms, they put 'em all to the sword. The Dervise Buke broke the lock of the gate with his battel-ax, and made way for Timur and his company to enter; who order'd the trumpets to sound, and the soldiers at the same time to run to the castle, which they did with great cry. This struck terror into every one; and the inhabitants, who suspected nothing, being awak'd by the noise of the trumpets, thought there was an earthquake, or that the day of judgment was come. Timur, by his good conduct, made himself master of the city, while the troops seiz'd on the castle, where they took the son of the Emir Moussa prisoner with all his domesticks, whom they bound, and cast into prisons and pits. Mehemed Bei, son of the Emir Moussa, who afterwards was a confederate with Timur, being then very young, directions were given for concealing him, in order to his escape; that when he shou'd get to his father, his army might be intimidated, and disperse. He went that same night to his father; but the army did not disperse, as was expected, because the Emir Moussa sent immediately to Malek Behader, to give him notice of the city's being surpriz'd. These two princes join'd their troops, and about noon besieg'd the city with 12000 horse. The Emir Moussa, who was of the house of Taidgut, posted himself before the gate of the city, and Malek Behader encamp'd with the troops of

†

the

the Coronas over-against the gate which looks towards Cuzar. Timur himself resolv'd to guard the gate of the city, and had for his lieutenant the Emir Moussa Bouga : he order'd the Emirs David and Muaid to defend the gate of Cuzar ; and assign'd to the Emirs Siorgatmich Aglen, Abbas, Hussein Behader, Acbouga and others, the care of the towers and walls. Chap. 16.

The Emir Muaid Erlat made a sally, in which he was the thirtieth man, and fell furiously upon the besiegers sword in hand. In this rencounter he fought with so great valor, that, in a manner, he eclips'd the great exploits of Roustem and Esfendiar<sup>1</sup> : he took sixty horses from the enemy, after having kill'd the riders, and brought 'em into the city, fighting all his way back.

In the mean while Durke Behader, who left the enemy, following the example of fortune, who had turn'd her back upon 'em, came into the city, and submitted to Timur.

This prince had resolv'd the same day to sally out, and to make his enemys feel the strength of his arms ; but the Emir Seifeddin, who was skill'd in astrology, and predicted strange things by geomancy, represented to him that it was not advisable to undertake any thing that day, because the hour of nine the next morning wou'd be more fortunate : his advice was taken, and the sally was put off till next morning. On the besiegers side Tizektchi Behader approach'd the gate with two hundred men, who erected their lances and bucklers in token of defiance ; for which reason they kept watch all night in that post : but in the morning Eltchi Bouga and Akimur let down the bridge, sally'd out with fifty men, and sword in hand fell upon the besiegers, of whom they made a terrible slaughter.

<sup>1</sup> Two famous heroes in the Persian romances, to whom are attributed actions altogether incredible.



Timur order'd Alichah and Dervichec Bergongi, with twenty horse, to relieve these foot, who then oppos'd as many horse. They went accordingly, and gave great proofs of their valor and good fortune.

On the enemys side Tagi Bouga came to the attack with sword in hand; but Akitmur stop'd his passage, and unhors'd him.

Among the cavalry of the Emir Moussa there was a young Uzbek, exceedingly courageous, or rather rash, who already imagin'd himself a considerable person: he prepar'd for the battel, took in his hand a great war-club, and advanc'd to signalize himself by some eminent action. Cazan Bouga boldly oppos'd him, and fell so dexterously upon the young man, that he was not able to defend himself, whilst Benghi cut him cross the body with his sword.

The Emir Sar Bouga and Eltchi Behader fought briskly near the gate: they continually let fly a shower of arrows on the enemys, and so terribly gaul'd 'em, that victory declar'd herself for the besieg'd. Fear got possession of the enemys hearts, who, to escape the more expeditiously, flung away their large bucklers, call'd Toura; and covering their heads with their little shields, retir'd into the retrenchments they had made: but our men pursu'd 'em, and drove 'em beyond their standards, that they cou'd not save themselves; and so they fled as well as they were able into the suburbs.

A body of a hundred men of the enemy, commanded by Toukel, assaulted the city on the other side; and their foot ply'd their arrows with so much dexterity, that they constrain'd our soldiers to retire: but Timur sally'd out with fifteen horse only, and inspir'd fresh courage into his men. Eltchi Bouga and Behram

return'd

return'd to attack Toukel, who was fix'd behind a skirt of the wall, where he fought: Eltchi Bouga got upon the wall, and struck at him with his sword; but he avoided the blow, and fled. Chap. 16.

It happen'd about this time that one of our soldiers of the regiment of Corassana with his sword wounded Schah Behram, of which he died some time after. Death of Schah Behram. The good fortune of Timur, join'd with the fear of the enemys, caus'd the Emir Moussa, who was the principal author of this war, entirely to forfeit his reputation by flying with the seven thousand horse he commanded, tho he was resisted only by an handful of men, but who indeed were the most valiant in all Asia. His soldiers were routed and dispers'd; so that there remain'd only Malek Behader, who stood his ground before the gate of Cuzar with five thousand men of the militia of the Coronas. Wherefore Timur march'd against him; but Malek no sooner perceiv'd him than being seiz'd with fear, he cast away his buckler, and fled into the camp at Gonbedluli. Timur pursu'd him; and Malek observing at a distance the cavalry of this prince, lost all his courage, and fled again from that place, while his troops dispers'd. One can scarcely believe a man capable of such intrepidity as to attack twelve thousand horse, inur'd to war, and excited by a desire of revenge, with only two hundred forty three soldiers: it is true indeed, the latter fought only to attain glory. Thus Timur, thro the assistance of heaven, took a city and a fortress in two days and two nights only; made slaves of part of his enemys, pillag'd their goods, and intirely defeated 'em.

The soldiers of Timur enrich'd themselves with the spoils of the enemys, whom they pursu'd to a great distance. Timur order'd the prin-

*The history of Timur-Bec.*

ces Yakou and Seifeddin to follow 'em as far as the defile in the mountain of Chikidgek, and to seize all the fugitives they shou'd overtake. Then this prince, concern'd at seeing his orders so remissly executed, pursu'd 'em himself, the Emir Daoud marching before him. A hundred of the enemys horse, who belong'd to the rear of the army, perceiving 'em, divided themselves into two bodys. The left fell upon Eltchi Bouga, and made him turn his back, whilst the right attack'd Timur, who not only sustain'd the first onfet, but even rush'd on 'em with so much vigor, that they gave way and fled; the body on the left, which had fallen upon Bouga, seeing the defeat of the other, fled also; and there remain'd many led-horses, which were join'd to the other spoils the victorious soldiers had taken from the enemys.

Timur then perceiv'd Arzou Mule Aga, sister of Bayazid Gelair, and wife of the Emir Moussa, who fled with Malek Behader; he pursu'd her, and call'd to Malek to abandon her, and told him he wou'd save his life, tho he deserv'd to lose it. Malek laid hold on the promise of the prince, abandon'd the lady, and fled before: nevertheless the ladys fled full speed; and Timur, who alone pursu'd 'em, had overtaken 'em, if a valet nam'd Achistar, who had a bow and arrows in his hand; had not hinder'd him, feigning as if he wou'd let fly at him as soon as he shou'd see him advance. This man was an ill archer; but Timur, who had neither buckler nor arrows, took him for a good one, and was not willing to be blam'd for having expos'd his life for a woman; so he took care of himself, while his horse, thro a caprice, stopt short, which accident gave time to Doletchah Bacchi to join him, who holding his buckler before his head,

head, pursu'd the ladys, and the valet was oblig'd to let fly at him : but he shew'd his unskilfulness, ceas'd defending himself, and fled as fast as the ladys ; so that Doletchah was not able to come up with 'em. Chap. 16.

Arzou Mulc had then gone with child nine months, and was soon after deliver'd of a princess, who was nam'd Touman Aga. Without doubt the good fortune of this child was the only cause that her enemys cou'd not overtake her : the person design'd for happiness, is happy even from its mother's womb. Touman Aga had afterwards the honor to enter the marriage-bed of Timur.

This prince return'd from Acoubi, which is near Kezilcac, which occasion'd joy thro the whole camp ; but the Emirs Yakou and Seifeddin were asham'd, and repented for having shewn so much slackness in obeying Timur's orders : his displeasure encourag'd 'em ; they immediately departed to make reparation for their fault, and pursu'd their enemys : they march'd along the river Chekedalic, and came to the narrowest passage of the mountain Chekidgek, where they met the troops of Gelair, and others who had fled ; they brought 'em back, and by this means made amends for the fault they had committed.

Timur staid all the winter at Carschi, contented and glorying in his victorys ; and gave the people of this country marks of his clemency and liberality, in relieving poor familys, whose ruin the war had caus'd. His chief care was that the arts shou'd flourish in this great city : and he order'd that the grounds round about shou'd be cultivated, that there might be plenty.



Book I. He gave the government of Bocara to Mamutchá, and commanded him to reduce entirely to obedience the inhabitants of that city, to render the country flourishing, and to remit yearly the tribute and revenues to his treasury.

He sent orders to Nikepeicha, who was wandering about Corassana, to come to him; and he gave him the government of Amouye and its dependences, of which he had formerly been the natural prince. Ali Yefouri, who was without any employment at the head of the Yefourians, went to Bocara to find Mamutchá his son-in-law, and with his Yefourians submitted to Timur, whom they had formerly refus'd to obey, tho he had several times summon'd 'em so to do. The Emir Muaid sent Chirin Bei Aga his wife to Macan, and the secretary Turmegi's wife accompany'd her; but they miss'd their way, which caus'd the loss of many horses and beasts of carriage; but a guide was sent 'em, who conducted 'em to Macan, where Timur kept a seraglio.

---

## C H A P. XVII.

*Mir Hussein brings an army into the field to oppose Timur.*

WHEN the Emir Moussa had sav'd himself from the fury of our soldiers, he fled with the ruins of his troops to the Emir Hussein, who, on the recital of what had pass'd, was very much astonish'd. But the fear and inquietude which seiz'd him did not hinder his recruiting his army, and parting immediately

diately from Saliferai, with design to give Timur battel. He sent before him the Emirs Oladgia Itou Aperdi, Gehancha son of Taifou, and Poulad Bouga, with ten thousand men of the Coronas, under the conduct of the Emir Moussa. They pass'd the iron gate, and encamp'd in the narrowest place of the mountain of Chekidgec, where they prepar'd for battel. Chap. 17.

Timur, on advice of these motions, departed with resolution to attack 'em at night. He took the road to Ilgonz Bagh, a mountain situate in the plain of Veragh; and that he might not be perceiv'd by the enemys, he went thro the deepest snow. He sent some men by the road which leads to the top of the mountain to get intelligence. They there seiz'd on twenty of the enemys, who inform'd 'em of the state of their army; and told 'em they had pass'd, during the night, by the narrowest part of the mountain Chekidgec, and were encamp'd at Chekedalic. Timur, for the greater security, sent spys there, who confirm'd this advice; and assur'd him that the Emirs Moussa, Oladgia Itou, and others, had ten thousand horse, and that they were rang'd by squadrons on the mountain Accaya, where they were encamp'd. Timur had then but two hundred men, whom he put in order, and march'd against the enemys, always securing the advantage of the ground.

When the two armys were in view, they rais'd hideous cries; but Timur being assur'd of the great inequality of their forces, thought it proper to delay the time, that he might not expose himself to an apparent defeat, which would have tarnish'd the glory of the famous victory he had already gain'd.

He thought himself the rather necessitated to do thus, in that it was the beginning of his

rise ; and that in losing this battel, he should lose all hopes.

The enemy well knew our army was not numerous enough to attack them during the night ; but Timur, who was better satisfy'd of it, prefer'd his retreat to so rash an enterprize ; and returning by the way of Courdenc, without being pursu'd by the enemy, he got to Carschi, and then to Bocara, whence Ali Yefouri and Mamutcha came to meet him, and pay him their respects : and afterwards he made his entry into the city.

The Emir Yakou had formerly been ill used by Mamutcha ; this governor had caus'd him to be ty'd to a horse's tail, beaten with a stick both before and behind, and made to run in that condition : but as he was always jealous of him, and hated him, he counsell'd Timur to go into Corassana on pretence that his affairs requir'd it ; nevertheless Timur would not consent to it, whatsoever instances he made him. The Emir went thither without taking leave of him, accompany'd with Seifeddin and Abbas Behader, and they arriv'd at Macan. Some days after, the news was brought to Bocara, that Moussa and Oladgia Itou, the scouts of the Emir Hussein, were approaching with a great army. Timur told Ali Yefouri and Mamutcha, that there needed only resolution and valor to preserve the country, and that they shou'd lead the troops out of the city, and attack the enemy by night. But these captains, who had not courage enough to undertake so rash an action, refus'd to do it, and made appear to Timur, that it was better to defend the place, and stand firm against the attacks of the enemy, than to expose themselves to the loss of a battel.

As Timur perceiv'd their cowardice by their discourages, he doubted their resolution to defend the place; and as his affairs requir'd his presence in Corassana, he went thither. When he was arriv'd at the Gihon, he met ten barks going down; he order'd 'em to be stopp'd, and they serv'd him and his men to cross the river: thence entring into the desert, he march'd to Merou, and went to join his illustrious family at Macan, a town of Corassana.

---

C H A P. XVIII.

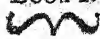
*The siege and taking of Bocara by the army of Hussein. Timur defeats the army of the Coronas.*

THE Emir Hussein besieg'd Bocara, which was at first vigorously defended by Ali and Mamutchas; who, after having caus'd the troops that were in the suburbs to enter the city, gave marks of their valor in a sally from the gate of Kelabad, where they briskly repuls'd the besiegers, who, that they might surprize 'em, pretended to fly as far as the tomb of the Santon Seifeddin Bacrezi. These men not being skill'd in the art of war, and imagining the enemy fled in earnest, pursu'd 'em with their slings, axes, and other arms; but as they advanc'd, Hussein rally'd his troops, who drove them back as far as the gates of the city, killing a great number, whilst the rest with difficulty escap'd, and flinging away their bows and arrows, hid themselves in holes and granaries. Ali and Mamutchas wou'd have rally'd

†

some



Book I.  some soldiers to defend the city; but they cou'd not do it. Wherefore being oblig'd to fly during the night, they took the road to Macan, very much troubled at their not being able to obey Timur's orders, which wou'd have been much more to their credit.

The Emir Hussein sent men in pursuit of 'em, as far as the Gihon, who slew almost all of 'em, and took possession of their baggage. With great difficulty Ali and Mamutcha safely pass'd the Gihon with some of their servants: they went thro the desert to Merou, and at length had the honor to see Timur at Macan, of whom they begg'd pardon for their fault. Timur gave them horses and furniture, and took 'em again into his service.

Thus the Emir Hussein made himself master of Bocara, where he staid some time; then leaving the Emir Calil with some other Emirs and good troops to guard the city, he return'd to Saliserai.

Timur  
passes the  
Gihon,  
and seizes  
Nikepei-  
cha.

In the mean while, Timur learnt that Nikepeicha, to whom he had given the government of Amony with its dependences, had behav'd himself as an enemy, and not only ungratefully seiz'd all the soldiers who wou'd have list'd themselves in his service, but had even stopp'd his domesticks. This news put Timur in a passion; wherefore he departed that night by the road of Tourtghul with six hundred men, and arriv'd at the Gihon, when the river was overflown and extremely rapid. He himself look'd out for a passage, and at length chose that which is at the foot of the mountain of Bourdalic, and order'd the Emirs to go down lower on the banks of the river with four hundred horse. This prince, follow'd by twenty men, enter'd into the river at nine a-clock in the

the morning, and swam till half an hour past twelve before they got to the other bank; they then march'd all night, and next morning found themselves at the town of Amouye, where Nikepeicha was. This governor being valiant, a good horseman, and dexterous at the bow, put himself in a posture of defence: but his ingratitude was fatal to him, for on his shooting his first arrow, the string of his bow broke, and the arrow stuck in the buckler of Catai Behader, who, with Durke, fell immediately on him, and bound his hands behind his back: wherefore one may well say, that his treason had spun the cord with which he was bound. Timur order'd barks to be brought from the other side the river, in which the princes cross'd with the four hundred men.

About the same time Timur had advice that the army of the Coronas was encamp'd in the neighbourhood of Bocara: whereupon this prince being resolv'd to attack them, departed thence, march'd all night, and met 'em in a place call'd Birmas: the two armys fought with extreme vigor: till at last the advantage fell on our side; for the Emir Calil general of the Coronas was at length vanquish'd.

After this expedition the victorious Timur pass'd the Gihon, and encamp'd a whole month in a place nam'd the hill of Caraoul, where are wells and cisterns; from thence he went to Macan, where, soon after his arrival, he punish'd Nikepeicha for his ingratitude.

## C H A P. XIX.

*Timur sends an ambassador to Malek Hussein at Herat.*

**T**IMUR at his arriv al at Macan, sent the Emir Yakou in quality of ambassador to Malek Hussein prince of Herat; who gave him a handsom reception, and spar'd nothing to convince him of the union he desir'd with his master, telling him he wou'd go expresse to Seracs, and if Timur wou'd give himself the trouble to come to that place, they wou'd ter into a strict alliance, which shou'd be confirm'd by solemn oaths. The Emir Yakou gave Timur an account of this negotiation; but our prince having been formerly in this country with Hadgi Berlas his uncle, he remember'd all the bad actions the race of Malek was accus'd of.

When the Emir Norouz son of Argoun Aga had all the power in the country of Corassana in the reign of Cazan Can, Malek Facreddin, uncle to Malek Hussein, had been shut up by his father Chamseddin Kert in the citadel of Kustar in the country of Gour. Norouz having obtain'd his freedom of his father, gave him in marriage the daughter of his own brother the Emir Hadgi, with the government of Herat; which was the cause of his rise. But when Cazan Can's inclination towards the Emir Norouz, was chang'd thro the calumny of some slanderers, and the Can had put to death his brothers and relations in Media, and sent the Emirs Cotluccha and Mankegut to take Norouz himself, this prince confiding

ding in the obligations Facreddin ow'd him, and the alliance they had contracted, fled to Herat for succor, where he staid the more willingly, in that Facreddin gave him a handsom reception, and renew'd his protestations of friendship, which he confirm'd by an oath. Nevertheless the Emir Cotluccha was no sooner arriv'd at the gates of Herat, than the traitor Facreddin committed the most vile action in delivering up his benefactor the Emir Norouz into the hands of his enemies, who presently put him to death. Cayaseddin, brother of Facreddin, and father of Malek Hussein, behav'd himself in the same manner in the reign of the Sultan Aboufaid towards prince Chouban Selduz his benefactor, unjustly putting him and his son Chelaocan to death, who fled from Sultan Aboufaid to him for refuge, because he had promis'd and sworn to protect them. Tho the Emir Chouban had always blam'd the conduct of the Emir Norouz, in flying for refuge to such traitors, saying, It was wrong to prefer the prison of a citadel to the liberty which might be procur'd by flight: yet he did the same, and the like misfortune happen'd to him. As the fact is related at length in my *book of preliminaries*, I have but slightly mention'd it here, to shew that Timur's foresight did not permit him to rely on this prince's promises; tho on the other hand his generous temper pointed out to him that it wou'd be unhandsom, if in requital for the good entertainment Malek Hussein gave his ambassador, he shou'd behave himself with incivility and scorn: wherefore he sent to him his own son prince Gehanghir, who was the eldest and dearest of his children, accompany'd by Mobarckcha Sendgeri. And because we are oblig'd



Book I. to return greater civility than we have receiv'd. Timur order'd him to tell him in answer to his obliging expressions, that for a proof that he confided entirely in him, he had sent his son, and left in his kingdom his family, and all that belong'd to him, because he design'd to return to his native country: he added, that he did not doubt but Malek Hussein wou'd follow the generous sentiments which kings ought to have, in being faithful in what is entrusted to them, and that he shou'd be well pleas'd with what he did, because from great men ought to proceed only great actions.

---

## C H A P. XX.

*Timur defeats the army of the Emir Hussein in Transoxiana.*

AS providence had design'd the crown for Timur, this prince was not permitted to taste the pleasures of Corassana, whilst he cou'd acquire glory; he was excited therefore to depart out of that country to seek laurels elsewhere, tho the security he was in, and the good order of his affairs were powerful motives for him to stay there.

At this time almost all Transoxiana was in subjection to his enemys, who had every where troops in garison; yet he departed with six hundred men only for that country, cross'd the Gihon, and having march'd all night, arriv'd next morning at Neyestan, that is to say, the field of reeds, where he staid all that day in a garden to refresh his horses, and at length pass'd

pass'd by Jouibari; he march'd all night, and arriv'd at Carfchi on that side of it which looks towards Cuzar, and he invest'd it with his troops. *Chap. 20.*

He met many of the domesticks of the Emir Moussa, whom he seiz'd and bound; the relations of Caïser Anandgic, Coudeh and Ourdu-chah fled with their men; Dourke and Ali Behader fought some merchants whom they took to be enemys, and after having us'd them ill, took from them some bales of brocade, which they brought to Timur; who order'd all to be restor'd to the merchants, without reserving the least part.

There were at this time five hundred men of the Coronas at Couzimonadac, whom the Emir Soliman Yefouri join'd, as also Barat Coja and Hendoucha, with their troops: Anandgic and Coudec pass'd by Cuzar, with a design also to join 'em.

Timur, ignorant of what had happen'd, departed from Carfchi at sun-set, and arriv'd at midnight at Neugat, where he learnt news of the Coronas, and of the troops which had join'd them; this oblig'd him to be upon his guard, so that he went out of Neugat the sooner, and staid all night in the plain of that town.

The next day he decamp'd, and in their march Emir Yakou fell from his horse, and was so dangerously wounded that his health was very much impair'd: wherefore Timur sent him to Macan accompany'd by thirty men, and then march'd vigorously against the Coronas. All the brave men thought it best to give 'em battle, except Ali Yefouri, whose relations told Timur of it, who compell'd him to take horse. Ali Behader and Acbouga were sent before with sixty troopers for the forlorn-hope; and on the enemys

**Book I.** *w*enemys side Hendoucha was at the head of three hundred horse. These scouts soon came to blows; there ensu'd a bloody fight, in which the bravest warriors lost their lives. Tho Timur's soldiers were fewer than their enemies, yet they defeated 'em, and beat 'em back as far as the body of their army. After this expedition Timur gave time to the cavalry to rest, and did not take horse himself till noon: then he divided the soldiers into seven bodys; and because the enemys were by far more numerous than they, he made the following speech to encourage his men: "This day, brave sol-

Military  
discourse,  
according  
to the ge-  
nius of the  
Tartars.

"diers, is a day of dancing for warriors; the dancing-room of the heroes is the field of bat-  
tel; the crys of war are the songs sung and danc'd to; and the wine which is drank is the blood of the enemy."

Timur left the Emirs Daoud, Sar Bouga, Hussein Berlas, Seifeddin, Abbas, Acbouga, Hindou, Eltchi Bouga, Dourke, and Ali Behader, each in his own post; advanc'd himself to view the enemys, and at their approach divided his troops into two wings, commanding in person the main body.

When they were in view, the Cheik Bedreddin and his son fled, Ali Yefouri and the two horsemen who accompany'd him did the same; but this did not hinder Timur's rushing upon the enemys like a lion. The battel did not last above an hour, victory declaring for Timur, who intirely routed this vast multitude. Our victorious soldiers pursu'd 'em, and drove 'em as far as Chekedalic; taking their principal officers prisoners, with much cattle and baggage, and enriching themselves with the booty. Among the prisoners, were Oladgia Itou, Taycani and Poulad, who had once been



been of the number of Timur's best friends; wherefore our soldiers put them to the sword, and laid their heads at the feet of the great Timur, who cou'd not see these illustrious men lie dead without grief: he order'd that their bodys shou'd be carry'd to the city of Kech, that the Imams might pray for 'em, and funeral obsequys might be perform'd in a sumptuous manner, tho they had us'd hostilitys against him.

After this defeat he wou'd not give the enemys time to recover their loss, nor to levy fresh troops; but resolv'd to pursue 'em as far as the fortress of Chāduman, and to put his army in order, to march directly against the Emir Hussein: but the princes refus'd to follow him, representing to him, that their opinion was, that he ought to abandon this enterprize, and return to Samarcand; to which he consented.

Timur having got together the troops of Kech and the neighbouring places, departed for Samarcand, leaving Termagiuc Aigouri and Taghichah at Kech, to take care of his revenues, without over-taxing the people. At his arrival in the neighbourhood of Samarcand, Ouchcara Behader, governor of that city, sally'd out with the troops of the Emir Moussa, and stopp'd at the bank of the rivulet Rahmet. Timur divided his soldiers into two bodys, and at the first onset routed his enemys. Akitmur Behader pursu'd Ouchcara, and striking at him with his sword, broke his quiver and arrows; but Ouchcara turning himself upon his saddle, answer'd him with another blow of his sword, with which he smote the head of Akitmur's horse, which fell under him: so that Ouchcara fled, and enter'd into the city. Timur encamp'd in a place call'd Retin, while Ouchcara got together fifteen hundred men,

Timur re-  
turns to  
Samar-  
cand.



**Book I.** whom he equipp'd to advantage, and made a second sally. The soldiers of Timur march'd against 'em like roaring lions, and so affrighted these new troops, that they fled without fighting; and re-entering the city, block'd up the streets to hinder the cavalry from passing. Their fears were so great, that they got in their horses all saddled with the greatest expedition, their saddles being much bruised, so that they were but badly equipp'd; the soldiers likewise being reduc'd to so great misery, that they hid themselves in the filthiest places.

Timur staid some days in the delicious country of Sogd, where he chose for his pleasure-houses Ferinkunt and Sagruge, two very agreeable villages.

In the mean time he had advice that Oladgia Itou and Poulad Bouga were advancing with a great body of the Coronas. Taghichah also arriv'd, and confirm'd this news, adding that a troop of soldiers had fallen upon Termagiuc unawares, and put him to death.

Timur departed from Sogd, to encamp with his army on the bank of the rivulet Yam; to which place Argounschah, native of Bourdalic, whom Timur had sent to gain intelligence, brought with him a soldier, who told Timur that Oladgia Itou and Poulad Bouga were encamp'd on the rivulet Toun, and that the Emir Hussein was arriv'd at Carschi with a great army. On this Timur imagin'd it best to wait a more favorable opportunity to revenge himself on his enemys.

He disbanded the army he had rais'd at Kech and the neighbouring places; and with the six hundred men who were with him before his passing the Gihon, march'd towards the lowermost part or basin of the river of Samarcand.

The Emir Hussein had already given orders Chap. 20.  
to the Emir Moussa and Ouchcara Behader, to oppose Timur in his passage; for which reason they were marching to encamp with their troops at Kukelder Atchighi, to give him battle.

Timur arriv'd there, and attacking them first, they fled, and sav'd themselves with great difficulty in the city of Samarcand.

Timur came to Sagrue in the night, and having given time to his cavalry to rest themselves, he departed in the morning, and arriv'd in the evening at Caradgie: he set out next morning, and came down to a place call'd the camel's neck; he went thence in the evening, and marching all night, arriv'd at Kukenc; he cross'd the Sihon at Cogende, where he staid one night. And as Kei Cosru and Behram Gelair, who sided with the Can of Gete, had brought thence seven thousand Getes commanded by Coutchoun Timur and Chiraoul, and had stopp'd at Tachkunt, Timur went towards that part of the country, the Can having order'd that the army and the people of the country shou'd rendezvous under Behram Gelair, who by virtue of that order ought to be Emir or governor of that city. But Timur did not find in Behram that friendship he expected: for tho Behram had always pretended a great affection to him, after having sworn to join with him against the Emir Hussein, and by the assistance he had receiv'd from Timur's troops was establish'd in his own inheritance, and had got the advantage over his enemys; yet when this prince requested him to serve him in the condition he was in, he had no regard to his promises and treatys, but forgot all the obligations he ow'd him, and refus'd to render

Book I. him the service he was able, tho he might have  
 done it with ease, since he had the disposal of  
 all the country, as collector of the revenues of  
 the imperial treasury.

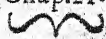
Timur boldly reproach'd him for his ingratitude : telling him that the union he had contracted with him was the first cause of his rupture with the Can and the Emir Hussein ; that this union had been preserv'd inviolably on his side ; that he had deliver'd him out of misery, and help'd him to recover the command of his Toman, which he cou'd never have done without his assistance ; that after he had been beaten by his enemys, he had been the cause of his gaining the victory over 'em ; and that when he saw him have troops sufficient to assist him, he came to him : but because after all these kindnesses he had treated him with so much baseness, he did not doubt that he shou'd one day see him at his gate in the same miserable state from whence he had before deliver'd him. All this in the end fell out exactly.

The Emir Kei Cosru did not treat Timur in the same manner ; for after having testify'd to him the joy he felt at his arrival, he conducted him into his palace, where he treated him magnificently, and gave him all possible marks of his good-will, promising to join with him against every one else.

The Emir Kei Cosru had the honor to be son-in-law to Togluc Timur Can king of Gete ; and the prince Touman Coteluc afterwards gave him in marriage the daughter of his cousin Bisun Timur Can, son of Abuken ; and he had by this princess a daughter nam'd Rakie Can. Timur demanded her in marriage for his son the Mir-

za Gehanghir; and they pass'd a whole month in pleasures and diversions.

Chap. 21.



---

C H A P. XXI.

*The Emir Hussein sends an army against Timur, which is defeated.*

THE Emir Hussein went into the city of Sebz at the head of a great army of the Coronas, and encamp'd at Salar Boulac. He sent before to attack Timur the most considerable Princes of his army, to wit, the Emir Moussa, the Cheik Mehemed son of Beyan Selduz, Oladgia Itou Aperdi, and others, with twenty thousand men; who march'd by Samarcand to the river of Balangour. But the Emir Moussa and the other leaders of these troops, who had several times felt the effects of Timur's valor, were seiz'd with fear; which oblig'd 'em to detach from their army three great squadrons whom they sent before, with orders that every one shou'd keep a particular way to wait Timur's passage. Malek Behader was posted in the road to Suzangheran with three thousand men; Gehanchah in Rebat-Mulc with fifteen hundred troopers; and Kherman with a thousand men at Dizac to guard the passage of Biti Codac.

Timur, who was not disturb'd at the great number of the enemys, being accompany'd with Kei Cosru, took with him two thousand Getes to oppose 'em. He went before with fifteen hundred men from a place call'd Cavas; he cross'd the Sihon at Cogende, and in the night attack'd Gehanchah, whose troops he



Book I. dispers'd: the next day he went to Dizac; where he attack'd Kherman and beat him; and permitted his soldiers to pillage his baggage. He staid at Dizac to give his cavalry time to rest themselves, and left there three hundred Getes to guard the spoils of the enemy. He then departed with two hundred horse only, to attack Malek Behader: he sent before him thirty of his bravest and most experienc'd soldiers; four scouts went also to the right and left to make discoverys, and he follow'd 'em himself with a hundred and sixty six men.

When the enemys saw these thirty men so well equipt advancing towards 'em with great boldness, they were surpriz'd, and thought it was the vanguard of the Moguls army, that is to say, of the Getes, and that the main body was behind. This thought, join'd with the secret fear they had of Timur, caus'd the troops of Malek to fly. Our men pursu'd 'em, and kill'd a great number: these cowards, who were fill'd with the fear which Timur had caus'd in them, approaching the Emirs Moussa and Oladgia Itou, also struck terror into them; and so they had twenty thousand men complete, they decamp'd the same night, and fled in so great disorder, that no one staid for his comrade, because every one being under apprehension of death, fled full speed to rejoin Hufsein.

The prince Kei Cosru sent to inform Timur that the army of the Getes had plunder'd the Musfulmans; that after having made many slaves, they had return'd by the way of Dizac; and that he expected Timur with a hundred men in Rebat-Mulc. This news griev'd Timur, who presently went to Kei Cosru, to acquaint him,  
that

that it was not right to leave the Mussulmans in the hands of the infidels<sup>2</sup>.

Upon this they held a council, wherein it was resolv'd that sixty chosen men shou'd be sent in search of the Getes in the mountain, to molest 'em, and perhaps put 'em to flight; in which case it wou'd not be difficult to deliver the slaves from the hands of the barbarians. In short, these sixty men had no sooner rais'd a dust on the mountain, than the Getes were afraid and fled, abandoning the slaves and booty, of which our soldiers easily made themselves masters.


After this expedition they return'd, and Timur cross'd the Gihon, and went down to Comrac.

When the Emirs and soldiers of Hussein, asham'd, poor, and miserable, were come to him, he fell into a great passion, and after a sharp reproof, told 'em they too well deserv'd the misfortune which had befallen 'em. He departed with the Can very wroth; and when he was at the white mountain<sup>3</sup>, he chose ten thousand of his best soldiers, encourag'd 'em by his discourses, and sent them away as scouts, with order to cross the Sihon at Cogende, and to march with all expedition to give the enemy battel.

About the same time that Timur receiv'd the news of the march of Hussein, there fell a terrible shower of hail throughout the country; and tho this happen'd during the night, and the darkness was extraordinary, yet he mounted his horse immediately, and the Emir Kei Cosru assisted him with his forces. They departed to-

<sup>2</sup> The Getes were idolaters.

<sup>3</sup> Ac Kutel, or Accaya.

Book I.  together at the head of fifteen hundred men, and at midnight arriv'd at the passage of Barfin: they seiz'd it; and order'd the trumpets to be sounded, the noise of which, join'd to the fear the enemys were in, caus'd this army, so formidable and numerous in comparifon to that of Timur, to be seiz'd with a panick. It cross'd the river, and march'd all night to find Hussein: the soldiers appear'd before their general with shame, and the general was afflicted at his bad fortune. During these transactions, Behram Gelair, without following the advice of Timur or Kei Cosru, departed from Tachkunt with the army of Gete, to return home, and took the road to Seiram. As the furniture belonging to Timur and Kei Cosru were with Behram, these princes were constrain'd to follow him; and when they were arriv'd at Seiram, they found 'em left in the village of Tchemikunt, from whence Behram was already departed.

Flight of  
the army  
of Emir  
Hussein for  
fear of Ti-  
mur, and  
the return  
of Hussein.

Timur sent Sar Bouga and Acbouga Behader to Gete to the Emirs Chamseddin and Hadgi Bei, to get their assistance; and then he consulted with Kei Cosru concerning the place where they shou'd take up their winter-quarters, and it was resolv'd that Kei Cosru shou'd go to Otrar, and that Timur with his six hundred men, on whom he very much rely'd, shou'd return to Tachkunt.

The Can and the Emir Hussein consider'd, that the winter approach'd, and that with all their efforts they wou'd be able to gain no advantage over Timur, because this prince by his wise conduct had defeated all their enterprizes, notwithstanding the numerous armys they had got together: they therefore left at Samarcand Poulad Bouga with a troop of their bravest soldiers

soldiers to guard that city, and return'd to Arhenkferai to pass the winter there.

Chap. 22.

---

C H A P. XXII.

*The Emir Hussein again seeks to make peace  
with Timur.*

AFTER the winter, Sar Bouga and Acbouga Behader, whom Timur had sent to Gete, return'd, and brought advice that a great army of the Getes were marching to his assistance; and because this prince usually succeeded in his undertakings, and defeated the greatest armies with few soldiers, the Emir Hussein resolv'd to make peace with him; and he the more earnestly desir'd it, in that he learnt that the army of Gete intended to come over to this prince in the spring. He imagin'd he shou'd not be able to resist him when at the head of a great army, since with a handful of men he had ruin'd all his troops, and if he continu'd the war, he must expect the fatal consequences of it: for this reason he thought it proper to apply himself to the doctors of Cogende and Tachkunt, and beseech them to prevail with Timur by sentiments of piety, and to inspire in him, thro their wise counsels, a spirit of union and peace, instead of that of discord and war. These doctors did not fail to come and seek him: after having made vows for his prosperity, they told him that being perswaded of the respect he bore to men of their character, they were so bold as to ask a thing which concern'd both religion and the state. "You know," said they, "the war between you is  
" the



Book I.

“ the cause of the ruin of the kingdom, and of  
 “ the misery of the people ; and that at present  
 “ a strange army is on the point of coming in-  
 “ to this country : the infidels will plunder the  
 “ goods of the Musulmans, and bathe their  
 “ hands in their blood ; and if they are conque-  
 “ rors, which God forbid, they will not spare  
 “ even you ; the hatred between you will cause  
 “ strange effects, and ruin all the antient fami-  
 “ lys of the empire. We hope that, following  
 “ the inspirations of him who has always given  
 “ you the victory, you will change this hatred  
 “ into friendship and peace, that the affairs of  
 “ the empire may be restor’d to their former  
 “ state, for the good and security of the peo-  
 “ ple.”

These remonstrances were follow’d by a dream of Timur, which at length caus’d in him a resolution to make peace. This prince dreamt that the Sihon was overflown, and that he was set on a plank of wood on the water ; that he fell down on his face, and pray’d without intermission to be deliver’d from the danger he was in : that his surprize made him swoon away, and that when he was return’d from his swoon, he found himself on the bank of the river towards Samarcand, from whence, looking behind him, he perceiv’d a boisterous sea. When he awak’d, he interpreted the dream after this manner : he imagin’d the sea signify’d an army, and that the deliverance he found in getting on the bank of the river towards Samarcand, signify’d that his desires wou’d be accomplish’d in that very place.

All these reasons oblig’d him to change his resolutions, and to despise the assistance he expected from Gete : he was entirely resolv’d on a peace ; but he thought that if he made use of

a mediator in it, it wou'd take up too much time to canvass the reasons on both sides, and to keep up the right of each; that the business wou'd be long in hand, and it was better he shou'd go himself to find the Emir Hussein; that it wou'd be more convenient to have a conference together in relation to the difference between 'em, because they wou'd sooner agree on the articles of peace. For that purpose he sent to Hussein an officer whom he cou'd confide in, call'd Pentchenbe, to let him know his design; and at length our prince departed in person to regulate his affairs himself according to his custom. In the mean while the Emir Moussa and Oladgia Itou came to meet Timur on the part of Hussein, to ask pardon for all that had past: they renew'd their antient friendship, and Timur did Emir Moussa the honor to embrace him.

After the preliminarys were settled, the peace was concluded, and these princes disbanded their army. They regal'd each other with several diversions, and then they return'd home. Timur took the road to Kech, and arriv'd at that agreeable country, where all the grantees came to kiss his feet, and receiv'd him with all imaginable civilitys. He found at Kech all sorts of satisfaction and happiness, and the people of this kingdom were extremely over-joy'd to possess in peace a prince so dear and valuable to 'em.



## C H A P. XXIII.

*The Emir Hussein brings an army into the field from Bedakchan.*

THE Can and the Emir Hussein, on the news of the kings of Bedakchan having revolted, fail'd not to prepare an army for reducing them; and as these rebellious princes had also rais'd troops, they went to meet 'em, and the two armies were soon in view.

Malek Hussein, prince of Herat, sent some good troops from Balc, with orders to ravage the provinces thereabouts which were subject to the Emir Hussein; and Timur had no sooner advice of this enterprize than he departed for Kech with his forces to repulse Malek Hussein, in consequence of the peace and union which had been renew'd between him and the Emir Hussein.

When the troops of Malek heard of Timur's march, they return'd back, after having pillag'd Cheburgan and Balc, and all the country as far as Culm. Timur cross'd the river at Termed; but as the Corassianians retir'd, he advanc'd no farther, but went in search of the Can and the Emir Hussein, who on notice of his coming, made a truce with the kings of Bedakchan, and immediately return'd. These princes met at Condoz, embrac'd each other, and put an end to the aversion they had a long time bore to one another. They made entertainments which lasted several days, went together to the cold country of Iscamich; and Timur sent orders to prince Gehanghir his son, who was at Macan,

Macan, to come immediately with his family *Chap. 23.* and retinue to the agreeable territory of Kech; which he did accordingly.


Poulad Bouga and Acbouga also revolted, fortify'd themselves in the citadel of Cabul, and committed many acts of hostility. The Emir Hussein accompany'd by Timur, march'd with an army to that place to reduce 'em, pass'd by the mountain of Hendoukech, and arriv'd before Cabul. Poulad and Acbouga made preparations to defend themselves with bravery, and fortify'd the citadel.

Our army attack'd the place on every side, and gave many assaults; the besieg'd vigorously defended themselves from the top of their wells, casting great quantities of stones, and shooting arrows on the besiegers.

Timur employ'd all his courage in subduing the enemy, which he so effectually perform'd, that he took from 'em all hopes of safety: but thro his own and his soldiers courage a great many of his brave officers were slain. Catai Behader, Cheik Ali Behader, and some others were wounded in the attack; but the presence of Timur inspir'd 'em with so much resolution that they at length became victorious: our army enter'd the place sword in hand, seiz'd on Poulad and Acbouga, and bound their hands; and after the taking of the place, the princes return'd home laden with glory.

The Emir Hussein ask'd Timur's advice in relation to the design he had to make his ordinary residence in the city of Balc; and for this end to rebuild the citadel of Hendouan, formerly noted for the height of the walls, the depth of the ditches, and the largeness of the towers: but Timur attempted to dissuade him from this thought, and for that reason told him  
the



**Book I.**  the tragical history of the Mirza Abdalla his uncle, who after the unfortunate death of his father Mir Cazagan, wou'd reside at Samarcand, notwithstanding the counsel of the Emirs who were attach'd to his interest both by duty and inclination, and who cou'd not but represent to him, that thus to abandon his native country, and live amongst strangers, was thro want of prudence, because one cou'd not confide in the service or assistance of strangers: but this young prince wou'd not hearken to the counsel given him; and at length what had been predicted happen'd to him.

Timur told the Emir Hussein that he took the same road as his uncle, and that a prince of so great a soul as himself shou'd not be guilty of a like fault, after such an example had been given him.

Tho the Emir Hussein approv'd of Timur's counsel as very fit to be taken, and as given him thro pure friendship, yet he did not follow it, but was resolv'd to put his design in execution. He departed for Balc, at which place his misfortunes began; and tho it was resolv'd, that at their return from Cabul, Timur shou'd depart for Kech, yet he desir'd him to accompany him to Balc, which he did. Hussein was no sooner arriv'd there, than he began to build the citadel of Hendouan, and to dig the ditches: he gave orders for the men to work there with diligence, made all the inhabitants of Balc come into the citadel, and the city remain'd like a desert; which happen'd in the

An. Dom. year of the Hegira 769.

1367. In the mean while advice was brought that  
 Mog. The the army of the Getes was again upon its march  
 Monkey. thither. The Emir Hussein, who foresaw that  
 he was not able by himself to get over so intricate

tricate an affair as this, besought Timur to do it himself, and to march into Transoxiana to repulse this army, telling him all would be lost, if the troops had not for their general the most valiant prince in the world.

Chap. 24.

---

C H A P. XXIV.

*Timur marches at the head of an army to repulse the Getes.*

WHEN the news of the march of the Getes was confirm'd, Timur departed for Transoxiana accompany'd by the Emir Moussa. They prepar'd themselves warmly to oppose the enemys, who were arriv'd at Tachkunt, where they encamp'd to pass the winter.

Timur and the Emir Moussa march'd to Samarcand, and encamp'd at Cara Kichlac. The Emir Hussein follow'd 'em with the rest of the army, and encamp'd in the plain of Kech.

There very fortunately arose a division among the lords of Gete : for Camareddin of the hord of Ouglat, Kepec Timur, and Chiraoul were united with some troops against Hadgi Arkenout, who resolv'd to give 'em battel. They took horse with this design ; but when they were in view, they made peace, and Arkenout return'd home : but Camareddin and Kepec Timur deceiv'd him, and retreated with their troops instead of following him ; and then Hadgi Bei son of Chiraoul cut off Arkenout's head, and by that means put the army of the Getes in disorder, and oblig'd it to march back again. Timur, who was well skill'd in the art of war, wou'd not attack 'em,  
but

Book I. but said, that when there was a misunderstanding between the generals of the enemys army, it was requisite that the sword shou'd be left in the scabbard.

Timur and Moussa sent messengers to tell the Can and the Emir Hussein, that since the Getes were return'd in disorder, it was proper to pursue 'em: but because the kings of Bedakchan had made several irruptions during the winter on their dominions, and had pillag'd the city of Condoz, the Emir Hussein thought it more advisable to march into Bedakchan, and put a stop to the designs of those princes.

Since thro the valor of Timur there was no further danger to be apprehended from the troops of Gete, the princes Hussein and Timur rais'd fresh soldiers, with whom they march'd to Bedakchan; and when they had cross'd the Gihon, and regulated the march of the army, they went to Taican and Keaoughan, and encamp'd at Kechem, a place dependent on Bedakchan. Timur, who lov'd to be first in every expedition, departed post, being accompany'd by Gehan-mulc, son of the Emir Hussein; and this last prince staid with the Can in Kechem.

On the other hand, the army of Bedakchan march'd towards the borders of the mountain Kerkes, where they stopp'd; their commander imagining that not a bird cou'd pass without their permission: but when they perceiv'd Timur's horse, they fled. Nevertheless, when they were arriv'd at the defile of Gerem, they were resolv'd again to stand their ground; but as soon as Timur's standard approach'd, all the troops fled beyond the mountain, cross'd the river Gerem, ruin'd all the country, and seiz'd on all the passes of the river. Timur cross'd it, and conceal'd a part of his men. And when the enemy

enemy had advice that the army had pass'd it, they retir'd by the upper side of Bedakchan, encamp'd in a narrow pass of the mountains nam'd Ortondge, where two great rivers meet: but having advice that our troops were marching thither, they turn'd their backs, and abandon'd it again. They went towards Conghoralenk, and cross'd at the utmost part of the Gihon; seiz'd on the other passes of the river which were on this side, and encamp'd there. The scouts of our army pursu'd 'em; but the enemy having prepar'd themselves to give battel, beat and routed 'em: they even made prince Cheik Ali, king of Bedakchan, prisoner. These vagrant princes afterwards presented Timur with the horses and all the flocks of their king. Timur, on advice that a troop of the enemy which had fled was retir'd into a defile, sent against 'em Gehanmulc, son of the Emir Hussein, with troops. He vanquish'd 'em, and took from 'em a great quantity of spoils: but at his return the troops of Bedakchan oppos'd his passage, took possession of Tenknai, and gave him battel. Gehanmulc fled, and the victorious enemies recover'd all they had lost. They kill'd a great many of our men, disabled six hundred and thirty horsemen, and made themselves masters of their horses and baggage. Balkhi rode post with this news to Timur. The prince immediately took horse, and in a passion march'd to the top of the mountain; but his soldiers being fearful, wou'd not follow him; so he was forc'd to content himself with thirteen horse, with whom he seiz'd on a narrow pass, thro which the enemys were oblig'd to march: he fell furiously upon 'em, and beat 'em, rescu'd his soldiers from their hands; and Timur protested that of all the battles he had been in, he had not yet met with



so rough a one. In the mean while fifty of the enemys infantry, cover'd with their bucklers, boldly march'd against Timur; and being with-in shot of him, let fly a great cloud of arrows. At the same time two hundred men came up to their assistance: but, thro the good fortune of Timur, Eltchi Bonga ran to 'em, being alone, and on foot. He caress'd 'em, and for that reason touch'd 'em several times upon the neck, speaking to 'em in a kind and subtle manner. "The person you see, *says he*, is the great Timur: he will restore you your slaves: why do you then fight to no purpose? You know that if you are kill'd or made prisoners, you will bear the blame of having your slaves taken." When the soldiers heard the name of that prince, the respect they bore him hinder'd 'em from fighting. They confess'd their weakness, kiss'd the earth in token of submission; and two of 'em came to him, in a humble manner, to beg pardon. Timur order'd 'em to bring the next morning all the horses and bucklers they had taken from our men; and he promis'd to deliver 'em back their slaves. They consented to every thing he requir'd; and said to him, "We are your servants; whatever you command, we must obey." They then return'd home, after having wish'd him all manner of prosperity. Timur return'd to his camp. The men of Bedakchan got together all they cou'd find belonging to us, besides several presents \* of horses and other things: next day they laid 'em at the feet of Timur, who kindly accepted of 'em, and order'd their slaves to be restor'd. At length this great prince, by his prudence, valor, and good conduct, with thirteen men only, deliver'd six hun-

\* The Tartars presents always consist of 9 pieces of each sort.  
dred

dred and thirty horsemen who had been made slaves, and recover'd what an army had shamefully lost; having moreover presents made him by the enemys. He at length return'd safe to Bedakchan, where, as soon as he arriv'd, Tizekchi Gelair, and the troops which had fled, at least those which were come into that city, were sharply reprimanded. The Emirs besought him that he wou'd defer the process against 'em till the end of the campaign; but Timur's zeal wou'd not permit it. He order'd 'em to be brought that instant before a court-martial; and after having examin'd 'em, they were all punish'd with the bastinado according to their sentence.

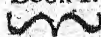
During Timur's stay at Bedakchan, the Emir Hussein sent to tell him, that the Cheik Mehemed Selduz and Kei Cosru, after having got together all their friends and some troops, were upon their march, with their ensigns display'd; that nothing but his invincible sword was able to quench the fire of this rebellion: and he besought him to come with expedition, to settle affairs there, according to his usual good conduct. After having dispatch'd this advice, the Emir Hussein return'd with the Can to Saliserai.

---

## C H A P. XXV.

### *Timur returns from Bedakchan.*

**W**HEN Timur had advice that the Cheik Mehemed Beyan Selduz and Kei Cosru were so rash as to make war on Hussein, he took horse and departed from Bedakchan: and as every one foresaw that victory always accompany'd the standard of that prince, the rebels wrote him a letter, in which they represented the

Book I.  cause of their discontent, and beg'd assistance of him. This letter was intercepted by the Emir Hussein, of which Timur had advice. When he was arriv'd at Arhenk, he had a conference on the bank of the river with the Emir Hussein, who testify'd his joy on seeing him, and observ'd on his side all the ceremonys which were tokens of a kind reception. Timur, because of the friendship they had renew'd and confirm'd by oaths, expected that the Emir Hussein wou'd shew him the letter of the princes, and not conceal his design; because the discovery of a secret is a token of sincerity: but Hussein did not answer his expectation, which made him jealous. He was no sooner got to his palace, than three persons came to him, who told him that the Emir Hussein had resolv'd to surprize and seize on him. All this was confirm'd by a private person, to whom the Can Adel Sultan had writ, that the Emir Hussein had order'd the Emir Moussa to watch an opportunity to seize on Timur; which letter he brought with him. Tho these circumstances increas'd his jealousy, yet he had so great a soul, that he took no notice of 'em, and acted as he had done before.

All these marks of Hussein's baseness, confirm'd by so many circumstances, did not astonish Timur: he conceal'd this letter, imagining that if Hussein had any design to betray him, he wou'd have done it at their first interview. "Is the Emir Moussa, *says he*, able to seize me? And can a fox make a lion his prey?"

After he had banish'd from his mind all those thoughts which might give him any discontent, he took horse, and went to find Hussein, to know of him the truth of these rumors. He met him on horseback on the bank of the Gihon: and as he was about to speak to him, there came a  
bark

bark from the other side of the water, out of Chap. 26.  
which there suddenly stept forth a man, who  
whisper'd to Hussein, "The enemy is near,  
"the army must be got ready." Hussein, upon  
hearing this news, thought the best way to  
overcome the enemy would be to send Timur  
against 'em. He told him of it, and instantly  
besought him to cross the river with his troops.

Timur did as he desir'd; and when he had  
overtaken the scouts, he put the army in order  
of battel: but the enemys had no sooner heard  
of the arrival of the great Timur, than they  
turn'd their backs and fled. Kel Cosru took  
the road to Cair Tekin, and thence to Alai,  
whither he was pursu'd by Zendeacham; and  
the Cheik Mehemed Beyan Selduz fled to Zizi,  
towards Cogende, to which place Timur pur-  
su'd him: but the Cheik cross'd the Sihon, and  
fled towards Tachkunt and Otrar: wherefore  
Timur, full of glory, immediately return'd to  
Kech, where he ordinarily resided; whilst every  
place echo'd forth the rumor of his victory.

When Hussein had provided against the in-  
sults of his enemys, he departed from Arhenk to  
Balc, where he chose the castle of Hendouan  
for his residence.


---

C H A P. XXVI.

*A second rupture between Timur and Hussein.*

**W**HEN God designs a thing, he disposes  
the causes, that whatever he hath re-  
solv'd on may come to pass: thus he destin'd  
the empire of Asia to Timur and his posterity,  
because he foresaw the mildness of his govern-



Book I.  ment, which wou'd be the means of making his people happy. The least accident in the course of this prince's fortune hath been so extraordinary, that the wisest and most learned men were never able to fathom it : every thing fell out according to his desire, thro the assistance of the divine providence, which had resolv'd to settle the crown on his head. And as sovereignty, according to Mahomet, is the shadow of God, who is one, it cannot be divided; no more than there cou'd have been two moons in the same heaven ; so, to fulfil this truth, God destroys those who oppose him whom providence wou'd fix upon the throne.

Among all the princes who had the title of sovereigns, when the rise of Timur began, there was none of greater power than the Emir Hussein : but his wicked inclinations soon caus'd his ruin, and his avarice made him despise all sentiments of honor and virtue ; on the other hand, his self-conceitedness, and the small regard he shew'd to others, join'd to passion and imprudence in his speeches, render'd his government insupportable, and drew on him so great an aversion from the people, that they lost all the esteem and affection they had had for him. The good intelligence he kept with Timur-Bec had so firmly supported his authority, that scarce any one refus'd whatsoever he demanded ; and he who declar'd himself his enemy, was not safe from the vengeance of Timur, but by flight. In all his affairs, both prosperous and unsuccessful, Timur assisted him as far as he was able, with an admirable courage and intrepidity : he even pursu'd the Can Adel Sultan, who was jealous of Hussein, tho he had rais'd him to the throne : this prince fled from his court, and pass'd thro the country of Kech ;  
but

but Timur seiz'd him after some resistance; and sent him to Hussein. Moreover, the friendship of these two princes was kept up by their alliance in marriage, Timur having espous'd the sister of Hussein: Nevertheless the latter had always design'd to deceive Timur; for tho he had in appearance repented of the enmity he had conceiv'd against him, and had obtain'd a peace with so much difficulty, and tho their agreement was confirm'd by oaths, yet he left not off his former evasions; his unconstant humor, join'd with the malice of his relation Poulad Bouga, and of the Emir Calil, caus'd him to break thro all his oaths, and the treaty he had made with Timur. He sent men to Kech, to make all Timur's subjects depart out of that city, and to bring 'em to Balc. And because the Emir Muaid had in a drunken fit beaten and kill'd the son of Chaourtchi, and fled for it, Hussein sent messengers to bring away to Balc the wife of this Emir, call'd Chirin Bei Aga, the sister of Timur; he dismiss'd the prince Gehanghir, whom Timur his father had plac'd near him, and order'd him to send him forth with the Emir Moussa with the troops he commanded. Timur had every day new causes of jealousy, advice being brought him that a design was form'd to seize his person: on the other hand, the secret which Hussein had made of the letter of Kei Cosru, join'd with the assurance Mehemed Beyan had given him that all these advices were well grounded, as in effect they were; and the reflections he made on the present motions and former treasons of Hussein: all this, I say, convinc'd Timur of the evil intention of that prince, whom it was unsafe not to suspect. In the mean while he held a council with the Emir Moussa and the princes he

Book I. cou'd most confide in; in which he told 'em the Emir Hussein had designs against his person, and that it was prudent for him to prevent their being put in execution.

When the Emir Moussa, the other Emirs, and the principal courtiers of Timur, as the Emirs Daoud, Sar Bouga, Muaid, Hussein Behader, Acbouga, Eltchi Behader, the Cheik Ali Behader, and Doletchah secretary of state, had heard his discourse, they unanimously agreed that he ought no longer to confide in the treaty or oaths of Hussein, since he always had design'd to deceive him. "God forbid, said they, that we shou'd let slip this opportunity of putting ourselves in a condition not to fear him; for if we do, we shall never be able to recover it, and then repentance will avail nothing; we ought to prepare to oppose him, and employ all our care to carry on successfully so important an affair, that he may no longer have the means of hurting us." After having given thanks to God, according to the custom of the council, they concluded thus: "Since the enemy has always evil designs in his heart, it will be better to proclaim open war against him." Then addressing themselves to Timur, they said, "This perfidious prince designs to ruin you: you ought therefore as a wise man to break off all intelligence with him; by which you'll put an end to his insupportable tyranny, and stop the tears and crys of the people, who expect freedom from your hands."

The Emir Yakou and Doletchah press'd this home to Timur, who gave great attention to 'em. And after the Emir Moussa had renew'd with this prince a promise of friendship, they conceiv'd a perfect enmity against Hussein; and  
excited

excited by the opportunity this conjuncture afforded 'em, they began the rupture by the death of Ali brother of Kefer Yefouri.

On further assurance that the Emir Hussein design'd to violate his oaths, and had already prepar'd to execute his artifices, Timur resolv'd on the ruin of this enemy. But as his great soul wou'd not permit him to make use of tricks, which are suggested by weakness or necessity, he boldly declar'd war against him, giving out his orders for troops to be rais'd, and sending Hindoui Corcora native of Capchac, with order to oblige the Cheik Mehemed Beyan to return, who had fled, and cross'd the Sihon for Otrar.

When the troops were come to the place where Timur was, this prince gave his orders among the scouts and guards; he kept with him the Emir Moussa to command the rear, and departed from Kech in person, after having, according to custom, consulted the astrologers, and taken the happy moment in which he shou'd de-camp. He set out before the rest with a great number of brave men, full of zeal, ambition, and hope. As soon as he arriv'd at Cuzar, the Emir Moussa was surpriz'd with a panick fear, as usual, went back from his promise, fled, and return'd to Samarcand. Timur seem'd to take no notice of this action; but sent Siorgatmich Aglen, with the Emir Muaid and Hussein Berlas, before the rest, as scouts; while himself commanded the guards, and continu'd his march. When these scouts had pass'd the iron gate, and were arriv'd at Termed, the scouts of the army of Hussein, commanded by Hindouchah and Calil, perceiv'd 'em, but they soon fled back to Balc.

When Timur was arriv'd at Boya, three leagues from Termed, he met the illustrious  
and




Book I. and pious Santon Seid Bereke, one of the most considerable Cherifs (that is, relations of Mahomet) of the venerable Mecca. This famous Cherif, who had acquir'd a great reputation for his piety and learning, came by chance to this place: he presented Timur with a drum and a standard, which are the ordinary marks of sovereignty; and at length, as if inspir'd, he sung an hymn, which predicted Timur's future happiness.

Timur gave Seid Bereke a very magnificent reception, he being one of the most illustrious lords of the house of the prophet. He then join'd with him in an indissoluble friendship; and this great Cherif resolv'd to spend all his days with a prince whose greatness he had foretold: and Timur order'd that after his death they shou'd be both laid in the same tomb, and that his face shou'd be turn'd sideways, that at the day of judgment, when every one shou'd lift up their hands to heaven to implore assistance of some intercessor, he might lay hold on the robe of this child of the prophet Mahomet.

The great confidence Timur always plac'd in this Cherif, who was the chief of all the other relations of Mahomet, is too well known to need proofs of it. Their strict friendship was of great advantage to the Mahometan religion, and on that account several people abandon'd their error and idolatry to embrace it. This union hath continu'd to this day among their illustrious posterity; and it is hop'd, that having begun so well, it will remain among their descendents to the end of time.

Timur departed from Boya for Jagana on the river Jaganrouc, where he order'd the Emir Yakou to assemble the troops which were in the neighbourhood. Yakou accordingly got together

ther the horse of those countrys, as well of the hord of Selduz as others, and sent 'em to the camp; he afterwards went to Catlan to levy the troops of that country. Chap. 26. 

When the standard of the great Timur was arriv'd at the passage of Oubadge, the Cheik Mehemed Beyan and Hindoui Corcora join'd the army. This Cheik had the honor to salute Timur, who cross'd the Gihon, and went to encamp at Culm, the troops of which place join'd ours. The Emir Oladgia Itou, whom the Emir Hussein had plac'd in Condoz, and the Cheik Mehemed king of Bedakchan, whom Timur had invited to come and join him, arriv'd also with their troops, and receiv'd particular favors from Timur; and as they all hated Hussein, not being safe against his insults, they were over-joy'd at the march of Timur, and the war he had declar'd. They gave several entertainments to testify their satisfaction, and loaded this prince with praises: "All the kingdom, said they, is oppress'd by your enemy; advance like an hero to dethrone him, and you will make this monarchy flourish." The Emir Kei Cosru, who had fled from his country of Catlan to Alai for fear of the Emir Hussein, came also to join this army; and the Emir Yakou arriv'd at the same time with the troops of Catlan. In short, according to Timur's orders, there came from every province of the empire of Zagatal a general with his troops to the camp, which was so fill'd that there was no room for any more.

All the Emirs and princes of this great kingdom promis'd obedience to Timur, and gave publick testimonys of their fidelity in his serf, so that nothing cou'd be a finer sight than the camp of this conqueror. Timur sent out a great number

Book I. number of brave men for scouts; which the Emir Hussein had also done. The Cheik Ali Behader, who was of prodigious strength, had no sooner perceiv'd the scouts of Hussein, than he rush'd on 'em like a lion sword in hand. The encounter was terrible, nothing being heard in the two Mangalai ' but frightful crys, while the soldiers fell on each side. Catai Behader attack'd 'em in another place, and oblig'd the enemy to fly: and the Cheik Ali Behader took Chouban Serbedal prisoner. Afterwards this great army, being divided into two bodys, march'd by the foot of the mountain: the soldiers, who were always desirous to fight in his service, were fill'd with joy, and made the air echo, **LONG LIVE THE GREAT TIMUR.**

The army encamp'd on the banks of a river, which runs from the narrow passage of Ghez, near the citadel of Orboz. Here Timur-Bec gave Siorgatnich Aglen the title of Can; and after he had regulated his army, departed for Balc. He met Zendeacham the son of Mehemmed Coja, leader of the vanguard, who came from Cheborgan with the troops of the hord of Aperdi, and join'd him.

This army, consisting of a prodigious number of valiant men, block'd up the city of Balc on all sides, and besieg'd the citadel call'd Hendouan. There was a hideous cry among the Tartar troops; nevertheless a great many horse and foot sally'd out of the city to repulse our soldiers; and the two armys fought with unparallel'd courage till night, when both partys

---

\* A considerable body of soldiers who are a kind of vanguard, always commanded by a prince.



drew off. In this battel, prince Omar Cheik, Chap. 26.  
the son of Timur, who was no more than fifteen years old, having given great proofs of his valor, was wounded with an arrow which pierced thro his foot: and tho the surgeons drew a hot iron thro the wound, this brave young prince bore it with invincible patience. The next day the sun had no sooner shone on the fort of Hendouan, than the two partys prepar'd for battel. Timur's army march'd at the sound of kettle-drums and trumpets; and a party of Hussein's men sallying out of the citadel to shew their valor, they began the fight, which was very bloody. Hussein, who at a distance beheld this terrible encounter, conceiv'd his affairs to be desperate, and that he shou'd never be able to re-establish 'em: he therefore resolv'd to shut up the gate of the citadel, and to abandon his fortune and all his grandeur.

Timur de-  
feats Hus-  
sein.

The victorious Timur sent to acquaint him, that if he desir'd his life, he must submit, and deliver up the fort. Hussein being now reduc'd to the last extremity, at this time act-ed with prudence; he sent his eldest son to Timur, with the Can whom he had set up: they submitted to him, besought him to spare their lives, and told him they shou'd account themselves happy in being subject to him. Hussein then sent his other son, and order'd him to tell Timur in the most submissive manner, that since fortune had forsaken him, he foresaw that the kingdom wou'd be Timur's lot, and poverty his; that therefore he wou'd resign his crown, renounce the riches, grandeur, and other pleasures of this world, being resolv'd to lead a private life overwhelm'd with griefs and misfortunes, and to request nothing of him but a free passage out of the citadel, in order to go a pilgrimage



Book I. pilgrimage to Mecca. Timur granted his request, and order'd that no one shou'd molest him, but that he might depart in freedom at the time he propos'd, and retire whither he pleas'd.

The Emir Hussein sent again to satisfy Timur that he wou'd go out the next day ; and requested he wou'd promise him that no one shou'd undertake any thing against his life. Timur granted it ; but Hussein was so accusom'd to break his word, and therefore jealous that Timur wou'd not keep his promise, that he went out of the citadel the same night with two servants. His affliction indeed had so overwhelm'd him, and he was so full of jealousy, and under so much surprize, that he had forgot the place he was to go to ; neither had he a soul devout enough to perform the pilgrimage he promis'd. After wandering for some time he arriv'd at the old city of Balc ; and when morning was come, his fear of death, which he was conscious he had deserv'd, made him get upon the minaret <sup>\*</sup> of the principal mosque, where he hid himself. By this were fulfill'd the words of Gelaleddin Roumi in his poems, " That a camel which got upon a minaret, cry'd out, *I am hid here, pray don't discover the place I am in.*"

As the time fix'd by fate for the death of Hussein was come, the concern he was in to hide himself was in vain. A soldier, who had by chance lost his horse, and been every where to seek it, was advis'd to get upon the minaret to try if he cou'd not perceive it from

---

\* A high steeple built near the mosques in Turkey, where the cryers with a loud voice proclaim the times of prayer.

thence. He went up, and saw the Emir Hussein, whom he knew. This prince, who in his prosperity had never shewn the least generosity to a soldier, flung down before the man a handful of pearls, and promis'd if he wou'd save him from the danger he was in, he wou'd not fail to requite him according to his power; he besought him with the greatest importunity, and made him swear he wou'd not discover him. The soldier promis'd he wou'd not, and went down the minaret; but immediately ran to Timur, to whom he told the adventure, not forgetting the circumstance of the pearls, nor the intreatys Hussein had made: he ask'd pardon of Timur for the action, and told him, that because he had the honor to belong to him, he cou'd not keep it secret, but was oblig'd to give him this important advice.

The Emirs and soldiers had no sooner heard of this, than they ran to the mosque. Hussein, who saw 'em from the top of the minaret, despair'd of his life: he came down very much afflicted, and hid himself in a hole: but by chance the tip of his garment was seen; so that he was discover'd, and brought to Timur with his hands bound. This prince wou'd not break his promise, but said to the Emirs who were near him, "I renounce the right I have of taking away his life, and erase the sentence of his death, by which I might revenge my self."

When he had dismiss'd him from his presence, Kei Cosru prince of Catlan complain'd of the wrong which had been done him, in that Hussein had put to death his brother Kei Cobad; he therefore besought Timur to deliver him into his hands, that justice might be done for the crime he had committed in taking away his brother's life. Timur, to appease Kei Cos-

Book I. ru, told him he ought to abandon this prosecution, for that his brother's blood wou'd be reveng'd without his having a hand in it; and on that occasion he cited a verse of the poet: *Leave him who hath offended you in the hands of time, for time and fortune will avenge you.*

Death of  
Emir Hussein.

Nevertheless the remembrance of the antient familiarity, as well as the alliance between Timur and Hussein by the marriage of the illustrious princess Turcan Aga, caus'd so great a sorrow in Timur's mind, that he melted into tears. Upon which the Emir Oladgia Itou, a man of years and great experience, imagin'd that as Timur bore so great affection towards Hussein, he might escape from the danger he was in, and when an opportunity was once lost, they wou'd repent of it: he therefore made signs to prince Kei Cosru, and the Emir Muaid, to go out of the assembly; which they did without asking leave of Timur, and taking horse, they follow'd the Emir Hussein, soon overtook him and slew him: which punishment being due to him according to the strict rules of justice, the protection of Timur avail'd him nothing.

An. Dom.

1369.

Heg. 771.

Mog. The

Dog.

The body of this prince was laid in the tomb of Santon Coja Ucache.

At length the army made themselves masters of the fortrefs of Hendouan; the two sons of Hussein, Consaid and Norouz Sultan, paid for their father's faithlessness, for they were burnt, and their ashes cast into the air; his two other sons, Gehan Mulc and Calil Sultan, fled into India, where they perish'd. The Can whom Hussein had set up was also put to death. They brought to Timur the ladys and domesticks of Hussein, as also all the treasure and riches he had amass'd with so much sollicitude

and

and avarice. Among the ladys of this prince's feraglio, Timur kept for himself the princesses Serai Mulc Canum, daughter of Cazan Sultan Can, Olous Aga daughter of Beyan Selduz, Islam Aga daughter of Kefer Yefouri, and Togi Turcan Catun. He gave to Behram Gelair the great queen, Sevendg Cotluc Aga daughter of Turmechirin Can, Hussein's first wife; he gave Dilchadaga to Zende Hacham, and the princess Adel Mulc, daughter of Kei Cobad prince of Catlan, to the Emir Yakou Berlas: he distributed the other ladys of Hussein's palace in the same manner, and gave the daughter of this prince to Eltchi Bouga brother of Taban Behader.

Timur order'd that the inhabitants of the city of Balc, who had shut themselves up in the citadel of Hendouan with Hussein, should return to the old city, and rebuild it for their dwelling-place. The citadel, after it had been pillaged, as well as the palaces of Emir Hussein, were all raz'd even to the very foundations; and every thing that belong'd to him was so entirely destroy'd, that there might remain no footsteps of him.

*The end of the first book.*



---

---

## B O O K II.

*The advancement of Timur-Bec to the throne of the empire of Zagatai. The marriage and death of Mirza Gehanghir his eldest son. Seven famous expeditions against the Getes. The conquest of the kingdoms of Carezem and Corassana; of the empire of Capchac, and grand Russia. The establishment of Tocatmich Can on the throne of Capchac. The birth of Mirza Charoc son of Timur. The conquests of this emperor in Mazendran, Azerbijana, the country of Fars, which is the true Persia, and in Irac Agemi.*

---

### C H A P. I.

*The establishment of Timur on the throne of the empire of Zagatai.*

**A**FTER the taking of the city of Balc, all the Emirs, princes and generals of the army of the empire of Zagatai, the Cans of Termed, and the prince of the Cherifs, Seid Bereke, (who, as we have related in the former book,

book, had predicted Timur's advancement to the throne) assembled in this city, and with unan- Chap. 1.  
 imons consent chose Timur to fill the imperial  
 seat of Zagatai. Nevertheless they waited for the  
 proper season to perform the ceremonies of his co-  
 ronation; and as soon as that time came on, Timur  
 ascended the throne, plac'd the crown of gold  
 on his head, and girded himself with the imperial  
 belt in presence of the princes of the royal blood  
 and the Emirs, who all kneel'd down before him,  
 and having wish'd him prosperity, made him  
 sumptuous presents, sprinkled handfuls of gold  
 and precious stones upon his head, according to  
 custom<sup>a</sup>; and gave him the title of Saheb Caran,  
 which words signify the emperor of the age and  
 conqueror of the world; and from that time all  
 the country was subject to his laws.

This prince was then thirty four years old, be- An. Dom.  
 ing born in the year 736; this great action 1335.  
 happening in the year of the Dog, one of the Mog. The  
 twelve years of the Mogul calendar, answering Mouffe.  
 to the year of the Heg. 771. in the month of  
 Ramadan, in which month the alcoran came  
 down from heaven, according to the opinion An. Dom.  
 of all our doctors. 1369.

This prince was at first named Timur by his  
 father the Emir Tragai; which name signifying  
 Iron, was given him because of his extraordi-  
 nary strength; but he was afterwards called the  
 Lion and Conqueror.

In short he hath almost always been invinci-  
 ble, and those who have hated him, or made  
 war on him, have been only the instruments of  
 aggrandizing the honor of his throne, and the  
 glory of his triumphs.

<sup>a</sup> This custom continues to this day, not only at the coro-  
 nation of princes, but also at the marriages of private persons.

He began his warlike actions in the city of Balc, which had belong'd to the Emir Hussein; the inhabitants of which place he treated with the utmost rigor, binding some in chains, and beheading others; he destroy'd their houses, and either rooted up or burnt the rest of the country; seiz'd on their riches, which he distributed among his officers, and made their wives and children slaves.

Thus there remain'd no more rebels in that country; the people enjoy'd peace; and there was nothing to be fear'd but from luxury and effeminacy.

As soon as Timur was upon the throne, he open'd the rich treasures of the Emir Hussein, which have been already mention'd, and was very liberal; he particularly distinguish'd himself by his civilitys towards the governors of towns, the generals of the army, the Emirs and principal men of the state; enlarging their commissions and honors: at length he dismiss'd 'em all, ordering 'em to the places of their residence, that they might administer justice to their subjects.

---

## CHAP. II.

*Timur returns from the city of Balc to Samarcand: the building of the castle and fortress of that metropolis.*

AFTER the taking of Balc, Timur made prince Mourad, son of Tchougam Berlas, governor of it; and having a design to return home, he march'd towards Kech, after having built a bridge of boats over the Gihon\*, which

\* Qxus:

is but eight leagues distant from Balc; and which having happily cross'd, he arriv'd in the delicious residence of the country of Kech, and encamp'd in the plain of Couchmich, on the banks of the fine river of Cochca. This prince, as he us'd all his authority to encrease the joy and pleasure of the great lords of this country, so he procur'd to the enemys of the kingdom all the disquietude and trouble he possibly cou'd, during the two months he staid in these delicious countrys. He there order'd carpets to be spread, and feasts prepar'd; giving himself up to pleasures, and sitting upon the throne in his native country, the city of Kech.

The country being deliver'd from the scourge of war, the favorites and officers of the house of Timur, and all those who were attach'd to his interest, were loaded with gifts, and rais'd to considerable posts and honors. In short, this prince caress'd the army, and particularly the generals; these he cloth'd with robes of honor, after having enrich'd them, and confirm'd the princes in their Tomans, and the commanders of a thousand men in their Hezares<sup>2</sup>.

The Emir Daoud was of this number, and to him was committed the post of Deroga, that is, governor of the city of Samarcand, and chief of the council, whom we commonly call Olave Imaret Divan, or chief of the Emirs of the Divan. The Emirs Yakou, Seifeddin, Abbas, Eskender, Alemcheik, Alafe Coutchin, Ardechir Coutchin, Comari Einac brother of Temouke Coutchin, had considerable commands assign'd 'em in the army, being made Tavatchis<sup>3</sup>,

<sup>2</sup> Lands which furnish a thousand men.

<sup>3</sup> Tavatchis among the Tartars are lieutenant-generals.



Book II. which are the first posts under the crown among the Turks <sup>4</sup>.

He made Sar Bouga, Houssein Berlas, Acbouga, Hadgi Mahmoudcha, Eltchi Behader, and Doletcha Behader, Emirs of the Divan, that is, counsellors of state.

He appointed the following brave men, Catai Behader, Cheik Ali Behader, Caban Behader, Decne, Baſichah, Carahinc, Cuctuc, Apachi Kelte, Cazan Bouga Arſlan, and Doura Behader, to be \* captains and lieutenants in his army; and he constituted these illustrious persons, Catai, Cheik Ali, and Akitmur, to be chiefs over the others, making them also his own † lieutenants. And in this manner he fix'd every one of his courtiers in the employment which best suited him, and even the meanest officers had great estates, and were advanc'd to high dignities.

\* Mocadem Sipah.

† Kelanter.

Samarcand made the seat of the empire.

He then departed for the city of Samarcand, which for its charming situation, the freshness of its gardens, the strength and neatness of its buildings, and its delightful rivers, makes the finest citys in the world jealous of its beauty. This he made the seat of his empire, and the place of his residence.

He caus'd the walls of the city to be repair'd, and a fortress to be erected; he built stately palaces and neat publick edifices, assigning the care of this great city to the Emirs of his court.

He appointed the Emir Acbouga superintendant of the buildings; and while the public affairs went on in a regular course, Timur

<sup>4</sup> The author calls those Turks in this book which we in Europe call Tartars.

us'd all his care and application entirely to purge the empire from the disorders which had crept into it; insomuch that plenty soon flow'd in this city, and all the earth was charm'd with the justice of Timur's government. In short, the favors and immunities he granted to the inhabitants, and the moderation and equity with which he govern'd 'em, caus'd so vast a number of people to settle there, that even Grand Cairo and Bagdad envy'd its prosperity and glory.

The Emir Moussa, who thro discontent had left the court, at the time when Timur departed for Balc, and was return'd to his own country, having learnt that this city was conquer'd by our hero, fled to Turkestan\*. Timur being inform'd of it, dispatch'd Genghi Couthin in pursuit of him; and when this general was come up to him, he fought and overcame him, and oblig'd him to retire into the mountains. He there remain'd a vagabond, till the Emir Carlogach, brother of Hussein, having pursued him, constrain'd him to alter his road, and to return to the southern countrys, whither being follow'd, he at length resolv'd to cross the Gihon with his two wives, and to fly for refuge to the prince Zende Hacham at Cheburgan<sup>s</sup>, in order to excite him to revolt. This unfortunate man listen'd to the rebel Moussa, which prov'd of ill consequence to him, for he soon after lost his life, and his principality of Cheburgan fell into the hands of another.

\* The eastern Tary.

---

<sup>s</sup> A city of Corassana, near the Gihon and Balc; long. 100. lat. 36. 45.

C H A P. III.

*The Couroultai, that is, the diet or assembly of the states, conven'd by Timur's orders.*

IN the month of June, the same year, the emperor gave instructions for the Couroultai to be held. The Emirs of the Tomans and Hezares came before the throne, according to the orders they had receiv'd.

\* Aperdi, a hord or tribe among the Zagataian Tartars.

The princes and kings came also; Zende Hacham, son of Mehemed Coja Aperdi\*, was the only person who did not obey the orders. Timur, by an express, threaten'd him with punishment if he did not come to the Couroultai. As soon as the envoy met him, he said, "You must come before the emperor's throne, if you wou'd testify your fidelity." Zende Hacham was deceitful on this occasion, pretended submission, and answer'd him, "I glory in obeying the orders of the emperor: wheresoever he requires my presence, I shall be ever ready with my buckler and sword in my hand; and if he wou'd put me to death, his will be done."

† Erlat, a famous hord of Tartars.

He honor'd and caress'd the envoy, and promis'd immediately to follow him: but he did not keep his word; and a person who came from thence made appear to the emperor, that Zende Hacham was not obedient to him, by the following relation: The Emir Bairamcha Erlat †, and his son Yetlandgi had formerly sided with the Emir Hussein against Timur; but being sensible of their errors, they were pleas'd with the

the success of this prince; and having learnt the news of his victorys and coronation, were so over-joy'd that they departed immediately from Corassiana<sup>?</sup>, to render him their services. Chap. 3.

Zende Hacham having advice of it went to meet them; and having carry'd them to a place agreeable for its coolness call'd Dalbeailac, he regal'd them magnificently; and when the fumes of the wine had got into their heads, seiz'd on both father and son, and binding their feet with irons, committed 'em to the care of his brother Pir Mehemed, whom he order'd in the presence of a great many persons to lay them at the foot of the throne of the emperor Timur, tho at the same time he had privately charg'd him to put them to death. Pir Mehemed carry'd them half a day's journey from the place where they had been entertained; and having murder'd them, return'd the same night to his brother Zende Hacham.

As soon as the emperor heard of these violencecs, he order'd the Emir Oladgia Iton, a relation of Hacham, to endeavor by his good counsel to bring him to his duty, threatening him else with a war, which might bring inevitable ruin upon him.

But as this old man had great experience in all affairs, and knew perfectly the humor of the princes of his blood, he remonstrated to the emperor that it would be in vain to give advice to this rebel, and that he cou'd not do it without being expos'd to an open affront, if his counsel shou'd be despis'd by a rash young man, who ow'd respect to his age: but if his majesty approv'd of it, he wou'd give the commission to

---

? A province E. of Persia, and S. E. of the Gihon,



Book II. his son Coja Yousef. The emperor was satisfy'd with his excuse, and sent Taban Behader with Coja Yousef to Zende Hacham, to persuade him to return to his duty, and to bring him to court. But being arriv'd at Cheburgan, this presumptuous and proud prince, without considering the consequences of his proceedings, seiz'd and bound them in chains.

---

#### C H A P. IV.

*Timur marches to Cheburgan at the head of an army.*

**T**IMUR having advice of the imprudence and violence of Zende Hacham, was so enrag'd that he immediately caus'd the horse's tail, and imperial standard to be erected, and departed from Kech with an army to reduce him to obedience.

When he had cross'd the Gihon, Zende Hacham, who had fortify'd himself in a castle in those quarters named Sefiddez, that is, the white fort, thought at first to have continued his rebellion; but the army having invested him in that place, the sound of the Courke<sup>s</sup>, the noise of the kettle-drums, and the great trumpet Kerrena, join'd with the horrid cries of the soldiers, terrify'd him so much, that he cou'd find no other remedy, than supplications and groans. He therefore address'd himself to his relation, the Emir Oladgia Itou, and besought him to intercede for him. The Emir Oladgia

---

<sup>s</sup> A kettle-drum which is beat at the beginning of the fight.

Itou discover'd so much goodness and humanity, Chap. 4.  
as to present himself before the imperial throne; where after having groan'd and wept, he meekly told the emperor, that Zende Hacham, sincerely repenting of his evil action, in-treated him to pardon his crime; and he join'd his entreatys with those of that prince, that it might please the emperor to decamp and disband his army, so that Hacham being recover'd from his surprize, might come before the throne with a sword and handkerchief<sup>p</sup> in his hand, to be receiv'd into the number of Timur's servants.

Timur remembring the saying of Mahomet, that blessing always attends the words of old men, was pleas'd with the intercession of Olad-gia Itou; he granted what he ask'd, and abstain'd from the blood of Zende Hacham, who came out of the citadel, deliver'd up the Emir Moussa, the author of this confusion, to the servants of the king, and sent Islam his young-er brother to serve Timur.

After this happy success, the Emperor took horse to return home, he disbanded his troops, and return'd to the city of Sebz<sup>1</sup>, the place of his birth, where he not only pardon'd Moussa his faults, but also loaded him with favors; and to comfort him for the grief he seem'd to have for his fault, gave him a sumptuous banquet, and distinguish'd him from many others, by honoring him with magnificent vests, and the command of a hord and province.

---

<sup>p</sup> It was a custom among the Tartars to carry in their hand a naked sword and a handkerchief, when they appear'd before their prince, to signify that they were ready to fight in his defence, and to lay down their life if he requir'd it.

<sup>1</sup> Sebz is the same place as Kech.

## C H A P. V.

*Timur sends an army to Balc and Termed.*

**A**S Zende Hacham was destin'd to a miserable end, the excess of his imprudence and pride prevented his reaping the benefit of the emperor's goodness towards him; insomuch that flighting his friendship, he relaps'd into disloyalty and rebellion. He drew over to his side the prince Aboul Moali, tho all his friends, and even policy itself, counsell'd him not to be seduc'd: and these two princes concerted together how they shou'd pillage the countrys of Balc and Termed\*.

When Timur had notice of it, he dispatch'd Catai Behader, and Argoun Chah, native of Bourdalic<sup>3</sup>, with an army of valiant men, all greedy of honor, and foremost in the most dangerous actions, and whose leaders had help'd to advance Timur to the throne.

When the Emirs were arrived at Termed with the army, they found a bridge of boats built by the inhabitants of the country over the river Amouye<sup>4</sup>: but some of the enemys, having cross'd it in order to get away, had demolish'd one end of it during the night; so that the other rebels, who were dismay'd at the sight of the imperial troops, and fled with precipitation,

---

\* A city in Transoxiana between the Gihon and the river of Saganian; long. 100 $\frac{1}{2}$ . lat. 37.

<sup>3</sup> A town of Transoxiana upon the bank of the Gihon, at the foot of a mountain of the same name, towards Carfchi.

<sup>4</sup> Amouye is the Gihon or Oxus, which takes this name while it passes to Amou.

being ignorant of the condition of the bridge, were overtaken by the troops who pursu'd them, and discharg'd a great number of arrows upon them: hereby the greatest part of these unfortunate rebels, threatned both before and behind with death, perish'd by the sword and waters. Nevertheless, as some were got over to the other side with Zende Hacham, this prince was accompany'd in his flight; and he gain'd entrance into Cheburgan, with design to defend himself in that fortress till the last extremity.

---

## C H A P. VI.

### *Timur sends the Emir Yakou to besiege Cheburgan.*

**T**IMUR having learnt that Zende Hacham had fortify'd himself in the citadel of Cheburgan, order'd the Emir Yakou to march and besiege it, which this general, having cross'd the Gihon with the army, did in form; he there pass'd the winter, and Zende Hacham dar'd not appear till spring; but then he came to himself again, and having had recourse to his friendship with the Emir Yakou, he went out of the fortress upon his promise of being civilly us'd; begg'd his protection, and ask'd pardon for his fault. His excuses made the Emir treat him handsomly, and promise to use all his interest with the emperor in his favor: he brought him to court, where the Emirs received him with all manner of civility. The Emir Yakou agreed with the princes to carry him to salute the emperor, and kiss the borders of the imperial carpet; they desir'd no other intercessor for the pardon of his crime than the love and clemency



Book II. mency which emperors usually have for their subjects.

The generous Timur vouchsaf'd him the honor to speak to him, and told him that he had forgotten his faults, and granted him his life; but it was his own province to preserve it, and not to desire what it was impossible for him to attain; because the crown which he had sought after is an honor which God grants out of his rich treasure to whomsoever he pleases; which is an effect of his bountiful mercy, and not to be attain'd by care or anxiety.

After Timur had assur'd Zende Hacham of his protection, he honor'd him with his counsel; caress'd him, and made him a present of many curious pieces, as belts of gold, Arabian horses, camels, sets of mules, and an infinite number of cattle; and even encreas'd his former dignity. Then Zende Hacham wholly devoted himself to the service of Timur, and was list'd among the officers of the court.

## C H A P. VII.

*Timur marches an army into the country of the Getes.*

**T**IMUR propos'd to march into the country of the Getes<sup>s</sup>, and in the year of the Hog, which answers to the year of the Hegira 772, and of Jesus Christ 1380, he departed at the head of his army.

<sup>s</sup> Gete a kingdom, which has on the East Turkestan; on the South the river Sihon; on the West Capchac, and on the North part of Turkestan. It fell to Zagatai Can the son of Genghiz Can, as his share.

As soon as he had cross'd the Sihon, the Emirs Comze and Orenkitmur submitted to him, so that their hords and countrys were entirely at the disposal of this Prince, who gave the government of them to Kepec Timur, and return'd victorious to his capital city. Chap. 7.

Some time after he had advice that Kepec Timur, full of ingratitude and pride, had revolted from him: wherefore as Behram Gelair\*, after what had happen'd at Tachkunt, and his being check'd by this prince, became obedient to him, and had been enroll'd in the list of the officers of the imperial throne; he was order'd, as well as the Emir Abbas, Katai Behader, and the Cheik Ali Behader, to make war on Kepec Timur, and by the sword to put an end to this rebellion. \* Gelair, a  
hord of  
Tatars.

All the Emirs and other brave warriors readily obey'd this order, and march'd with great resolution. When the armys were in view, the soldiers of the Toman of Behram Gelair, with the consent of their captain Beterkedgi, an old enemy of Behram, conspir'd to betray him, and seize on his Person; but the Emir having advice of it, kept in the middle of his corps-du-garde, and hinder'd the execution of their design. In the mean while Catai Behader, having made some useful propositions with regard to the fight to Cheik Ali Behader, which he thought not fit to hearken to, imagin'd the Cheik disslik'd his proposal merely thro want of courage; he therefore in a passion drew his sword, and having cross'd the river Aiche Caden, alone attack'd the enemy's ranks, of whom he routed some; but as their number was very great, they had entirely defeated him, if the Cheik Ali Behader had not follow'd him, and sav'd him from the danger he was in; after which he reproach'd him

Book II. him for his rash action, and they join'd one another again. These actions deserve the greatest admiration, as they cou'd never have happen'd but thro the good fortune of the invincible Timur, under whose conduct they carry'd on the war.

The Emirs made peace with the enemys on the bank of the same river, and then return'd home. They severly punish'd the soldiers of Gelair, who had form'd a design to betray Behram. But when they had the happiness to salute Timur, he was displeas'd at their return, and blam'd them for having made peace.

## C H A P. VIII.

### *A second expedition of Timur against the Getes.*

**T**IMUR, who was never pleas'd till he had finish'd what he had begun, was troubled at the Emirs making a peace with the enemy, by which they had lost the advantage of a battle.

To repair this fault, he resolv'd to go in person to the country of the Getes; for which reason he sent orders every where to levy a great number of soldiers; when that was done, he join'd them to the old troops, and all rendezvous'd near Samarcand. The emperor had scarce march'd by Seiram<sup>\*</sup> and Penki, with his numerous and formidable army, but in less than a month he became

<sup>\*</sup> At own on the frontiers of Gete, North of the Sihon, long. 99. 25. lat. 44. 45.

victorious ; for the army of the enemys fled at the first rumor of his march. This prince went as far as Senghizi Agadge, leaving with his foldiers a vast number of slaves and great booty ; and at length arriv'd at Adoun Couzi with the spoils he had gain'd.

In the mean time the following accident happen'd. The Emir Moussa and Zende Hacham, notwithstanding the favors Timur had a thousand times bestow'd on 'em, form'd a fresh conspiracy against him with Abou Ishac, and swore upon the Alcoran, that as soon as they arriv'd at Cara Suman, they wou'd seize on him while he was hunting. Every thing seem'd to smile on 'em, and when they were pleasing themselves with the ridiculous thoughts of their shameful project, they did not reflect on the consequences of it.

The prince Aboulmoali, son of the Can of Termed, and Cheik Aboulleit Sam arcandi, who had also conspir'd against Timur, were no sooner come into their measures, than a person who was privy to the design, presented a memorial of it to the emperor.

As soon as he had read it, he order'd the conspirators to appear before him : when they came, they were try'd and convicted of the crimes of treason and rebellion.

But because the queen Serai Mulc Canum<sup>2</sup>, was the sister of the Emir Moussa, and the princess Akke Beghi<sup>3</sup> was betroth'd to one of his sons, the emperor said to him, " The crime thou hast committed is great ; but because we are related, I pardon you, and will not re-

<sup>2</sup> Daughter of Gazan Sulran Can, and mother of Charoc : she was the great queen.

<sup>3</sup> Daughter of Timur.



Book II. "venge my self: and thus you may say, it was  
 "your alliance with me, and extreme old age  
 "which saved your life; for had it not been for  
 "that, I shou'd have order'd your head, which  
 "intended evil against me, to have been separated from your body."

He also told prince Aboulmoali, that no harm shou'd come to him notwithstanding his follies, because he had the honor to be of the family of Mahomet; but it was necessary he should be banish'd this country. He also commanded Cheik Aboulleit to retire to Hendjaz<sup>2</sup>. But as to the son of Keder, as he was brother to the wife of Hadgi Seifeddin Berlas, this lord had recourse to the emperor's clemency, interceded for him, and sav'd him from all harm. After this Timur order'd that Zende Hacham shou'd be bound, and carry'd to Samarcand, where he was kept close prisoner in a dungeon.

At length Timur return'd to Samarcand, the capital of his empire; and he had no sooner dismounted his horse, than he gave the government of Cheburgan, and the places Zende Hacham possessed, to Beyan Timur son of Acbotiga.

---

<sup>2</sup> Arabia Petrea, in which Mecca is situated.

C H A P. IX.

*The embassy from Timur to Hussein Sofi,  
king of Carezem\*.*

AS soon as Timur had deliver'd the empire of Zagatai from rebellion and tyranny, he employ'd his time in governing it according to justice; but having learnt that Hussein Sofi, son of Yanghadai of the Hord of Gonkegrat, had made himself master of the countrys of Cat and Kivac, he turn'd his thoughts to the settling of that affair: to which end he sent Alafe Tavatchi with a handfom retinue to this prince, in quality of ambassador, to acquaint him that Cat and Kivac belong'd to the empire of Zagatai; that he did not act fairly in seizing on 'em, as he had done for these last five years, because they were without a prince; and that he must deliver 'em up with all their dependences into the hands of the officers and commissioners of the state, that union and peace might be kept up between the two crowns, and he enjoy Timur's protection.

When the ambassador arriv'd at Carezem, he faithfully acquitted himself of his commission to Hussein, which he urg'd with the most forcible arguments: but this prince persisted in his resolution, and without considering the valor of the souldiers of Zagatai, the consequences of which he ought to have fear'd, he answer'd, That he had conquer'd these countrys with his sword,

\* A kingdom on the east shore of the Caspian sea.

and that Timur might recover 'em the same way, if he cou'd.

The ambassador upon his return reported this answer to Timur, which appear'd so unreasonable, that he was exasperated, and at the same time resolv'd to march at the head of an army against Hussein Sofi. But the pious and learned Moulla Gelaleddin, native of Kech, who was Mufti <sup>6</sup> to our great prince, did not like that the vanity of a single man shou'd be the cause of a great empire's ruin; and thereupon having made his submission to Timur, he besought him to let him go to Hussein Sofi, to advertize him of his imprudent carriage, and to admonish him to spare the lives and fortunes of the mussulmans.

The emperor granted the petition of Moula, and gave him leave to go to Carezem, to settle this affair. As soon as he arriv'd there, he began to give those general advices, which experienc'd and learned persons, the Imams, and other wise men, ordinarily use to appease seditions, and quench the fire of war; and he accompany'd 'em not only with arguments, but even with citations out of the Alcoran, and the sayings of Mahomet: yet all his eloquence, how sublime soever, did not succeed.

Hussein Sofi slighted his counsels, and had the boldness to imprison this virtuous Mufti in the citadel; upon which Timur order'd his troops immediately to rendezvous before Samarcand.

---

<sup>6</sup> Mufti is the chief priest, who decides the affairs of the law.

C H A P. X.

*Timur departs from Samarcand, to make war  
on the king of Carezem.*

**I**N the spring of the year of the Hegira 773, An. Dom. 1371.  
which answers to that of the Mouse, the emperor assembled his army, distributed his treasures, and made presents worthy of the greatest kings. Having done this, he departed from Samarcand, hunted in the plain of Carfchi, and encamp'd at Cabamitan <sup>1</sup>. Malek Cayaseddin Pir Ali, son of Malek Azeddin Hussein, who, after the death of his father, in the month of Zilcade in the year 771. was proclaim'd prince of Herat, of the kingdom of Gour, Couhestan <sup>2</sup>, and their dependences, sent hither Hadgi Vezir in quality of ambassador to Timur, with many presents of Arabian horses, carriage-mules, and other mules for riding, a great many stuffs, belts and garments. Among the presents was a fine horse spotted like a tiger, call'd Conc Aglen, with a saddle of gold.

Hadgi Vezir, on his arrival, having had the honor to kiss the royal carpet, did in a very humble manner inform Timur with how much sincerity and affection Malek his master had always been attach'd to his interest. Timur was intirely satisfy'd with this declaration; and having presented the envoy with a vest and other

<sup>1</sup> A country famous for a victory Timur formerly had obtain'd over the Geres.

<sup>2</sup> A province in the middle of Persia.



Book II. things becoming his grandeur, he wrote a letter to Malek full of kindness and good-nature, sending with it a vest of honor, as a mark of the great trust he repos'd in the prince of Herat: after this expedition he order'd the Emir Yakou Berlas to set out for Condoz, Bacalan <sup>1</sup>, Cabul <sup>2</sup>, and the neighbouring places, to govern all that country; he gave him the hord of Bourouldai, and appointed troops to conduct him thither.

The Emir Seifeddin Berlas was left with the government of Samarcand, and the direction of the affairs of that country. Then Timur march'd at the head of his army for Carezem, being excited to it, not only from a desire of acquiring glory by his arms, and dispensing justice to the people, but also by a verse of the Alcoran <sup>3</sup>, which gave him hopes of succeeding.

When the standard had pass'd by Bocara <sup>4</sup>, and was come to a place nam'd Sepaye, situated on the bank of the Oxus, they met the enemys scouts, whom they attack'd and vanquish'd: having bound their hands, they brought them to the camp, as the first fruits of the victory they wou'd probably obtain in this campaign; and there they were all beheaded.

\* Yesaoul  
signifys  
exempt.

† Deroga.

The troops continu'd their march, and arriv'd at the town of Cat. Behram Yesaoul \* and the Cheik Muaid were at this place under Hussein Sofi; the one in quality of † governor, and the

<sup>1</sup> A mountain near the Gihon, in the kingdom of Bedakchan.

<sup>2</sup> A frontier town, N. E. of India, long. 105. lat. 34  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

<sup>3</sup> The custom of the Mahometans, on undertaking any considerable affair, is to open the Alcoran, and read the first verse of the first page they meet with, whence they foretel their good or bad success: which usage is among them call'd Ifticara. The verse which Timur met with was, *The victory is certain.*

<sup>4</sup> A town in Tranfoxiana, long. 97  $\frac{1}{2}$ . lat. 37.

other of † judge. They order'd the gates to be shut up and barricado'd, and having prepar'd the machines of war, they put themselves in the best posture of defence they were able.

Chap.ro.

† Cadi.

The imperial troops having invested the town, assaulted it with their utmost vigor. And as the attacks were going forward, and both sides were hot, there was no time for treating of peace; arrows and stones fell from the town upon our army like rain, while we had not so much as one engineer in the camp. In the mean time Timur said it wou'd not be to his honor that the siege shou'd be rais'd without making himself master of the slave<sup>s</sup> of Hussein Sofi, who was commander of the town: he therefore immediately order'd the troops to fill up the ditch with faggots and other wood, and wou'd be present at this work himself. He commanded Coutchei Malek to go down into the ditch; but fear seizing him, Timur gave the same orders to the Chaoux<sup>s</sup> Comari, who immediately perform'd 'em.

Mubacher and Tacoja follow'd the Chaoux, and the soldiers did the same, advancing towards the breast-work. Cheik Ali Behader was the first who laid his hand on the said work, and wou'd have mounted it; but Mubacher envying him that honor, took hold on his foot, and both of 'em fell to the earth. However, Cheik Ali return'd, and had success: on which one of the enemy's came with his lance in his hand to repulse him; but this

\* By this slave he means Behram Yesaoul, all the subjects of Asiatick princes, being called slaves.

\* Chaoux signifies an aide-de-camp.

Book II.

brave man snatching it from him broke it, and struck him upon the head with his sword. Then the soldiers having forc'd a passage on all sides, enter'd the town, seiz'd the governor and principal inhabitants; and put the greatest part of those who defended it to the sword, as also of the inhabitants, whose wives and children they carry'd away for slaves, after having pillag'd whatsoever they cou'd find.

The next day Timur taking compassion on the slaves, order'd 'em to be set at liberty. He then departed from the camp to Carezem. As he remembered the cowardice of Coutchei Malek, who was afraid to enter the ditch, he commanded him to be bastinado'd, according to the law of Genghiz Can, call'd Yafac<sup>6</sup>. He was then ty'd to the tail of an ass, and sent to Samarcand.

Cayafeddin Tercan<sup>7</sup>, of the race of Cachlic, (who had been made a Tercan by the emperor Genghiz Can) was made a Mangalai by Timur, as also was Coja Yousef Oladgia Itou. The Mangalai are those who command the vanguard. Timur sent 'em before with some other brave men; and when they were arriv'd at Dgioui Corlan, they found Mangheli Coja and Calec with a troop of the enemys.

Our valiant men began the fight, and cary'd the victory as usual: they put the enemys to

<sup>6</sup> These laws are set down at length in *The history of Genghiz Can.* page 79.

<sup>7</sup> A Tercan is a person who for his good services is so highly advanc'd in the emperor's friendship, that whatsoever fault he commits, the emperor takes no notice of it; that is, he is permitted to do any thing the emperor does. Those only are made Tercans whose virtue has been approved, and their services great. See *The history of Genghiz Can*, p. 49.

Tercan is also the name of a herd in the country of Zagatai.

the rout, and pursu'd 'em with so much vigor, that they kill'd the greatest part of those who fled. At length the emperor commanded his army to decamp with expedition, and to make inroads on all sides; which was obey'd so punctually, that all the provinces of the kingdom of Carezem were ruin'd.

Hussein Sofi not being in a condition to defend himself, thought only of securing his person; wherefore he enter'd into the city of Carezem, from whence he sent an express to demand quarter, and to beg pardon for himself. The envoy said it was a sense of his fault that had excited Hussein his master to try by all means to gain the friendship of the officers of the emperor, that so the fire of war might be quench'd. But the traitorous Kei Cosru Catlani sent a private messenger to Hussein, advising him to trust no body, nor make any propositions of peace, but to prepare his army for battel, and march out of the town, because he wou'd join him with his Toman, and abandon Timur. Hussein rely'd on the perfidious Kei Cosru; he march'd out of the city with his troops, follow'd by a great many of the inhabitants in arms; and after having beat the kettle-drums, they rais'd a great cry, call'd Souroun, which is the signal for the battel to begin.

The army was rang'd in order on the banks of the river Caoun, two leagues from the capital of the kingdom. As the greatest part of Timur's troops were gone out in partys to plunder the provinces, there remain'd but few near this prince. Nevertheless he drew up as many as he had in order of battel; and having commanded 'em to beat the kettle-drums and sound the trumpets, he march'd against the enemy.

When



When he came within sight of 'em, he encamp'd on the bank of the Caoun, which separated the two armys. When they were ready to fight, Apatchikelte, Pechai, and Socar Dgiorgatou rush'd with their horses into the water, and cross'd the river, and the enemys attack'd 'em briskly. Cheik Ali Behader, with five others, also cross'd the river: he fell furiously upon Coja Cheikzade, whom he put to flight. Catai Behader and Akitmur Behader did the same; and Eltchi Behader had follow'd their example, if he had not been drown'd in crossing the water.

Selduz, a  
famous  
lord of  
Tartars.

The invincible Timur wou'd also have pass'd the river, if the Cheik Mehemed Beyan Selduz had not oppos'd it, and spoke to him as follows: "Prince, it is now our business to fight; your place is the throne, and it is fit you shou'd take your rest." Immediately the Cheik spurr'd his horse into the water, from whence he got out again unhurt. The prince Aboulmoali, son of the Can of Termed, follow'd him; and these brave men who were skill'd in conquering, attack'd the enemy in several places, and repuls'd 'em even to the gate of the city, which they were constrain'd to enter. This oblig'd the victorious army to encamp round the walls; while the troops who had been making of inroads, return'd laden with spoils. Then the siege was resolv'd to be carry'd on in form, and all the passages of the town were block'd up against the enemy.

Hussein Sofi remain'd some time in the fortress, so full of remorse and chagrin, that finding no remedy for his ill fortune, he dy'd thro' despair.

After his death his brother Ysough Sofi was establish'd in his place.

## C H A P. XI.

*Timur makes peace with Ysough Sofi, who succeeded Hussein; and demands in marriage the princess Canzade for the prince Gehanghir his eldest son.*

**Y**SOUPH : Sofi, not having committed those insolences which his brother Hussein had on the subjects of our prince, found the means of approaching him by supplication and obedience. His brother Ac Sofi, son of Yenghadai, had a daughter by his wife Chukur Bei, the daughter of an Usbec Can. The name of the young princess was Sevin Bei; but she was commonly call'd Canzade, that is, the daughter of a sovereign. The poets say, that since the time of Adam, there has not been born of the race of the Cans a virgin of so great a beauty, and that she had the genius of an angel, and the body of a fairy.

The great Timur believ'd so fine a lady the fittest match for his son Gehanghir \*, and that this marriage wou'd be a certain omen of his future elevation to the sovereign power. This made him receive with pleasure those tokens of respect and submission which Ysough Sofi gave him by his envoys.

Timur consented to the peace, on condition of the marriage. This Can esteem'd him-

---

‡ The same as Joseph. \* That is, conqueror of the world, self

Book II. self fortunate ; and as he accepted it with all  
 ~~~~~  
 to prepare an equipage suitable to the grandeur  
 of this princess, and told him he would send  
 her to his court as soon as the imperial or-  
 ders shou'd be deliver'd him.

The affair being concluded in this manner,  
 hatred and discord were chang'd into peace  
 and perfect friendship. The imperial army  
 march'd home out of the country of Ysough Sofi ;  
 and as soon as Timur arriv'd at the place of his  
 residence, he immediately order'd that Kei Cof-  
 ru Catlani shou'd be apprehended, and brought  
 before the tribunal of criminals, and that the  
 Emirs shou'd demand his prosecution.

This order was executed, his crimes were  
 proved, and his intrigues with Hussein Sofi  
 examin'd into ; and being convicted, he was  
 carry'd bound to Samarcand, and deliver'd into  
 the hands of the officers of the Emir Hussein,  
 who put him to death, to revenge the murder  
 of that prince : and the emperor gave the To-  
 man of the province of Catlan<sup>3</sup> to Mehemed  
 Mireke, son of Chir Behram, a relation of Kei  
 Cofru.

Timur pass'd the winter in the enjoyment of  
 honors and pleasures ; and he particularly em-  
 ploy'd his time in rendring justice, and doing  
 good to his subjects.

---

<sup>3</sup> Between the Gihon and the kingdom of Bedakchan. It  
 has a city of the same name.



C H A P. XII.

*Timur marches a second time into the kingdom of Carezem.*

WE read in the last chapter of the Alcoran, call'd Souret Ennas, that we ought to beseech God to keep us from the conversation of malicious men, as much as from the temptation of the devil; because the company of wicked persons is the principal cause of the corruption of the world, as we see in the following relation.

When Kei Cosru Catlani was apprehended, his son Sultan Mahmoud departed from the court with Abou Ishac, son of Keder Yefouri\*, and Mahmouda Bocari; and retir'd to Yfouph Soffi at Carezem. They spoke publicly in an assembly where he was to promote sedition, corrupt this prince, and make him break the union he had contracted with Timur, which they did with so much cunning, that Yfouph dar'd to violate the treaty he had enter'd into.

\* Yefouri  
a hord of  
Tartars.

In autumn he made inroads into the country of Cat, which he laid waste, and dispers'd the greatest part of the inhabitants; but he did not consider the crime of which he was guilty, viz. breaking treaties so soon.

When the winter was over, in the month of An. Dom. Ramadan of the year 774. which answers to 1372, the year of the Ox, the emperor assembled all the troops of the countrys of Nakcheb, Kech, and without the city of Carschi<sup>†</sup>; and when

<sup>†</sup> Carschi is a city, and Nakcheb is its country; which are often taken for one another; as is also Nefef.

they



they were ready, he march'd towards Carezem; and as soon as he had pass'd the sandy desert, Ysough Sofi was overcome by his fear of Timur's approach. He then repented of the fault he had been guilty of, and sought all means imaginable to obtain pardon. He made use of intercessors to Timur; and at length, after having renew'd the treaty, consented to prepare a pompous and magnificent equipage, suitable to the grandeur of the princess Canzade, who had not the least hand in her uncle's crime; and promis'd to send her forthwith.

Timur, who was of a merciful temper, dispatch'd letters of pardon, and at the same time disbanded his army, and return'd to the city of Samarcand, which was the residence of the imperial throne. After which he gave orders that preparations shou'd be made for the marriage.

---

### C H A P. XIII.

*The famous embassy from Timur to the king of Carezem, to demand the princess Canzade.*

An. Dom.  
1373.

**I**N the month of Chawal in the year 775, which answers to the year of the Leopard, spring being come, Timur sent to Carezem the illustrious prince Yaghia Berlas his relation, and who sprang from Lala son of Caratchar Nevian, and the Emirs Daoud and Ozoun Oladgia Itou. These princes departed with presents worthy of their emperor, to demand the illustrious princess Canzade, and to conduct her to Samarcand.

Ysough

Ysough Sofi, at their arrival, gave 'em a Chap. 13.  
magnificent reception, and paid 'em all ima-  
ginable civilitys; their entry was pompous,  
and he neglected nothing which might shew  
the respect he bore to 'em.

They behav'd themselves in like manner to-  
wards him, with all the kindness which cou'd  
be expected from 'em: they offer'd the presents  
they had brought, which where gold mony, ru-  
bys, musk, amber, velvet, gold and silver brocades,  
filk, China satins, and other curious stuffs; vessels  
of the gold of Catai, adorn'd with precious  
stones, magnificent habits, women slaves, and  
the finest horses.

Ysough Sofi, after having made a magnificent  
feast, and treated the ambassadors like emper-  
ors, accompany'd Canzade a great part of the  
way, and sent her to Timur with an atten-  
dance worthy the greatest princess. He pre-  
sented her for her portion a very rich crown, and  
a throne of gold, bracelets, ear-rings, necklaces,  
girdles of gold, precious stones, several rings,  
boxes and coffers full of emeralds, rubys, pearls,  
clothes and furniture in boxes, with locks of  
gold; besides several magnificent beds, cano-  
pys, pavilions, tents with one and many pil-  
lars; and also with furniture of several sorts,  
sufficient to fill many caravans.

The ambassador sent an exprefs post to Sa-  
marcand, to let the emperor know they were  
at some distance from the capital; who being  
inform'd of it, resolv'd to give a magnificent  
reception to Canzade. For this reason he or-  
der'd Corrica Catoun, wife of Caidu Can, and  
all the other ladys, as well as the princes and  
Emirs, to receive her with all the honors usual  
on the like occasion, and particularly to wait  
on her at her entry.

On this order all the great lords went to meet her, and shew'd an extraordinary joy, sprinkling on her head abundance of gold and precious stones.

The air was fill'd with the most odoriferous smells, and the ways cover'd with carpets and brocades. The Cherifs, Cadis, doctors or Moullas, and the Imams, with all the principal officers of the empire, went to pay their devoirs to her, while every one pray'd to God for her prosperity. Then they made their compliments, according to the orders given 'em; and every day there were sumptuous feasts and fresh marks of magnificence.

She was every where entertain'd with plays, and had presents made her of perfumes: the ground was cover'd with the most beautiful flowers; and as the people were fill'd with pleasure, because of the peace and security they enjoy'd from the justice and clemency of the emperor, all imaginable grandeur and magnificence appear'd among 'em in token of the joy they receiv'd from the presence of so glorious a princess. But this scene of pleasures and grandeur shone with brighter lustre in Samarcand than in any other place, this imperial city being adorn'd with all imaginable pomp; in so much that every thing there was surprising, and melancholy was entirely banish'd thence, as well as from all the other parts of the empire.

Plays and diversions reign'd thro' all the city; every place partook of these pleasures, and musick charm'd the ears of all.

The princess's bed, as beautiful as that of Caidasa<sup>e</sup>, the queen of the Amazons, was en-

<sup>e</sup> She resided at Berdaa, capital of the kingdom of Aran, sixty two leagues distant from Teflis, capital of Georgia.

rich'd with celestial graces and blessings. In Chap. 13.  
fine, the magnificence of this happy entry rais'd  
the city to so great a pitch of glory, that it caus'd  
a jealousy where the queen Balkize<sup>e</sup> had reign'd.

---

*The marriage of the prince Gebanghir with  
the princess Sevin Bei, surnam'd Canzade.*

THE officers of the emperor's household began to make all necessary preparations for solemnizing the nuptials. An infinite number of canopys, tents, pavilions, curtains, carpets, magnificent beds were got ready; a particular pavilion was erected for the emperor, the favorites and great lords, the cieling of which, in form of a cupola, appear'd like a heaven full of shining stars; the outside seem'd cover'd with gold, and the inside was enrich'd with precious stones: the ring and ball at top were made of amber, and surrounded with lesser balls of the same; and the room wherein the marriage was to be consummated, was parted by a curtain of gold brocade.

The emperor sat on a rich throne, plac'd in the imperial tent, and was so magnificently dress'd that he resembled the sun. Several kings, princes, and Emirs of the army came to the porte<sup>7</sup>, to partake of the general joy; and every one indulg'd himself in pleasures.

The emperor Timur appear'd further magnificent by his great liberality. He had order'd

---

<sup>7</sup> Porte in the oriental language signifies court.

<sup>e</sup> The name of the queen of Saba, who came to visit Solomon.



many apartments to be fill'd with curious pieces of gold, precious stones, vests, and other apparel: he made so great presents to all the court, that there was every day one of these apartments empty'd.

In the midst of all this pomp and pleasure the emperor commanded the most learned astrologers and expert philosophers to assemble together, and examine the state of the heavens. They punctually executed this order; and after having observ'd all the circumstances, and made choice of the happy moment, in a private apartment in presence of the great lords of the kingdom, they ty'd the nuptial knot\*, and got ready the contract of marriage between the prince and the Mirza Gehanghir, according to the custom of the Mahometans; then they saluted the marry'd couple, and sprinkled over their heads abundance of pearls and precious stones: and when night was come, which resembled the night of Cadre<sup>o</sup>, and which was the most considerable and glorious that had happen'd for an hundred years before; the prince and princess retir'd into the secret chamber, where the marriage was happily consummated.

An. Dom. 1373. This great feast was celebrated in the year of the Hegira 775.

Mog. The  
Leopard.

---

\* The night of Cadre is that in which (as the Mahometans imagine) God sent to Mahomet the first chapter of the Alcoran by the angel Gabriel.

## C H A P. XIV.

*Timur marches a third time into the country  
of the Getes.*

ON the first day of the month of Chaban, in the year of the Hegira 776, Timur march'd at the head of his army for Gete. When he was encamp'd at Rebat Catan, it was exceedingly cold; the sun disappear'd, and so much rain and snow fell, that the tempestuous weather made the soldiers unfit for service, so that they cou'd take no care of their horses, their own lives being in danger. This occasion'd the death of many of the men, as well as of the horses.

Timur sensibly afflicted at this misfortune, order'd his army to decamp from Rebat, and return to Samarcand, where he staid two months, till the violence of the cold was abated.

In the month of Chawal, which was the beginning of the year of the Hare, he resolv'd to bring his army into the field, and march against the Getes.

He sent his son Mirza Gehanghir at the head of the vanguard, accompany'd by the Cheik Mehemed Beyan Selduz, who command'd the Squadron of the prince's guard, and by Adelchah son of Behram Gelair, to whom he had given the hord of Gelair after his father's death.

When they had got beyond Seiram, and were arriv'd at Jaroun<sup>1</sup>, they seiz'd on a man whom

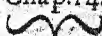
<sup>1</sup> A town of Gete.

they sent to Timur to be examin'd. They ask'd him where Camareddin, the prince of the hord of Ouglat, was. He told 'em he had rais'd an army, and was encamp'd in a place nam'd Gheuk Toupa, or the blue hill, where he waited for Hadgi Bei, not at all expecting Timur's army. Upon which the prince immediately order'd the vanguard to hasten their march thither, resolving himself to follow with all expedition.

\* The basin of the Gouris.

Camareddin, on advice of it, retir'd with his troops into an inaccessible place, thinking himself not safe where he was encamp'd. The place he had retir'd to was call'd Birkei Gouri<sup>\*</sup>, where are three defiles of mountains extremely steep, and three great rapid rivers. Camareddin cross'd two of the defiles with his army, and encamp'd in the third, after having made entrenchments and barricadoes in the way.

But the prince Gehanghir, having an army compos'd of men who understood the art of war, resolutely march'd at their head, and at the sound of kettle-drums attack'd the enemy. When a great many of these unfortunate men were slain with arrows, they fell upon the rest sword in hand, till night came on, when they fled. The next morning our brave men not finding any of the Getes in the camp, vigorously pursu'd 'em; and at sun-rise Timur coming up with the rest of the army, sent the Emirs Daoud, Hussein, and Outchcara Behader, to endeavor to overtake 'em. These captains swam along the stream of the river Abeile; but Hussein fell into the water, and was drown'd. When the others were got upon the enemys lands, they pillag'd their goods, pardon'd

don'd the cantons which submitted, took away their arms, and sent <sup>Chap. 14.</sup>  them to Samarcand.

Timur went to Baitac, with design to destroy the enemys, and sent the Mirza his son with a great army to give Camareddin battel, and seize on his person. The prince departed, according to order, at the head of his troops, and ruin'd the cantons of the Getes which were in Outch Ferman. They found Camareddin in the mountains, pursu'd him, drove him out of his country, and made him abandon his troops; they ravag'd all those parts, raz'd his palaces, and among other ladys, seiz'd on the wife of prince Chamseddin<sup>2</sup>, nam'd Bouian Aga, and on his daughter Dilchadaga. Gehanghir sent an expresse to inform the emperor his father of it, who had staid fifty three days at Baitac.

When he receiv'd this news, he departed from the camp, and ascended a mountain call'd Cara Casmac, where Gehanghir, at his arrival, kiss'd the emperor's feet, and presented him with carpets, horses, and a great quantity of other booty; after which he procur'd for the princess Dilchadaga the honor of saluting the emperor.

Timur quitted this camp, went to Atbachi, and thence to the country of Arpaiazi, where he staid some days to refresh himself. Mobarckchah Mecrit<sup>3</sup>, who commanded a thousand men in this country, and was one of Timur's oldest friends, testify'd his respect so much by diversions and feasts, that he entirely gain'd

---

<sup>2</sup> Or rather Camareddin, king of the Geres or Moguls.

<sup>3</sup> Mecrit was one of the most antient nations of the Moguls in Genghiz Can's time.



Book II. the heart of this prince; and so truly attach'd himself to Timur's interest, that he gave to his son Codadad, as a particular favor, the government of Salar Aglen and of Hussein, who dy'd this campaign.

---

## C H A P. XV.

*Timur's marriage with the princess Dilchadaga, daughter of Camareddin king of the Getes. Timur is in danger of losing his life by a conspiracy which he narrowly escap'd.*

**T**IMUR, excited by a verse of the Alcoran, wherein God permits men to marry four wives, resolv'd to espouse the princess Dilchadaga.

The officers of the court prepar'd entertainments and other diversions, that nothing might be wanting in the feast. Wine, concerts of musick, and whatever might contribute to the heightning the pleasure of so signal and happy an action, according to the exact observation of astrologers, were in abundance at the camp. There was a numerous assembly; and at length this great monarch, following the custom of his ancestors, took for his wife this charming and virtuous princess.

The time of rejoicing being ended, he decamp'd; having march'd by Yassi Daban, he went to encamp at Uzkunt, whither the princess Corluc Turcan Aga, Timur's eldest sister, came. She departed from Samarcand, accompany'd by the princes, Emirs and officers of her household: she had the honor to salute the em-

emperor, and make her presents to him: and then she partook of the diversions of the court. *Chap. 15.*

Adelchah son of Behram Gelair, pretending himself a faithful servant to the prince, gave him a splendid entertainment, presented him with some fine horses, and render'd him all imaginable civilitys. But these were only testimonys of a feign'd friendship; for he had another design in his heart, which was to have surpriz'd Timur during the solemnity of the feast: but this prince, who was under the divine protection, having observ'd many marks of his ill-will, found out the treason by the motions of the conspirators. The strong conjectures he had of it, caus'd him to leave the assembly, and take horse to return to the camp.

Mehemed Beyan Selduz<sup>s</sup>, Adelchah Gelair, and Turcan Erlat, had resolv'd to seize on his person; but as they cou'd find no opportunity of doing it, his good fortune turn'd the hate they bore him into grief and despair: and this monarch, by God's assistance, return'd in perfect health to his capital city.

Then he gave leave to the troops to retire to their quarters; and pass'd the winter at Zendgir Serai<sup>s</sup>, two leagues west from Carschi.

During this winter, Adelchah and the other conspirators having a sense of their fault, came to court, and confess'd their crime. Timur having learnt the circumstances, politickly pretended to have known nothing of it, and at the same time highly caress'd Adelchah.

---

<sup>s</sup> The familys of Selduz, Gelair, and Erlat, were the chief among the Moguls in Genghiz Can's time.

<sup>s</sup> A castle and pleasure-house.

Book II.

Winter being past, the troops were commanded to get together, in order, as was pretended, to make war on Carezem. The princes and Emirs readily march'd out of all the provinces; and as soon as they were arriv'd at the imperial city, Timur order'd that the Cheik Mehemed Beyan Selduz shou'd be apprehended and prosecuted.

Death of  
Mehemed  
Beyan Sel-  
duz.

And as at his examination his crime was fully prov'd, he was put into the hands of Herimulc Selduz his relation, whose brother he had unjustly slain; and this man reveng'd himself upon him, by putting him to death.

Ali Dervich and Mehemed Dervich, being equally guilty, were also put do death; and Timur gave the government of the Toman of Selduz, to the brave Akitmur Behader.

## C H A P. XVI.

*Timur marches a third time to Carezem, and returns on the revolt of Sar Bouga and Adelchah.*

An. Dom.  
1375.

I N the beginning of the spring of the year of the Hegira 777, which answers to that of the crocodile, Timur's good fortune, and his wise conduct in foreseeing the success of affairs, caus'd him to resolve on a journey to Carezem, his valor making him to prefer the fatigues of war before quiet and repose. He left the Emir Acbouga governor of Samarcand, and sent into the country of Gete the Emirs Sar Bouga, Adelchah Gelair, Catai Behader, Eltchi Bouga, and other commanders of thousands, with thirty thousand horse; and enjoin'd them to use all their efforts and care in search of Camareddin, with

with orders to put him to death wherever they Chap. 16.  
shou'd find him.

On the other hand, he march'd with the imperial standard and a great army towards Carezem : being in a place call'd Sepaye, situate on the bank of the Gihon, he saw Turcan Erlat, who came from the other side of this river at the head of his troops, and seem'd willing to join our camp ; but having some apprehension and foresight of his death, he immediately return'd to his hord near Corzouan. Timur order'd a captain nam'd Poulad to pursue him with some troops, and to march day and night ; who having pass'd by Andeoud, overtook him at Fariab ' on the bank of the Sihon. Turcan and his brother Turmich wou'd not give ground, but resisted 'em. Our men receiv'd 'em with bravery, and both sides fought like lions ; but at length the enemys gave way, were defeated, and constrain'd to fly. The victorious army pursu'd 'em ; Poulad alone overtook Turcan, who finding his horse tir'd, got off, and struck down that of his enemy with the but-end of an arrow, and let fly another before Poulad was able to get up, but it went thro his cap without wounding him. Poulad rush'd on him with violence, so that they struggled a long time, till at length Poulad having slung Turcan on the ground, cut off his head, crying out, *Long live Timur* ; and he return'd with great joy. Aman Serbedal, who had been sent after Turmich the brother of Turcan, also seiz'd on him and slew him : So the heads of these two brothers were laid at the foot of the throne.

---

! The same town as Otrar.



Among the Ēmirs whom Timur had sent to Gete, Sar Bouga and Adelchah, finding the country not in a condition to resist them, form'd a design to revolt, and conspir'd with Catai Behader, Eltchi Bouga, and Hamdi, whom Timur had left governor of Andecan<sup>2</sup>. They got together their hords of Gelair and Capchac, and march'd towards Samarcand, which they besieg'd; but the inhabitants defended themselves so valiantly with their arrows and darts, that they were oblig'd to raise the siege. Acbouga governor of the place wrote to Timur, who had already march'd by the town of Cat, concerning the siege: tho he was arriv'd at Khas when he receiv'd the news, he immediately return'd, and having given the command of the vanguard to his son the Mirza Gehanghir, whom he order'd to march'd with all expedition, he follow'd him with the rest of the army.


As soon as he was come to Bocara, he rang'd all the troops in order of battel, and went to encamp at Rebat Malek. Mirza Gehanghir overtook the enemy in a place call'd Kermina: each party put their troops in order, kettle-drums were heard on all sides, and the fight began. After a brave engagement the prince was victorious; the enemy run away in disorder: the confederates retir'd into the desarts of Capchac, and fled for refuge to<sup>3</sup> Ourous Can; and the officers who escap'd out of the battel list'd themselves in his service.

Timur after this victory return'd to Samarcand, and divided the hord of Gelair, with his lands

---

<sup>2</sup> A town of Zagatai on the frontiers of Turkestan, long, 103. lat. 43.

<sup>3</sup> Emperor of Capchac, descended from Touthi Can, son of Genghiz Can.

and demesns, among the princes who remain'd Chap. 17.  
faithful to him; and made the prince Omar   
Cheik his second son governor of Andecan.

Sar Bouga and Adelchah remain'd in the service of Ourous Can; but the spirit of rebellion again excited 'em. They laid hold on an opportunity, while Ourous Can was gone to a pleasure-house, to fly from his court: and thro their natural ingratitude, slew Ourchibi lieutenant of this Can, and then came to the country of Gete to Camareddin, whom they persuaded to join 'em in making war upon Timur.

C H A P. XVII.

*Timur's fourth expedition to the kingdom of the Getes.*

WHEN Sar Bouga and Adelchah had met with Camareddin, they did not cease to inflame him against Timur: And, having persuaded him to join 'em, he brought an army into the field, and march'd to the country of Andecan, where the Hezare of Coudac abandon'd prince Omar Cheik, and came over to the enemy. Omar Cheik fortify'd himself in the mountains, and sent a man nam'd Dachmend to the emperor, to inform him that the enemy with a great army had entirely ruin'd Andecan; and moreover he gave him an account of all that had happen'd. This news so incens'd Timur, that he immediately march'd towards Gete; of which Camareddin having advice, retir'd from the place he was in, and commanded his household and hord to leave Atbachi, whilst he remain'd in ambuscade with four thousand horse.

Timur

Book II. Timur coming to that place, ignorant of the snare Camareddin had laid, sent his Emirs with all the army in pursuit of the enemys. Five thousand of the most valiant men were conducted by the Emirs Muaid, Catai Behader, and Cheik Ali Behader, who consulted how they shou'd proceed in the destruction of the enemys, and concluded only to perform actions of bravery. Upon which they march'd; and so there remain'd no more than two hundred men with the emperor.

Camareddin being inform'd of this, laid hold on the opportunity, and briskly fall'y'd out of the ambuscade with his four thousand men sword in hand, and fell upon Timur; but Timur remembering the passage of the Alcoran, *How often have few troops vanquisb'd great armies thro the assistance of God?* was neither troubled nor afraid; but on the contrary encourag'd his soldiers by this short speech: "Victory is the gift of God, and a multitude of soldiers don't always gain the advantage: my friends, we must fight like brave men; the least cowardice on our side will make us lose the day, for in the present conjuncture we are oblig'd to risque every thing."

He had no sooner ended his speech, than he spur'd his horse against the enemys; he enter'd into the field of batrel, and on every side laid about him with his sword and battle-ax, turning himself wherever occasion presented; every attack he overthrew those who oppos'd him, and spilt abundance of blood: he penetrated even into the heart of the army. Thus this valiant emperor, with his lance, war-club, sabre and net, defeated many of the enemys, and led captive their generals.

In short, this prince, being oblig'd to expose his person, behav'd himself with so much bravery, that nothing but the divine assistance cou'd excite such courage in any man. His soldiers bravely seconded him, and in that battel did all that cou'd be expected from the consummate valor of the most dauntless heroes: in fine, notwithstanding their small number, they defeated four thousand valiant men, who were fill'd with a desire of revenge; which cou'd not have been accomplish'd by human strength alone, but by God himself, who was pleas'd to give the victory to this great prince.

Chap. 17.

Timur imagin'd one night in a dream he saw the face of Cheik Burhaneddin Clitch, in one of those visions which are esteem'd prophetic, and are of forty six kinds. He dreamt, that being in the presence of this holy man, with great respect he humbly beg'd of him to pray to God for his dear son the Mirza Gehanghir, whom he had left sick: and the Cheik answer'd him, *Be with God*; but spake nothing to him concerning his son. When he awoke he knew that the prince was not so well as he wish'd; wherefore he was so disquieted that he order'd his secretary of state, nam'd Poul Coteluc to depart with all haste from Sengghul to bring him word how he was. When this man was departed, Timur had another strange dream relating to his son, which very much increas'd his melancholy: he therefore said to the Emirs and officers, "I believe I must be entirely parted from my son, hide not from me the condition he is in." They all fell on their knees, and swore they knew nothing concerning him.

Prophetic  
visions of  
46 sorts,  
according  
to the Ma-  
hometans.

In the mean time he decamp'd, and met Camareddin at Senghezigadge; gave him battel, and the latter was again defeated and constrain'd



Book II.

strain'd to fly. The Emir Outchcara pursu'd him closely, and after a long pursuit oblig'd him to return immediately with eight men only. Being surrounded by many of our soldiers, his horse was kill'd by their arrows, and himself wounded in divers places, insomuch that he cou'd scarcely get away on foot. Poulad also in the fight had an arrow shot into his hand; and as in their return a place was by chance set on fire, this lord fatigu'd himself so much in endeavouring to extinguish it, that the sickness occasion'd by his wound encreasing, procur'd his death.

## C H A P. XVIII.

*The death of Mirza Gehanghir, Timur's eldest son.*

**T**IMUR, being return'd from Aracom, and having cross'd the Sihon, that is, the Jaxartes, arriv'd at his imperial city of Samarcand, where all the great lords of the empire, the Cheriffs and others, were cloth'd in black and blue garments; they wept bitterly, cover'd their heads with dust in token of sorrow, beat their breasts, and rent themselves according to custom, and then went to meet the emperor in great haste.

All the inhabitants with their heads uncover'd, and with sackcloth and black felt about their necks, and their eyes bedew'd with tears, came out of the city, filling the air with crys and lamentations. "What a pity is it, say they, that the pious and just conqueror Gehanghir, appear'd only as a rose, which is blown away by the wind! What pity is it that death hath

†

" thus

“ thus cast into the grave this prince, who Chap. 18.  
“ cou’d so easily bring his desigus to perfec-  
“ tion !”

As soon as Timur arriv’d, and observ’d the general consternation, he no longer doubted of the death of his son, which his imagination had already represented to him.

Every thing then became melancholy and disagreeable to him, and his cheeks were almost always bath’d in tears; he cloth’d himself with mourning, and his life became uneasy to him. The whole kingdom, which us’d to be overjoy’d at the arrival of this great emperor, was turn’d into a place of sorrow and weeping.

All the army, cloth’d in black and blue, sat down in token of their grief; the greatest lords cover’d their heads with dust, their eyes flow’d, if one may so say, with tears of blood, and their hearts were pierc’d with the deepest grief.

Tho the emperor was affected in an extraordinary manner with the loss of his son; yet while he knew that the destruction of all beings was a necessary evil, that there was no man of eternal duration, and that every thing which belong’d to God must return to him again, he found some consolation in his grief, and at the same time perform’d several acts of piety for the repose of his son’s soul, as endowments and publick works: he prepar’d, as usual, funeral repasts and banquets, in which the poor were treated; and he distributed other alms among ’em.

The body of the deceas’d prince was carry’d to Kech, where he was bury’d, and a magnificent mausoleum erected for him. He lived twenty years, and left two sons, one of whom was call’d the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, born  
of

Book II. of the princess Canzade; and the other, the  
 ~~~~~ Mirza Pir Mehemed son of the princess Bacti-  
 mulki Aga, daughter of Elias Yefouri, born forty  
 days after the death of the prince Gehanghir,  
 An. Dom. which happen'd in the year of the Hegira 777,  
 1375. which answers to the year of the Crocodile.

Seifeddin Berlas had no sooner heard of this  
 misfortune, than he became averse to all world-  
 ly things, and besought the emperor to permit  
 him to pass the remainder of his life at Hud-  
 geaz\*, in the sacred place of Mecca.

## C H A P. XIX.

*Timur's fifth expedition against the Getes.*

THE emperor was so afflicted at the death  
 of his son, that he laid aside all thoughts  
 of public affairs; but the principal Emirs and  
 princes of the blood assembled before the throne,  
 and kiss'd the ground. They represented to  
 him, that as the wisdom of God had made  
 the good order of the world dependent on the  
 absolute power he had given to sovereigns,  
 to maintain their people in peace; so if his  
 great heart was resolv'd to please the Divine-  
 being, he cou'd think on no better means of do-  
 ing it, than by rendring justice to his subjects,  
 since the wisest of men, Mahomet, hath said,  
 "That he prefer'd the fruits of one hour em-  
 ploy'd in rendring justice, to sixty or seventy  
 years spent in divine worship."

\* A province of Arabia.

Timur gave serious attention to what these princes said, being fully persuaded that it flow'd from a sincere affection to him; he therefore began to apply himself to the affairs of the empire, and immediately order'd the army to get ready to march.

Chap. 19.  


At the same time advice was brought that Adelchah Gelair was in the mountains of Caratchuc, accompany'd with few persons: which caus'd Timur to send Berat Coja Kulkeltach, and Eltchi Bouga, with fifteen horse only, to endeavor to find him. They departed from Samarcand in the evening, and continu'd their march every night till they arriv'd at the town of Otrar; where they chose the fittest men to go into the mountain in search of this rebel, whom they found in a place nam'd Ac-souma, where they seiz'd on him, and put him to death according to law.

Death of  
Adelchah  
Gelair.


Ac-souma is a tower built on the top of the mount Caradgic, a place design'd for a guard to the country, because one may observe from thence what is done in the plains of Capchac.

Sar Bouga, who had also been disobedient and revolted, repented of his faults, and return'd to court after two years absence. The emperor pardon'd him, and gave him the government of his own people, that is, the hord of Gelair.

Soon after Mirza Omar Cheik, Emir Ac-bouga, Catai Behader, and the other Emirs receiv'd orders to march against Camareddin, and to use all their efforts to subdue him. These Emirs departed from court, and made

<sup>s</sup> Formerly call'd Farab, upon the Sihon, long. 98 <sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>. lat. 44. a frontier town between Zagatai and Capchac.



Book II.  such haste that they met him at the borders of the country of Couratou<sup>6</sup>, where they gave him battel, and struck such terror into his troops, that they fled in disorder, after the example of their general; and soon after the victorious army return'd laden with spoils and slaves, as usual.

---

## C H A P. XX.

*Timur's fifth expedition to the country of the Getes against Camareddin. Tocatnich Aglen, descended from Touschi, son of Genghiz Can, arrives at court, and puts himself under the protection of Timur.*

**T**HE troops were no sooner upon their return, than Timur resolv'd to march in person into that country<sup>7</sup>, the same year; and for this purpose Mehemed Bei, son of the Emir Moussa, a confident of the emperor, gave the command of the vanguard of the army to the Emir Abbas and Akitmur Behader, and sent 'em away according to the prince's orders.

These captains march'd day and night, and were so fortunate as to come up with Camareddin at Bougam Asigheul, where they put him to flight after a furious battel, and then ravag'd his country, and reduc'd his subjects to

---

<sup>6</sup> In the country of the Getes.

<sup>7</sup> Capchac, call'd by the Europeans the Grand Tartary, which contains all the country situate between lesser or Crim Tartary and Turkestan. This empire was given to Touschi Can, by his father Genghiz Can the conqueror of it, as his share.

obedience, and Timur himself afterwards pursued him as far as Coutchar.

At this place the emperor had advice that Tocatmich Aglen, jealous of Qurous Can, had withdrawn himself from under his protection, and was coming over to him. Timur gave orders to Tounen Timur Uzbek\*, to take care of the ceremonies of his entry, to go and meet him, and load him with all the honors and caresses imaginable: which was punctually executed.

Timur then march'd towards Oinagon, in order to return home: from thence he came to Uzkunt†; and continu'd his march towards his capital, where at length he fortunately arriv'd.

Tounen Timur brought thither Tocatmich Aglen, who was presented to Timur by the principal lords of his court. He shew'd abundance of joy at his return, and did not forget any of the ceremonies and honors which a prince of his merit and birth cou'd expect; for after having entertain'd him magnificently with all sorts of diversions, he gave him, as well as his officers, so many presents, that it wou'd be difficult to number 'em. They consisted of gold, precious stones, arms, habits, magnificent belts, rich stuffs, and a great deal of furniture, horses, camels, tents and pavilions, kettle-drums, standards, mares and slaves; and then he did him the honor of calling him his son.

---

\* Uzbek a hord of Tartars.

† A town on the Sihon, frontier between Turkestan and Zagarai, long. 102  $\frac{1}{2}$ . lat. 44. call'd in the Arabian of Nubia, Adarcand and Urkent.

CHAP. XXI.

*Timur gives Tocatmich Aglen the principalities of Otrar and Sabran; and assists him in making himself master of the empire of Capchac, which he claim'd as his right; tho Ourous Can, descended from Genghiz Can, was in possession of it.*

THE generous emperor gave the government of Sabran, Otrar, and Saganac, Seiram, Serai, and other towns of the empire of Capchac, to prince Tocatmich, who was no sooner establish'd there than Cotluc Bouga, son of Ourous Can, emperor of that country, brought an army into the field against him. The desire which these princes had for fighting, was the reason that the armys were not long before they came to blows, and fought as if they were resolv'd to conquer or die.

Death of  
Cotluc  
Bouga.  
Defeat of  
Tocatmich  
Aglen.

Cotluc Bouga was kill'd by an arrow in the fight, nevertheless Tocatmich Aglen was defeated; the enemys plunder'd his country, and constrain'd him to quit his government, and to retire towards Timur, who receiv'd him with greater honor than at first, and after having order'd a new equipage to be made for him, and given him fresh troops, sent him away.

When Toucia Caya, eldest son of Ourous Can, heard that this prince was on his return

<sup>1</sup> Ourous Can gave the name to all Russia, of which he was sovereign.

to Sabran, he join'd many other princes of the race of Tauschi \* Can, son of Genghiz Can, as also Ali Bei, and several Emirs, who resolv'd to revenge the death of Cortuc Bouga on Tocatnich Aglen: the army they brought into the field was very numerous, and compar'd to pismires and grasshoppers. In short, when Tocatnich Aglen had rang'd his army in order of battel in view of the enemy, the fight began, and the troops of this prince were put to flight: he himself fled to the banks of the river Sihon, where he threw himself into the water to save himself. He was pursu'd by Cazandgi Behader, who let fly an arrow wherewith he wounded his hand. When he had cross'd the river, he alone enter'd into a wood naked and wounded, and cast himself on the ground to get some rest: but he was soon reliev'd by Aidecou Berlas, an old expert captain, whom Timur had sent to give him his advice in the enterprise he was carrying on, and to instruct him how to govern his own country.

Chap. 21.  
Tocatnich Aglen, a second time defeated.

The night oblig'd this captain also to enter the wood: he there heard a doleful voice, which very much affected him: he sought for the person who was lamenting; and at length found Tocatnich naked and wounded, who was recover'd from a swoon he had a little before fall'n into. After he had got off his horse, he comforted him as well as he was able; told him how much he was concern'd for his misfortune, and gave him somewhat to eat and drink, as also a garment, such a one as scouts commonly carry, to serve on occasion in a jour-

\* Some authors call him Dgioudgi.



Book II. ny: he then took all possible care of him, and conducted him to Timur, who was encamp'd without Bocara when they arriv'd.

When Timur knew the condition Tocatmich was reduc'd to, he receiv'd him with all the clemency which so great an emperor was capable of shewing: and order'd another equipage to be made for him, as magnificent as either of the former.

In the mean while an Emir of the country of Touchi, nam'd Aidecou, of the herd of Mangout, came from the court of Ourous Can to that of Timur, and brought advice that this prince had drawn his troops into the field, and was marching against the invincible emperor, and sought every where for Tocatmich. About this time also Kepec Mangout and Touloudgian came to court in quality of ambassadors from Ourous Can, and made an harangue to the emperor, the substance whereof was as follows:

"Tocatmich has kill'd my son, and is fled for refuge to you: you ought to deliver up this prince, who is my enemy; if you refuse to do it, I declare war against you, and there remains nothing for us to do but to meet in the field of battel."

Timur made this answer: "Tocatmich has put himself under my protection, and I will defend him. Return to Ourous Can, and tell him, that I not only accept his challenge, but my preparations are already begun, and my valiant soldiers have no other employ than the trade of war; they are lions, who instead of living in forests, have their residence in camps and armies."

C H A P. XXII.

*Preparations for war. Timur brings an army into the field against Ourous Can, emperor of Capchat and Grand Russia.*

AS soon as the emperor Timur had dismissed the ambassadors of Ourous Can, he order'd the Emir Ali to make preparations for war, and to bring an army into the field; and the Emir Yakou to take care of the government of the royal city of Samarcand, during his absence.

War between the empires of Touchi and Zagatai.

The troops of the empire of Zagatai were soon got together, and Timur at their head, march'd to attack Ourous Can, towards the end of the same year of the Crocodile. They cross'd the Sihon, and encamp'd in the vast plain of Otrar.

Ourous Can having assembled all the troops of the empire of Touchi, march'd to Saganac, twenty four leagues distant from Otrar. These vast armies being in sight, were ready to make great havock, when a prodigious cloud overshadow'd 'em, and shower'd down a prodigious quantity of rain and snow, which was follow'd with so excessive a cold, that the limbs of the men and beasts lost all motion. The weather continu'd thus almost three months, during which time the armies were in view, and neither capable of action.

Timur cou'd not quell the impetuosity of his courage; he was desirous to be in action, and commanded Catai Behader and Mehemed Sultan Chah, who were retir'd from the court

Book II. of the prince of Herat, and were attach'd to him, to march with all haste to attack the enemy during the night. Following this order, they took five hundred men with 'em to make inroads. They met Timur Melik Aglen, son of Ourous Can, with about three thousand horse. This rencounter happen'd late at night; but morning approaching, the battel began. Fear and valor had each of 'em a great share in this action, and the victory was a long time in suspense; but at length the troops of Timur gain'd it, as they were accusom'd; and the enemy was put to the rout. Eltchi Bouga was wounded in the hand, and the prince Timur Melik Aglen in the foot by an arrow; and tho Yarek Timur and Catai Behader were both slain, the victorious troops return'd to the camp in triumph.

Defeat of  
the troops  
of Ourous  
Can.

Mehemed Sultan Chah had orders from the emperor to depart, that he might gain intelligence of the enemys, which he did, and brought to Timur a man whom he had seiz'd: the Emir Moubacher, who had receiv'd the like order, also brought another he had taken. Timur learnt from both of 'em, that the enemy had sent two of their bravest men, one nam'd Olough<sup>s</sup> Satkin, and the other Kutchuk<sup>s</sup> Satkin, with a hundred horse, to learn news of the state of our army. They were by chance met by Akitmur Behader and Alahdad, who came from Otrar, where they had distributed the victuals for the army. Akitmur, excited by the good fortune which never abandon'd the great Timur, march'd vigorously against 'em,

---

<sup>s</sup> Olough signifys eldest, and Kutchuk youngest.

and in the mean while to deceive them, made use of a warlike stratagem: he pretended to fly; and this motion of our men gave fresh courage to the enemy, who were already advanc'd, but Akitmur soon after returning to the charge with his men, beat back their soldiers, who thought themselves conquerors, and entirely broke their ranks. Those who were not slain, fled, and hid themselves in pits and caverns of water. Kepektchi Wtchi, Akitmur's nephew, kill'd the young Satkin; and Indouchah seiz'd the eldest, whom he brought to Timur, who, for his services distinguish'd Indouchah from the other captains by particular favors. They had then advice that Ourous Can, despairing of his projects, was return'd home, and had left Karakesel in his place; which oblig'd Timur to march in person against the enemy; but as he found that Karakesel was also retir'd with his troops, he finish'd the campaign, and return'd with his army to his camp near the city of Kech, where he staid seven days.

---

### C H A P. XXIII.

*Timur's irruption into the country of Ourous Can: Tocatmich Aglen plac'd on the throne of the empire of Capchac, otherwise call'd the empire of Touchi Can.*

**A**S soon as the season wou'd permit the army to be brought into the field, the invincible Timur took horse to make war on Ourous Can. He gave the conduct of his vanguard to Tocatmich, who likewise serv'd as a guide, and march'd day and night with so much expedition



Book II. dition, that in fifteen days and nights they arriv'd at Geiran Camich \* a town of Capchac, \* That is, the inhabitants of which he found asleep, having no notice of the march of our army. The town was pillag'd, and the soldiers brought away a great number of horses, camels, sheep and slaves; and, what was a further mark of Timur's good fortune, before this action Ourous Can'died, as soon after did Tousta Caya his eldest son.

Death of  
Ourous  
Can, and  
his son  
Tousta  
Caya, in  
1376.

Timur immediately furnish'd Tocatmich Aglen with every thing requisite for government; and establish'd him sovereign in Capchac and the rest of the empire of Touchi: and after having prepar'd him an equipage worthy of an emperor, he left him in that kingdom. He also made him a present of the famous spotted horse named Conc Aglen, a horse of the finest metal and spirit, and which he greatly esteem'd for his extraordinary swiftness. And on making this present, he thus address'd him:

Elogium  
on Timur's  
favorite  
horse.

" This horse will serve you on several occasions: for you may easily overtake the enemy when you pursue him; and no one will be able to overtake you if you are oblig'd to fly."

After this expedition, the emperor resolv'd to return to Samarcand; whereupon he left Capchac, and fortunately arriv'd at the heart of his empire, in the beginning of the year of the Serpent, and of the Hegira 778.

An. Dom.  
1376.

But the affairs of Capchac did not long continue so quiet as he had left 'em; for soon after his return, he receiv'd advice that Timur Melik Aglen, son of Ourous Can, having fix'd himself on the throne of Touchi, had brought a powerful army into the field to make war on Tocatmich: in short, their armys came in view, and after several skirmishes, Tocatmich was again

Timur Melik ascends the throne of Touchi, and defeats Tocatmich.

again intirely vanquish'd. Nevertheless, he Chap. 24.  
sav'd himself from all dangers, by means of the  
horse the emperor had presented him; yet all  
his troops were dispers'd, and he alone came to  
the court.

Timur, thro his wonted goodness, again re-  
cruited his losses, and in the end of the year  
778 sent him back to Saganac, guarded by sever- An. Dom.  
al great Emirs, among whom were Toumen 1376.  
Timur Uzbek, and his son Balti Coja, Ozun-  
kitmur, Cayafeddin Tercan, and Benki Court-  
chin, whom he order'd to re-establish him on the  
throne of the Cans.

These princes obey'd, and plac'd Tocatmich  
Aglen upon the throne in the city of Saganac,  
with all the ceremonys observ'd at the corona-  
tion of Cans; and according to custom they  
sprinkled upon him gold and precious stones.

## C H A P. XXIV.

*The birth of prince Charoc, son and heir to the  
emperor Timur.*

**I**N the middle of the same year of the Serpent,  
when the government of Timur seem'd to  
have arriv'd at the summit of its felicity, many  
of his officers bearing the titles of kings  
and Cans, there were compos'd several poems  
and other pieces on his prosperity. Some ob-  
serv'd that this conqueror had for his courtiers  
none but kings; while others related to what a  
high degree God had gratify'd his desires, and  
how favorable fortune had been to him.

They

Book II.



They cited several passages of the alcoran<sup>†</sup>, which perfectly agreed with his good fortune; they thence foretold the birth of the son whom God wou'd give him, because of his virtues, and the justice with which he govern'd his subjects.

This charming infant was born in the city of Samarcand, the seat of his empire, on thursday the fourteenth of the month Rabilaker, in the year of the Hegira 779: and what most pleas'd the emperor was, that he saw in this beautiful and happy prince the continuation of his family, which shou'd remain in the possession of the empire to the end of time.

An. Dom.  
1377.

In short, he discover'd an extraordinary joy at the moment Mehrebane<sup>‡</sup> his mother brought him into the world; and when he was presented to him, he knew by examining the features of his countenance, that the sun of his good fortune had already cast his rays upon this beloved infant.

He was brought up with great niceness and care by the ladys of the seraglio; his body by degrees became of a proper size: they adorn'd his clothes with the finest oriental stones, and he had always held over his head a canopy of rich embroider'd velvet.

There is a prayer in the Mesnevi<sup>§</sup>, which was made use of to beseech God that he wou'd be pleas'd to make the throne of Timur happy under the government of this young prince, that

<sup>†</sup> The Mahometans read the Alcoran as a book of prophecy, and pretend to find predictions in it.

<sup>‡</sup> The surname of Serai Mulc, which signifies a well-doer.

<sup>§</sup> A celebrated book of Mahometan theology in verse, compos'd by Moullai Roum, chief of the sect of Dervise Mevlevi, who always carry this book in their hands.

he wou'd render tributary to him the seven climates of the universe, and that at length he might become emperor of the whole world. Chap. 25.

The most learned astrologers, observing the situation of the heaven at the time of his birth, declar'd that this prince shou'd accomplish all his desires, and arrive without opposition to the highest pitch of grandeur and sovereignty. They explain'd in his favor all that astrology was able to teach men upon the horoscope and birth of a great prince: they reason'd on every thing which concern'd the planets and other stars, on their constellations and influences as far as they related to him; and in short on the agreement between their predictions and those of the Alcoran; the detail of which wou'd be too long and troublesom to the reader. This chapter having been compos'd only as an account of the august birth of the prince Charoc, we shall make no mention of his actions till the third book.

---

## C H A P. XXV.

*Timur sends Tocatmich Can to attack Timur Melik Can, emperor of Capchac.*

**T**HE first time that Tocatmich Aglen, after having abandon'd Ourous Can, came to put himself under the protection of Timur, he was accompany'd by Orkitmur, to whom this emperor as a reward for his services shew'd many favors, because in his absence Ourous Can had pillag'd all his goods, and given his revenue to another: and when Tocatmich was defeated by Timur Melik, Orkitmur was made prisoner of war, and carry'd to Timur Melik, who gave him



Book II. him his life, and even his liberty. But some time after, this captain being in misery, cast himself at the feet of Timur Melik, and besought him to restore to him his lordship and troops, that he might be in a condition to serve him. Timur Melik refus'd it, and told him, he did not care whether he remain'd in his service or not. Then Orkitmur fled, tho it was winter, and came to seek protection from the great Timur: he had the honor to kiss the carpet of his throne at Samarcand, and to receive from him many peculiar favors; he gave him an account of Timur Melik's manner of living; that he spent both night and day in debauches; that he slept till ten a-clock in the morning, which is dinner-time, no one daring to wake him whatever affairs of importance requir'd it; that his subjects had no longer any hopes of obtaining favor or protection from him; and that all the people of the empire of Touchi Can were very desirous of Tocatmich for their sovereign.—The emperor therefore sent messengers to Tocatmich at Saganac, to advise him to march with all expedition to attack Timur Melik, who had pass'd the winter at Caratal. Tocatmich, in obedience to this order, brought an army into the field, and march'd against the enemy.

As soon as he came near Caratal, the armies were rang'd in order of battel; they fought, and thro the usual good fortune of our emperor, the Can Timur Melik was defeated, and Tocatmich Aglen at the same time took possession of the throne of his ancestors in the empire of Capchac, and immediately sent Ourous Coja to carry the news of the victory to the great Timur.

This prince was so pleas'd at this news, that he spent many days in rejoycings: and to render  
the

the joy universal, he releas'd those who were in chains. He honor'd Ourous Coja with a vest and a gilt belt; and having made him a present of several jewels, sent him back to Tocatmich, furnishing him with horses and money for his journey.

Tocatmich Can return'd to Saganac, where he staid during winter, and as soon as the spring appear'd, rais'd a great army, and march'd towards the kingdom of Serai<sup>7</sup> and the country of Memac, which he again conquer'd.

His power encreas'd so considerably, that, thro the good conduct which Timur had inspir'd in him, all the kingdom of Touchi Can was reduc'd to his obedience; and thus he follow'd this politick maxim, That he who is ambitious of greatness, shou'd associate himself with fortunate men, because prosperity is not to be acquir'd but from the star of them who enjoy it.

## CHAP. XXVI.

*Embassy from the emperor Timur to Joseph Sofi king of Carazem.*

WHILST Timur past the winter at Otrar, to observe Ourous Can, Ysough Sofi, king of Carazem, taking advantage of the absence of this prince, sent an army to Bocara, which ravag'd the country, and carry'd away all they cou'd find, without considering what might be the consequences of this irruption. This action oblig'd Timur to send Dgelarem to

<sup>7</sup> In Capchac, upon the Volga.

Book II. him in quality of ambassador, to acquaint him, that after having contracted an alliance with him, he thought it very strange that he shou'd commit hostilities in the country of Bocara without any cause given.

The ambassador acquitted himself of his commission; but Ysough Sofi gave orders that he shou'd be seiz'd, and put into prison; of which Timur being inform'd, order'd one of his secretaries to write to him about it.

This officer instead of ink used fresh musk, to make the characters of the letter which was of silk, look more noble: he began with praising God, and with some considerations on the ordinary conduct of his providence with regard to princes; then he let him know the maxim of princes, which was, to esteem the person of ambassadors sacred; which was the reason they were always exempt from death, and even from prison, if the sovereign, to whom they were sent, had any regard to the law of nations, and the ambassador had the prudence not to commit any considerable faults, and shou'd behave himself inoffensively: moreover, that whoever shall have a contrary opinion, fails in judgment; since it is remark'd in the Alcoran, that ambassadors are sacred, and only oblig'd to execute their masters orders: in short, that he shou'd rather have sent back the ambassador without abusing him; which if he did not, he wou'd soon be brought to repentance, and feel the effects of the most cruel vengeance ever mention'd in history.

When he had seal'd the letter, it was sent to Ysough Sofi, who without consulting whether 'twas reasonable, put the messenger in irons; and was again so imprudent as to endeavor to kindle the war; for he sent Toui Bogai, firnam'd the robber, with a company of men of

his own stamp, to carry away the camels of the Turcomans, which he knew were then about Bocara. Chap. 26.

During this year of the horse, the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin Berlas return'd from his journey to Mecca, and had the honor to salute the emperor, to whom he represented the state of the kingdoms of Iran<sup>s</sup>, the governors of which had acted like absolute sovereigns.

In the same year also Timur was marry'd, according to the law of the prophet, to the princess Touman Aga, daughter of the Emir Moussa; and the sincere love he had for her was the reason that at her desire he adorn'd the city of Samarcand with many fine monuments; among the rest he built a pleasure-house without Samarcand towards the west; he also destroy'd the twelve gardens which were built in imitation of the twelve signs of the zodiac, in order to make them one. He order'd a magnificent pavilion, embellish'd with all possible ornaments, to be erected; infomuch that thinking this the most pleasant place imaginable, he knew of no name which wou'd suit it better than that of Baghi Behicht, the garden of paradise. Timur then went to pass the winter at Zendgir Serai.

---

\* All the country between the rivers Oxus and Tigris; i. e. Persia and the neighbouring countries.



C H A P. XXVII.

*Timur's fourth war in Carezem: death of Joseph Sofi: conquest of that kingdom.*

**J**OSEPH, or Youseph Sofi, Can of Carezem, excited by his pride, wou'd keep no correspondence with Timur, but imprudently committed several rash actions. This boldness gave cause to Timur to revenge himself, and get ready an army to make war on Carezem; which happen'd in the month of Chawal in the year of An. Dom. the Hegira 780, which answers to the beginning 1376. of the year of the Sheep, when the sun enters into Pisces. Thus having passed the winter in the quarters of Zendgir Serai, he began his march, and arriv'd at the frontiers of Carizme or Carezem.

His army invested the town of Eskiskuz. The general at the same time caus'd the kettle-drums to be beat, and the soldiers made the usual cry which is call'd Souroun: they built a fortress over-against the town for greater security; made entrenchments on all sides, and fortify'd 'em, and every morning fail'd not of making the great cry.

Partys went out, according to the orders given 'em, to pillage the territory of Carezem on every side, from whence they brought away all sorts of booty: they ravish'd the handsomest virgins in the country, made many slaves, and carry'd away all the horses, camels and sheep they cou'd meet with.

In the mean time Joseph Sofi thought proper to write the following letter to the emperor:

“ How

“ How long shall the world suffer persecution  
“ and ruin for the sake of two men only ? and  
“ how many thousands of Mussulmans shall pe-  
“ rish thro their quarrel ? It wou’d be better  
“ that we meet alone in a particular field, and  
“ prove our valor ; for then trusting in the di-  
“ vine assistance, we shall know in whose favor  
“ fortune and heaven will declare.”

Chap. 27.

Timur was pleas’d in that Joseph Sofi had sent such a letter to him ; and said it was what he most earnestly desir’d. He therefore order’d his armor immediately to be brought him ; he put on his light cuirass which he us’d in duels, girded on his sword, hung his buckler on his arm ; and in this posture, with the imperial helmet on his head, march’d towards the town. The princes and Emirs of the court cast themselves at his feet, and told him it was not reasonable so great a monarch shou’d fight a duel ; but he had no regard to their speeches, and continu’d his way. Hadgi Seifeddin Berlas, full of affection to him, which transported him beyond all bounds, took hold of the horse’s bridle, to strive to conquer the stubbornness of the emperor : he cast himself at his knees, and told him he ought not to be guilty of exposing his royal person, and fighting as a private man, when he had so many officers. “ If the emperor, said he, shou’d fight duels, what need is  
“ there of so many brave warriors ? ” Timur was wroth, reprimanded Seifeddin, and drew his sword to strike him : but the Emir quitted the bridle, and retir’d. The prince trusting entirely in God, went alone to the borders of the ditch of the city : he cried with a loud voice, that Joseph Sofi might know he was come, to answer the challenge, and had kept his promise ; and that he ought to meet him,

Book II. that he might see to whom God wou'd give the victory. Fear seized Joseph Sofi, who repented, and was not as good as his word. Timur cried out again; and to excite Joseph, told him that death rather than life was his due, who broke his word; he said many other things to shame him, and oblige him to come into the field: but Joseph prefer'd life before his honor, and was so abash'd that he cou'd make no answer. Timur waited a long time; but at length having no answer, return'd to his camp, where the bravest admir'd his intrepidity.

About this time there were brought from Termed to Timur the first melons of the year: his natural goodness made him resolve to send some of 'em to Joseph Sofi, supposing it wou'd be thought uncivil if he did not let that prince partake of 'em, seeing he was so near him; wherefore he order'd some of 'em to be carry'd to him in a bason of gold. The Emirs told him a bason of wood might serve; but the emperor wou'd not suffer it, and they were carry'd in a bason of gold to the borders of the ditch. They demanded from the wall what there was in the bason; the bearer answer'd that there were some new melons which the emperor had sent to Joseph Sofi, and then he return'd: some of the besieg'd took the bason, and carry'd it to the Can, who thro his want of sense, order'd the melons to be cast into the ditch, and gave the bason to the porter of the town.

After this action one of his generals nam'd Hadgi sally'd out at the head of a good number of troops, who were of the bravest warriors of Carezem; but the Mirza Omar, with his officers and soldiers, fell upon 'em with their swords drawn,

drawn, and swam over the water. This action kindled the war on all sides: at length there was a general fight; all the field of battel was cover'd with dead bodies, and look'd like a mountain of slaughter'd men, as well on one side as the other, and the combat did not end till night: in it were perform'd actions of the utmost valor; but at length the army of Carezem tir'd with fighting, thought it advisable to fly and enter the town.

Eltschi Bouga, and Anoucherouan son of Acbouga, having distinguish'd themselves by an extraordinary valor, were wounded; of whom the former was heal'd, and the latter died.

Timur gave orders for the siege to begin; the army was employ'd in placing the battering rams, and playing them against the walls; and the machines design'd to cast millstones and other stones, were made use of with such success, that the castle of Joseph Sofi was nearly ruin'd: and fear seizing him he was oblig'd to go for shelter to some other place.

The siege continu'd three months and sixteen days, during which time the marks of victory daily appear'd on Timur's side; and the distempers of the mind, which are astonishment, fear, inquietude, affliction, anger and envy, seiz'd on Joseph Sofi with so great violence, that at length falling sick, he lost all courage and died, bewailing his misfortune.

This event was esteem'd the most considerable of any that had happen'd to Timur, since the prediction was fulfill'd which he spake when he went alone to the walls of the town to invite this Can to the duel which he had propos'd, and afterwards refus'd to answer by not appearing; by which it was manifest that he deserv'd



Book II. death rather than life, as the emperor had predicted<sup>o</sup>.

Taking of  
the capital  
of Care-  
zem.

At the same time they briskly attack'd the town on every side, and at length enter'd it by the breaches they made, notwithstanding the brave resistance of the besieg'd, who defended themselves to the last.

A treasure of pearls and precious stones, which belong'd to the brave Erkendge, were taken away, tho not without opposition, by the soldiers whom Timur's good fortune assist'd : the other troops pillag'd all the riches of the town, and kill'd many of the inhabitants with their swords and arrows; and the publick edifices were ruin'd.

All the Cheriffs, doctors, and learned men were sent to the city of Kech, as also the tradesmen; together with a vast number of women and children.

An. Dom. 1379. This noted victory happen'd in the year of the Sheep, and of the Hegira 781; the same whereof was dispers'd thro all parts of the universe : The conqueror Timur, accompany'd with victory and triumph, return'd to the seat of his empire, and some time after went to pass the winter at Zendgir Serai, where all sorts of diversions were prepar'd for him.

---

<sup>o</sup> The author in several passages intimates as if Timur had the spirit of prophecy.

C H A P. XXVIII.

*Foundation of the walls of Kech, the country of Timur: the building of the palace of Acserai.*

**H**ISTORIANS report that the city of Kech was formerly the place where the most learned doctors of the Mahometan law assembled, and that three venerable Imams, celebrated by the sects of which they were the chief, and for the new opinions they had introduc'd, dwelt in this country: one of 'em was Abou Mehemed Abdai, native of Kech; another was Abdalla, native of Samarcand; and the third Abou Abdalla Mehemed, of Bocara.

*Description of Kech.*

At the same time men of learning came from all parts to this city, for the improvement of their knowledg. Aboul Hussein Muslem of Nichabour came according to the example of other virtuous men, and advanc'd his studys under the famous Abdai. The learned Moullas came thither in great numbers; and as the study of the sciences was then brought to perfection, they firnam'd this city Coubbet Elilmi Veledeb, that is, the dome of science and virtue: it had also the name of Cheber Sebz, the green city, because of the verdure and freshness of its gardens, and a meadow famous for its rare and curious plants.

At the end of the year 781, which answers to that of the Monkey, the emperor charm'd with the beautys of this city, the purity of the air in its plains, the deliciousness of its gardens, and the goodness of the waters, made it his or-

*An. Dom. 1379.*

Book II. dinary residence in summer, and declar'd it the  
 ~~~~~ second seat of his empire; wherefore he built  
 Building of there new walls, and a new palace which he nam'd  
 the palace Acserai, because the walls of it were exceeding  
 of Acserai. white and very high. The foundation of these  
 buildings was laid in an hour fitted for the most  
 fortunate horoscope; and the palace was built  
 so exquisitely fine and beautiful, that no other  
 cou'd compare with it. Timur then divided  
 the city among his Emirs, and the troops of  
 his household.

---

### C H A P. XXIX.

*The Emir Hadgi Seifeddin sent ambassador to  
 Herat, to Malek Cayasseddin Pir Ali, king  
 of Corassana.*

THE emperor being in his winter-quarters,  
 sent a messenger to Malek Cayasseddin  
 Pir Ali, prince of Herat, to let him know that  
 at the beginning of the spring, the Emirs and  
 other princes of the empire were to be present  
 at the Couroutai, or diet, to which he had  
 summon'd 'em; and that his presence there was  
 also requir'd. The messenger at his arrival at He-  
 was us'd with all imaginable civility and respect  
 by the prince Pir Ali, who told him, that if the  
 Emir Seifeddin wou'd do him the honor to  
 come thither, he being a servant of the empe-  
 ror, and friend to the Emir, wou'd confide in  
 his protection, and the friendship between them,  
 and depart with him immediately to testify his  
 obedience. He spoke to the messenger after this  
 manner, because he stood in fear of Timur;  
 but the emperor granted what he desir'd, and  
 in

in the year 781. sent Seifeddin Berlas to Herat, Chap. 29.  
 where he was receiv'd by Pir Ali with all ima-  
 ginable honor. Pir Ali kept him a long time on  
 pretence of putting in order the presents he  
 shou'd carry, and to make preparations for the  
 journey; but his design was only to furnish the  
 city with victuals and other necessarys, and to  
 finish the fortifications of Herat, which he had  
 caus'd to be encompass'd the preceding year by  
 a wall of two leagues circumference, and which  
 consequently enclos'd the suburbs and gardens  
 without the wall of the old city. Pir Ali per-  
 suaded himself, that thro the care and precau-  
 tion he had taken he shou'd be secur'd against all  
 events. The Emir knowing this prince's designs  
 by his conduct, press'd him no more, but put  
 himself in a condition to return to court; where  
 as soon as he arriv'd, he represented to Timur  
 what he was able to find out of the designs of  
 Pir Ali by his manner of acting.

An. Dom.  
 1379.  
 Mog. The  
 Monkey.


At the same time Ali Bei, son of Argoun Chah  
 Joun Garbani, return'd to his obedience, accord-  
 ing to the orders he had receiv'd, and came to the  
 foot of the throne. The emperor pardon'd all  
 his past faults, gave him a handsom reception,  
 and distinguish'd him from his equals by parti-  
 cular favors; he even consented to the marriage  
 of the daughter of this Bei with Mirza Mehe-  
 med Sultan: he was entertain'd with feasts,  
 and had presents made him of vests and other  
 things; and Timur had several conferences with  
 him in relation to his design upon Herat.

It was concluded that Ali Bei shou'd be in  
 readiness to go thither in the beginning of the  
 spring; which he gave assurance of by his pro-

---

! Son of Gehanghir, son of Timur.



Book II.  mifes and oaths: after which the bountiful emperor, having again honor'd him with his kindneffes, permitted him to return to the place of his refidence.

---

## C H A P. XXX.

*Mirza Miran Chah, fon of Timur, marches into Coraffana, to make war on Malek Cayafeddin Pir Ali, prince of Herat.*

**T**HAT it was Timur's ambition of univerfal monarchy, which caus'd him to undertake fuch glorious actions, is unqueftionable; and as he cou'd not find his equal in valor and conduct, among all the princes his contemporays, he rais'd his empire to as high a degre of power and glory, as it was poffible for any to attain to.

He has been often heard to fay, what highly favor'd of this ambition, that it was neither agreeable nor decent, that the habitable world fhould be govern'd by two kings; according to the words of the poet, *As there is but one God, there ought to be but one king; all the earth being very fmall in comparifon of the ambition of a great prince.*

About this time many rebels had feiz'd on feveral provinces of Iran<sup>\*</sup>; and every one fetting up for monarch, had declar'd himfelf fovereign of the country he poffess'd, and fortify'd it, that he might become wholly independent. Thefe unaccountable enterprizes exceedingly displeas'd Timur, whole power vifibly encreas'd; and

---

<sup>\*</sup> All the country between the Oxus and Tigris; that is, Perfia and the neighbouring countrys.

after having brought into subjection the countrys and kingdoms of Touran<sup>3</sup>, which Genghiz Can had formerly divided betwixt his two sons, Touchi Can and Zagatai Can, he left 'em in the care of his lieutenants, and resolv'd to conquer the empire of Iran or Persia.

In the autumn of the year of the Hen, and of the Hegira 782, he constituted governor of Corassana his dear son the Mirza Miran Chah, who was then but fourteen years of age: he gave him, to be near his royal person in quality of officers, the Emir Gehanghir brother of the Emir Hadgi Berlas, the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, the Emir Aebouga, the Emir Osman Abbas, Mehemed Sultan Chah, Comari brother of Temouke, Taban Behader, Orous Bouga brother of Sarbouga, Pir Hussein Berlas, Hamza son of the Emir Moussa, Mehemed Cazagan, Sarac Eteke, and Muzaffer son of Ouchcara, and other Emirs, with fifty companys of horse, whom he chose out of his imperial army, and order'd to decamp for Corassana.

An. Dom.  
1380.  
Mirza Miran Chah made governor of Corassana.

The army cover'd with an extraordinary dust, which darken'd the air, arriv'd at the bank of the Gihon or Oxus; over which by order of the prince, a skilful engineer, who was in his train, built a regular bridge of boats.

The Tartar troops cross'd the bridge, and pass'd the autumn and greatest part of the winter at Balc and Cheburgan, where they rested themselves; but towards the end of the winter they took from Malek the town of Badghiz, where the soldiers had as a reward for their conquest a great many horses, furniture, and

<sup>3</sup> What is call'd the Grand Tartary from the Oxus, to Muscovy, Siberia and China.

Book II. other riches, which were pillag'd thro the valor of the young prince, infomuch that the army became rich with the spoil of the enemy, equip'd it self, and provided every thing necessary.

When the sun was come to the middle of Pisces, Ali Bei sent an exprefs to Timur, that if the victorious standard shou'd march to Herat, he wou'd be so gracious as to permit him, his faithful servant, to attend him in quality of guide.

---

### C H A P. XXXI.

*Timur's army marches to make war in Persia, and the rest of the empire of Iran.*

An. Dom.  
1380.

**T**OWARDS the end of the year of the Hegira 782, which was the beginning of that of the Dog, the emperor Timur perceiving the agreeable season of the spring drawing near, sent orders to all parts to raise troops, that he might execute his design to pass into Iran; and he departed from his camp in a happy moment, before all the army was got together.

The troops came one after another to the imperial army, which consisted of the brave Tartars of Touran, as well as the skilful Turks, and the choicest soldiers of the east, Catlan, Termed, and Visagherd; and Timur cross'd the Gihon with all the army.

He order'd a bridge to be built over the river Dizac <sup>4</sup>; and all these motions, which were made with extraordinary dispatch, caus'd an in-

---

<sup>4</sup> It falls into the Gihon or Oxus, and passes by Corassana.

expressible terror in Corassana; for the desert and plains were entirely cover'd with tents, standards, foot and horse, arms and baggage.

When Timur was arriv'd at Andecond, his devotion prompted him to visit the illustrious Santon Babafencou, who was of the number of those Dervises, who make profession of folly. This person, in an enthusiastick fit, flung a breast of mutton at the emperor's head; who imagining this a good augury, said, "I am assur'd that God will grant me the conquest of Corassana, because this kingdom has always been call'd the breast or middle of the habitable world." This prediction had its effect: the prince departed from Ancoud, accompany'd by good fortune and prosperity; and in the encamping and decamping of this vast army, the noise of kettledrums, the sound of the great trumpet Kerrena, of the cymbals and Gourca, and the din of bells, struck such terror into the inhabitants of this great country, that every one was in a consternation.

Malek Mehemed, brother of Malek Cayasedin, was then in the fortress of Seracs: as soon as he had advice of the march of the army, he so much confided in the emperor's good nature, that he came before the throne, where he had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet, and to re-

---

<sup>3</sup> The east is full of this kind of Santons who are natural fools or blockheads, or at least pretend to be so: the Mahometans have an extraordinary veneration for 'em, esteeming 'em saints. They say that God loved 'em before their creation, and on that account did not endue 'em with reason, so that they are incapable of offending.

<sup>4</sup> The author says, this noise was so terrible, that it seem'd as if the day of judgment was come.



*Book II.* receive many caresses and presents. When after a long march the army had pass'd by Merveroud, commonly call'd Morgab<sup>1</sup>, they at length encamp'd at Tchekedalic, eleven leagues from Herat.

The emperor sent an express to Ali Bei to desire him to raise troops, and forthwith to join his army, according to the league made between 'em; but he refus'd to obey, and not only did not come, but by a shameful treason and pride, which prompted him to attempt what he was not able to perform, he caus'd the envoy to be seiz'd. As Malek Cayafeddin Pir Ali had that day taken the town of Nichabour from the Serbedals, and had part of his army in that country, Timur march'd to Jam and Cousoupa, that the troops which were there might not be able to join Malek. When the emperor was at Cousoupa, Pehlevan Mehdi, the governor of it, went to meet him, and had the honor to kiss the carpet; which was the reason the inhabitants of this province receiv'd no molestation from the army.

Timur, who always highly esteem'd those who profess'd the true religion in its purity, went to Taibad to visit the learned and virtuous doctor Zeineddin Aboubekre Taibadi, who at that time was famous for the strictness of his morality and great austerities. The prince had a long conversation with this Moulla, who was the most pious man of his time: he receiv'd good advice relating to his conduct; and at length took leave of him, and march'd with the army to Herat.

---

<sup>1</sup> A town of Corassiana. long. 97. lat. 36  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

## C H A P. XXXII.

*Reduction of Fouchendge, a town of Corassana.*

WHEN the imperial standard arriv'd at Fouchendge \*, the troops had orders to besiege this town; the soldiers accordingly invested it; and tho it had abundance of water in its ditches, they were not discourag'd, but spent three days in preparing their arms, and building the machines necessary for the siege. The fourth day in the morning, Timur order'd all the army to march towards this place, and vigorously to assault it, and strive to reduce the enemy. The soldiers prepar'd themselves for strange actions, and as soon as the Gourghe † was founded, they made the terrible cry call'd Souroun, and every one regardless of his life obey'd the emperor's orders; they cross'd the ditch upon planks and rafts, came to the foot of the wall, and discharg'd their arrows against the enemys, of whom they made a terrible slaughter.


Timur often march'd round the town without his cuirass, having only a vest on, to excite the soldiers to fight, who at the sight of the prince were recruited with fresh vigor.

Stones and arrows were shot from the top of the wall like rain, and Timur was struck with two arrows.

---

\* Long. 94. lat. 34.

† The same as Gourca.

Book II.  Mirza Ali, son of Emir Muaid Erilas, who resembled Timur, Aicoutmur Belcout, Omar son of Abbas, Mubacher and other brave men, march'd with unparallel'd valor and intrepidity towards the ramparts, which they overturn'd; they got upon the wall, and the arrows and stones, which rain'd upon our soldiers, did not lessen their courage.

The valiant Cheik Ali Behader, and his younger brother Cosru Buquet, with Mirek son of Eltchi, and other warriors, cross'd the ditch, and assaulted the gate of the town; they came to blows with the enemy, and fought with so much vigor that they vanquish'd them, and found means to open the gate: on the other hand, the vast army, having made breaches on all sides, enter'd the place, and put to the sword all those who had escap'd out of the hands of the others. Then they pillag'd the town, and carry'd away whatsoever was valuable.

This action gave extraordinary pleasure to the officers of Timur; because it was the first conquest they had made in Iran.

This town of Fouchendge was very much esteem'd for its strength, being surrounded with high walls and a good rampart: its other fortifications were so strong, that no traveller had ever seen any citadel comparable to it: its outer parts were guarded with a deep ditch full of water: it was furnish'd with a great many men arms, and machines, and had plenty of victuals. Yet notwithstanding all these advantages, it was taken by our victorious soldiers at the first assault; which seem'd to foretel that all the kingdoms of the empire of Iran shou'd in a short time be brought in subjection to the invincible Timur. But that this good fortune might not pass unmixt with some adversity, Elias and  
several

several soldiers fell into the ditch, and were drown'd. Chap. 33.

---

## C H A P. XXXIII.

### *Reduction of Herat, capital of Corassana.*

WHEN Timur had taken Fouchendge, he march'd toward Herat, tho Malek Cayafeddin in his pride, and by reason of the strength of the walls which surrounded his capital, the many friends he had, and the succors he expected, had prepar'd arms and all things necessary for his defence.

The victorious army was no sooner arriv'd, than the troops began to ruin the gardens, after having beat down the walls: they then invested the city on all sides; and as so on as the signal was given by the drums beating, and the soldiers had made the great cry Souroun, it was order'd for precaution that entrenchments shou'd be made over-against the walls of the city. This order was immediately obey'd, and Timur, accompany'd by his ordinary good fortune, mounted his horse, and rode several times round the city, to examine the out-parts, and observe the strongest and weakest walls.

The enemy, who were ready to fight, open'd their gate; and at the same the troop of Gouris, esteem'd the strongest and most valiant men of Iran, made a sally upon our soldiers, but after a bloody conflict retir'd.

The inhabitants had no sooner heard of this, than preferring the safety of their houses, which were adorn'd with fine porcelane earth of Cachan<sup>1</sup>, to the fatigues of war, they no longer

---

<sup>1</sup> A town N. of Isfahan, and four days journey from this city.



Book II. defended themselves, but thought only of saving their lives.


When Malek re-enter'd the city, he endeavor'd to change this resolution of the inhabitants: he resolv'd to make a second sally; and sent the Dellals, that is, the public cryers, into all the quarters of Herat, to order all the inhabitants to repair forthwith to the breast-works of the walls, and to take particular care of the city; but notwithstanding the crys they made in the markets and streets, every one was deaf, and wou'd not obey 'em.

Malek seeing he had no other refuge to fly to than that of submission, sent to the emperor the Sultana Catoun, daughter of Taghitmur Can his mother, with his eldest son the Emir Pir Mehemmed, accompany'd by Eskender Cheiki, who was reported to have been of the race of Bigen\*; to acquaint Timur with his submission, and to beg pardon.

The merciful prince receiv'd 'em handsomly: he presented Malek's son with a robe of honor and a rich belt; and having comforted 'em, sent back the mother and son, with order to tell Malek he must depart out of Herat; for if he shou'd be so presumptuous as to defend himself, and the city shou'd be taken, he wou'd be the cause of the ruin of the kingdom, and the death of the inhabitants, and repent his so doing. Timur kept with him Eskender Cheiki, that he might inform himself of the affairs of the country, and of what had happen'd in the city; and at the same time this prince went to dwell in the

---

\* A prince of the ancient Persians, the son of Kion and of the sister of Roustem.

Kiohc<sup>3</sup> of the garden call'd Bagzogoun, that Chap. 33.  
is to say, the garden of the crows. 

Malek Cayaseddin the next day made preparations for his departure; and the day after, having laid aside his pride, he went out of the city to seek Timur: he kiss'd the imperial carpet upon his knees, as a token of his sincere submission, and beg'd pardon for his fault.

Timur pardon'd and caress'd him; gave him a vest of honor, and a belt set with precious stones, and then dismiss'd him.

The day after, the Cheriffs, antient Moullas and Imams, accompany'd with the greatest lords of the kingdom, came out of the city: they had the honor to kiss the carpet, and made the accustomed vows for the emperor's prosperity.

This great conquest happen'd in the month of An. Dom.  
Muharrem, in the year of the Hegira 783, 1381.  
which was that of the Dog with the Moguls; and the victorious standard was carry'd from the imperial camp to the meadow of Kehdestan, east of Herat, where they staid some days: during which time Timur order'd that the treasures and other riches which the Gouris kings had amass'd for several years, shou'd be carry'd away. It is remarkable that there were in this city all sorts of treasures, as silver money, unpolish'd precious stones, the richest thrones, crowns of gold, silver vessels, gold and silver brocades, and curiosities of all kinds. The soldiers, according to the imperial order, carry'd away all these riches upon camels.

Timur then order'd the old walls of Herat to be raz'd, as also the new walls which Malek had built; which was accordingly executed.

---

<sup>3</sup> A pavillion in the gardens in form of a cupola, built of wood handsomely gilt, and sometimes of marble.

Book II.

A tax was laid on the inhabitants of the city, in consideration of their being sav'd, and in acknowledgment of the good treatment us'd towards 'em; which was paid in four days.

Moulla Cotbeddin, son of Moulla Nezameddin, who was chief of the Imams and doctors of this kingdom, had orders to quit Herat, and to dwell in the town of Sebz, with two hundred considerable old men: and Timur Tach, nephew of Acbouga, governor of Termed, was order'd to accompany and settle 'em there with their familys.

The gates of the city, which were cover'd with plates of iron, adorn'd with sculptures and many learned inscriptions, were carry'd to Kech, where they remain to this day.

Malek had in possession another place, which he thought impregnable; it was call'd Echkilge, and sometimes Amancouh, the government of which he had given to Emir Gouri, the youngest of his sons, who was accounted in Herat the bravest, wisest and most experienc'd lord of the kingdom. The emperor order'd Malek to bring him to court, and at the same time prohibited his entring into the citadel, and threaten'd to make him repent it if he did so. This prince went to the walls of Echkilge, as he was order'd; and having resolv'd to comply with this difficult proposal, he had recourse to his prudence, and conducted himself so well in this affair, that by his fine speeches he perswaded his son to come out, and he brought him to court; where he had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet. Timur gave him a handsom reception, highly favor'd him, and presented him with a royal vest.

## C H A P. XXXIV.

*The army marches to Tous and Kelat.*

**T**IMUR being highly pleas'd with his success at Herat, sent Gehanchah Yakou with troops, to conquer the towns of Nichabour and Sebzuar; but as the affair of Ali Bei disquieted him, he march'd in person to Kelat and Tous; and when he was arriv'd at the tomb of Abou Muslem Merouzi \*, he got off his horse to make a visit to it, according to the custom of pious men, besought God to assist him, and to give him strength sufficient to conquer his enemies.

The news of the emperor's march troubled Ali Bei: his heart was a long time divided between hope and fear; but at length, notwithstanding the confusion he was in, he resolv'd to obey: he came with expedition to Timur's camp to submit, and had the honor of kissing the carpet of the throne. Coja Ali Muaid a Serbedal, who was governor of Sebzuar, having advice of the army's march, came also immediately to court. The emperor receiv'd 'em with his ordinary clemency, and after having loaded 'em with favors, gave them a belt and sword, as also a robe of honor: and thus these two princes were treated in a more obliging manner than they even dar'd to hope for.

---

\* General of the arms of Aboul Abbas, first Caliph of the house of the Abassides, and to whom these princes ow'd their advancement to the Caliphate.



Timur at the same time took horse to march to Esferain<sup>s</sup>, which was in the hands of the lieutenants of the Emir Veli, prince of Mazendran. As soon as he arriv'd there, he gave orders for dispatching the siege of this town; the soldiers had no sooner fix'd their stations in the camp where they design'd to prepare their machines of war, than hanging their bucklers upon their necks, they march'd forthwith to the walls, in which they made considerable breaches, and enter'd the town: they put to the sword a great number of people, and destroy'd all their houses, the most considerable as well as those of less value; so that there remain'd to that great town only the name of Esferain, which it cou'd not be depriv'd of.

Timur sent an ambassador into Mazendran to the Emir Veli, to tell this prince, that if he came before him without resistance and with expedition, to obtain the honor of kissing the carpet of his throne, he wou'd distinguish him from his equals by imperial favors, and raise him above 'em; but if, thro his stubbornness, he shou'd refuse to appear, he wou'd by that means become very unfortunate.

This prince treated the ambassador with all manner of civility, gave him a handsom reception, kiss'd the letter which was presented him, laid it upon his head, profess'd his submission, and promis'd to come to the throne in a short time, and employ all his care in meriting to be of the number of the emperor's servants.

---

<sup>s</sup> Otherwise call'd, Elmhredgan, a town in Corassana, between Nichabour and Jorjan, dependant on Nichabour; long, 97. 5. lat. 36. 44.

When the ambassador was upon his return, Timur went to a pleasure-house nam'd Ogoul Yatou Yailac, an agreeable place for the summer, where he staid some days to give time to his soldiers to bring up their horses, and to refresh themselves in a delicious meadow there, after the fatigue they had undergone.

During these transactions they put to death the band of robbers, inhabitants of Courache, of whom we have before spoken, who were so bold as to kill the Emir Hadgi Berlas, and his brother Aidecou, very near relations of Timur. This emperor gave the principality of this country to Mehemed Dervich son of Aidecou, and to Ali Dervich grand-son of the Emir Hadgi: and at present it belongs to their family.

## C H A P. XXXV.

### *Timur returns to Samarcand.*

THE emperor having made several regulations as to the policy of the kingdom of Corassana, which he had reduc'd to obedience; he dismiss'd Malek Cayaseddin prince of Herat, and the other princes and governors, each of whom he confirm'd in their respective governments. Emir Cheik Sebzuari, who before the conquest of Corassana had quitted Malek, and put himself under the protection of the emperor, having had the good fortune for some years to serve this prince, was honor'd with the highest post in the town of Sebzuar; and Taban Behader was made governor of that

Book II. country: after which the emperor happily return'd to his capital city.

This monarch being on his return thither, went to pass the winter in the proud city of Bocara, where loaded with grandeur and glory, he pass'd his days in pleasure; and the Mirza Miran Chah his son, who by his order was gone to Seracs, having seiz'd on Mehemed brother of Malek Cayafeddin, sent him to Samarcand, where he remain'd during winter.

## C H A P. XXXVI.

*Death of Akia Beghi, daughter of Timur, and wife of the Emir Bei, son of the Emir Moussa.*

**T**O verify what is said in the Alcoran, that there is no joy without sorrow, nor marriage without mourning; Timur, in the midst of his prosperity, was afflicted by the death of Tagi Can his daughter, also call'd Akia Beghi.

This princess was marry'd to Mehemed Bei, son of the Emir Moussa: she had scarce her equal in beauty and virtue; her mind was adorned with the brightest graces, and her behavior attracted the love of all: in short, she was endu'd with such charming qualities, that the emperor her father lov'd her tenderly. Nevertheless her constitution decaying, she was seized with a pining sickness, by which she wasted away; insomuch that the fatal moment arriv'd, in which princes as well as peasants, the powerful as well

well as the weak, are oblig'd to submit to the decrees of fate: all the care that was taken to relieve her was useless, and she gave up to the angel Israel <sup>\*</sup> her life, which she had only in trust, leaving behind her a son nam'd Sultan Hussein.

The emperor Timur, who boasted that he was able to withstand the shock of misfortunes, was so afflicted at her death, that he forbade every one his presence; so that grief having seiz'd the heart of the people, they rent their clothes, cover'd their heads with dust, and tied black felt about their necks.

The funeral obsequys were perform'd according to the maxims of the Mahometan law; her body was wash'd upon a table of gold, enrich'd with pearls and precious stones; they then laid her in a coffin of aloes-wood, and recommended her soul to God. The coffin was carry'd to the city of Kech, where it was laid in a magnificent tomb. The emperor, after this was over, having receiv'd the formal compliments of all the court, distributed victuals and alms among the poor in great abundance.

In the mean while advice was brought from Corassana, that Ali Bei, in conjunction with the Emir Veli, had brought his troops into the field against Ali Muaid, and besieg'd him in the town of Sebzuar.

Timur, highly afflicted at the decease of his dearest daughter, had no regard to the affairs of this world, notwithstanding the ambition he had formerly shewn; wherefore he took no notice of this advice, nor seem'd any way af-

---

<sup>\*</sup> The Mahometans believe the angel Israel carries away the souls of those who die.



Book II.

fectcd with it; in short, he continu'd in this mood, till the princess Cotluc Turcan Aga his sister, who cou'd not bear the thoughts of his spending his time after this manner, came to him: she profess'd how much she sympathiz'd with him in his grief; but at the same time she gave him some agreeable advice, and told him, That since there was no remedy for the misfortune which caus'd his sorrow, he ought not entirely to abandon the care of the affairs of the empire; that this neglect wou'd bring disorder into his towns, and make the poor people despair; that it was better to free his mind from inquietude, which was prejudicial to him; and to shew that his zeal had no other aim than that of well-governing the empire, and remedying the necessities of the state.

"March, says she, towards Mazendran<sup>7</sup> and Kelat<sup>8</sup>, to chastise those proud rebels, who have had the insolence to depart from their obedience: treat 'em in such a manner, that it may serve for an example to others; spare not their lives; pillage their houses; and in short, let 'em receive a punishment adequate to their crimes, that the innocent fall not into misfortune and trouble, by departing from their duty at the instigation of the wicked."

The words of this princess had the desir'd effect on the emperor's mind, who knew they proceeded only from pure friendship; they rous'd and animated his virtue; and at the same time he resolv'd on his march to Corasfana and Mazendran.

<sup>7</sup> A province S. E. of the Caspian sea.

<sup>8</sup> A town S. of Mazendran, between Macan and Tous.

C H A P. XXXVII.

*Timur's second expedition into the kingdom  
of Iran or Persia.*

THE emperor order'd his troops to be got together, tho it was the middle of winter; and his army being in a readines, he march'd from Bocara towards Iran. He pass'd the desert, and arriv'd at Amouye upon the Sihon, where the engineers had no sooner built a bridge of boats, than this conqueror cross'd the river at the head of all his troops, entering a second time upon the territorys of Iran or Persia. It is said, that at that time Asia trembled from China even to the borders of Greece.

Having pass'd by the country of Macan<sup>\*</sup>, the army encamp'd in the neighbourhood of Kelat. Mirza Miran Chah coming from Seracs<sup>†</sup>, with his army join'd the imperial camp, and Malek Cayeseddin also join'd it with the troops he brought from Herat. But Ali Bei, instead of following their example, got the start of the army, and shut up all the inhabitants with his family and effects in the fortress of Kelat.

Yet the emperor was indulgent to him, and in consideration of the alliance between 'em, wou'd not immediately take occasion from his fault to be angry with him; but sent a mes-

\* A town of Corassana, long. 95 $\frac{1}{2}$ . lat. 37 $\frac{1}{2}$ .

† A town of Corassana, long. 94 $\frac{1}{2}$ . lat. 36 $\frac{1}{2}$ .

Book II. messenger to him to know the cause of his fear, and to tell him he might come to court with full assurance that no act of hostility shou'd be us'd against him; but if he wou'd not obey, he must acknowledg himself the occasion of all the misfortunes which shou'd happen to him; and that he shou'd be blameable for it. But as the time was come when the prosperity of Ali Bei must have an end, he did not consult his reason, but despis'd the counsels with which the emperor, thro his clemency, honor'd him; and had recourse to this passage of the Alcoran, *I will fly to a mountain, which will save me:* and thus relying on the mountain of Kelat, which he imagin'd inaccessible, he did not come to the imperial camp to offer his service to the emperor.

Timur decamp'd in the territorys of Kelat, and went down to Coran, which was dependent on Abiverd<sup>a</sup>; and order'd it to be proclaim'd in his army that he was about to march to Mazendran against Veli: notwithstanding which he took a different road, and turn'd to Kelat, imitating in that king Behmen, whom the author of Chah Name<sup>b</sup> mentions in his verses, who designing to march to the country of Zabul to conquer it, gave out that he shou'd go to the left hand, but at the same time went to the right.

Ali Bei and his men obtain'd fresh vigor, on advice that the imperial army wou'd march to Mazendran; whereupon he sent out of the fortrefs into the meadows the horses, flocks of

<sup>a</sup> A town formerly call'd Bayerd, N. of Corassana near Tous, in the desert of Kivac; long. 93. lat. 37. 40.

<sup>b</sup> A general history of Persia, written in ancient Persian.

sheep, and other beasts which had been shut up in it. Chap. 37.

But Timur, instead of going to Mazendran, return'd to Kelat with the army, which ravag'd all the country; and over-against the gate of Kelat, call'd the gate of the four villages, a dome was rais'd, under which was fix'd the emperor's throne, and the standard was erected near it.

The army, almost assur'd of the conquest, invested Kelat on all sides: the Mirza Miran Chah encamp'd over-against the gate of Dehia; the Mirza Ali, son of the Emir Muaid Erlat, in the passage of Lohra; the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin posted himself in the defile of Argoun Chah; and the Mirza Omar Cheik planted his standard at another gate. Fear seiz'd on Ali Bei, who being in an ill posture of defence, was oblig'd to have recourse again to the goodness of the emperor; to whom he represented by a submissive letter, which he got to be laid before him, That being confounded at his bad actions, he dar'd not come to cast himself at his feet, to implore his clemency, before he had beg'd pardon; but if thro his royal goodness he wou'd forgive him, and take the trouble to come to the gate of the town, accompany'd only by a few men, he wou'd come out as his slave, to cast himself at his feet, and ask pardon for his faults. Timur granted the petition of Ali Bei, and having appointed a day to go to the gate of the town, he did not fail to be there with five horsemen only.

The walls of Kelat were built upon the brink of a high mountain, in which there was a narrow passage by the side of the walls among the rocks; which way was shut in by a gate, and join'd to that of the town.



## Book II.

Ali Bei having notice that Timur was come to the appointed place with but a few men, his malice, or rather his ill fortune, excited him to betray him, and to surprize him by some villains who lay in ambuscade in the way, and whom he had order'd to kill the prince, if they shou'd have an opportunity.

In the mean while the traitor did not keep his word, not imagining that he whom God protects can receive no damage from any one, whatever artifice shou'd be made use of to destroy him. In short, as if the villains had been blind, they cou'd not come out of their ambuscade, nor even hold open the door of the place by which they must have put in execution the orders given 'em; so that Timur having staid a long time at the place appointed, return'd to his camp without receiving any harm.

As soon as Timur was come down from the mountain, all the generals flock'd to salute him; and every one paid his compliments to him upon the danger he had escap'd.

When the treason and faithlesness of Ali Bei was fully known by his breach of promise, the emperor was enrag'd, and commanded a general assault to be given, and the bravest men of the army to mount the walls of Kelat in those places which shou'd be mark'd out for 'em. The troops advanc'd, and without fear of death, did all that cou'd be expected from courage and resolution.

An. Dom.  
1382.

\* Eastern  
Tartars.

In the beginning of the month of Rabiulevel, Heg. 784, which answers to the year of the Hog, the emperor order'd that the soldiers of the troops of Mecrit \* and Bedakchan, the most able men in the world to march over mountains, and surmount the difficultys of narrow passages, shou'd scale the walls. The same night

night they obey'd, and got on the top of the mountain, and at the sound of kettle-drums and trumpets came to the gates of the town. Timur hasted thither also with a troop of his most valiant officers who march'd before him, among whom were the celebrated Akitmur Behader, and the brave Aicoutmur, who briskly repuls'd the enemys they met, and got upon the mountain. Omar Abbas and Mobacher, who were got up before the others, expected their comrades under a kind of vault, where the soldiers of the town attack'd 'em; but Timur immediately sent thither a troop of the bravest men of the army, who with their swords put 'em to the rout: the victorious troops, after having intirely beat the enemy, return'd from the mountain, and the vanquish'd demanded quarter.

Ali Bei, reduc'd to the last extremity, sent to Timur to beseech him that the soldiers might give over the slaughter, on condition he shou'd come out the next day to make his submission, and assure him of his obedience. He promis'd this in an agreement which he sign'd, and confirm'd by an oath; and as a security for his fidelity sent Nicrouz and Mehemed Cheik Hadgi, who were the principal Emirs of the hord of Youn Garbani', with his sister Can Sultan, who had been promis'd in marriage to Mirza Mehemed Sultan.

These envoys cast themselves at the feet of Timur with the greatest humility, and interceded for Ali Bei: the emperor, thro his clemency, granted them what they desir'd, and being willing to lay hold on the agreement of

---

\* The same as the province of Youin, in Corassana, near Azadyar; mention'd by Abulfeda.

Book II. Ali Bei, and give credit to it, he at the same time sent orders to his troops to cease the slaughter, and to Nicrouz and Mehemed to follow him to his camp, which they obey'd.

The next morning, at sun-rising, Timur took horse, and went to the gate of the town; Ali Bei was then constrain'd to come out and submit: he confess'd his faults, and begg'd his life. Timur was again so generous as to pardon him, and even to grant him the favor he requested, which was to exempt him from coming to court that day, on his promising not to fail coming the next, to have the honor to kiss the carpet of the throne.

But as the end of Pir Ali's good fortune was near, despair wou'd not permit him to act with reason, nor shew any honor in his conduct. This unfortunate prince again built castles in the air, and intended only base actions: he employ'd the night in fortifying and barricading the passage Lohra, and some other passages, by which the troops of Timur had scal'd the mountain; and he shut himself up in this inclosure of rocks, that he might avoid keeping his promise.

Timur departed fourteen days after, and went to the fortress of Cahcaha, between Baverd and Kelat; the emperor gave orders to rebuild it, and the soldiers so industriously apply'd themselves to it, that in two days and nights it was entirely rebuilt: he gave the government of it to Hadgi Coja, and fortify'd it with a strong garison. He sent to the other side of the country Siorgatmich Can, Mirza Ali, and the brave Cheik Ali, with the troops of their Toman, to guard the road to Kelat, and to block up the passages with so much precaution, that this place shou'd be a fort

fort of a prison, from whence no one cou'd go Chap. 38.  
in or come out to carry any refreshment to the prince.

C H A P. XXXVIII.

*Reduction of the town of Terchiz : in  
Corassana.*

**T**IMUR, by his good conduct, having in effect render'd Kelat a sepulchre to his enemys, took up a resolution to reduce Terchiz, and in order thereunto march'd thither with his army; he pass'd by Yassi Dapan, and arriv'd at Cabouchan', from whence he sent to Samarcand the princess Dilchadaga, who was indispos'd. As soon as the conqueror was come to Terchiz, the troops rang'd themselves round the place. This famous fortress being among mountains, was almost inaccessible, and said to have been impregnable, because of the extraordinary height of its walls, and the excessive breadth and depth of its ditches.

The garison of Terchiz was at that time compos'd of Sedidians, so call'd, because the Emir Cayafeddin had given the care of this place to the Emir Ali Sedidi, who had brought 'em in; and these Sedidians were for the most part Gouris, men famous for their valor and skill in defending places. This town, by their good conduct, was furnish'd with all sorts of arms and machines, great store of victuals, and a

\* Long. 92. lat. 35.

\* A town dependent on Nichabour in Corassana.



Book II. brave number of soldiers, who were resolv'd to defend themselves to the last. When Timur had seen 'em in action, he complain'd to Malek Cayaseddin of their resistance; and told him, that these men whom he had put into this place, being under his command, he wonder'd they shou'd continue in rebellion, since himself had submitted to his orders and obey'd him.

Cayaseddin said, they did it thro ignorance and want of good sense, and therefore he wou'd go and confer with 'em: in short, he went to the foot of the walls to command 'em to submit; but notwithstanding his injunctions and counsels, they wou'd neither obey him nor depart out of the place: so that the emperor was oblig'd to besiege it in form. When he had sent out his orders to the army, the officers caus'd it to be invested on all sides; the Tomenans and Hezares repair'd to their posts, and fortify'd 'em, and at the same time began the attack.

Every day Timur rid round the place, and examin'd the out-parts: the engineers with all expedition rais'd battering rams and other machines necessary for the siege, and presently got 'em in a readiness: the miners and pioneers drain'd the ditch; and at length undermin'd the walls, while our warriors assaulted 'em on every side, and perform'd many glorious actions. The besieged bravely resist'd 'em, and shew'd so much courage, that it is impossible to imagine such fury in warriors. The attack and the defence were sustain'd with equal resolution; but at length our soldiers, receiving every day fresh succours, so far ruin'd the walls and breast-works by the stones which were cast, and by the battering rams and other machines, that the place was almost destroy'd.

And

And as the prosperity of Timur was the care of heaven, which humane strength and the most heroic valor are not able to resist, the Sedidians, being terrify'd by seeing their affairs reduc'd so low, lost all courage, and begg'd for quarter. The ever-merciful emperor granted what they ask'd, and even us'd good words to encourage 'em; yet they went out of the town very much afraid, tho they had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet: they were enroll'd in Timur's service, and acquitted themselves in a very becoming manner.


This monarch knowing their valor, caress'd 'em, gave 'em lordships, and made 'em governors of towns and other places on the frontiers of Turkestan. As soon as they were gone out of Terchiz, Mirza Miran Chah confer'd on Sarek Eteke the government of the place.

---

### C H A P. XXXIX.

*The arrival of an ambassador from Fars, or the true Persia, at the court of Timur.*

**G**Elaleddin Chah Chuja was at this time sovereign of the country of Fars, that is, of the province of Chiraz and Persepolis. He was the flower and glory of the family of Mouzaffer, who us'd to be mediator in public treaties. This wise prince, thro the inspiration of his good fortune, made haste to testify his friendship to the officers of the emperor; and sent to court Omar Chah, who was one of the principal Emirs, with a letter, which, after the usual complements, assur'd Timur of his services and sincere friendship. He loaded this am-

Book II.  bassador with presents; which were curious precious stones, as also pearls worthy to be presented to emperors; gold rings, gold money, rich stuffs, rarities of great price, Arabian horses, excellent mules for running, cover'd with saddles of gold; and many sets of mules, six in a set, with harnesses of great price, cuirasses adorn'd with silk stuffs, choice furniture, a great scarlet canopy, a royal pavilion, a tent, and a great umbrella, which were of rich and sumptuous stuffs, with divers ornaments.

Omar Chah, being arriv'd at court, had the happiness at his audience to kiss the carpet. After having made the usual compliments, he presented to the emperor the letter, and presents from his master, which he distributed among the officers. This prince receiv'd him with the greatest respect, and conferr'd several favors upon him: he presented him with pieces of gold, vests of honor, and horses; and after having answer'd Gelaleddin's letter, sent him back very well satisfy'd with his negotiation, and with the obliging expressions he had receiv'd. Timur commanded one of his officers to accompany him, whom he loaded with curious presents for the king of Persia; and he order'd this envoy to demand in marriage of Gelaleddin the princess his daughter for his grandson, Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Mirza Gehanghir, to perpetuate and strengthen their friendship and alliance.



## C H A P. XL.

*Timur marches into the province of Mazendran.*

WHEN the imperial officers had got Terchiz register'd in the roll of conquests, and Timur had plac'd his governors there, he caus'd his army to march to Mazendran.

He pass'd by the road of Ronghi, and order'd his forces to march to Keboud Jaeme, and to Chamfan. The Emir Veli, prince of Mazendran, surpriz'd at this news, sent the Emir Hadgi, and others of his greatest favorites, to the imperial camp, with several horses, whose harnesses were new ; as also curiosities of several forts.

His letter was presented to the emperor, whom he besought to excuse him from waiting on him that day, and to order his army to leave his country, that so his poor servant finding himself in security, might again rejoice in his good fortune, come to court with expedition, and have the honor of spending the remainder of his life in his interest and service. Timur, thro an excess of goodness, granted the demands of his letter ; and dismiss'd his envoy with satisfaction.

In the mean while advice was brought from Kelat, that Cheik Ali Behader, having diligently examin'd the passages of that place, had mounted the walls in the night, accompany'd only with a few faithful domesticks, without mentioning it to the Emir Ali Bei ; but that he had mistaken his way thro the darkness of the night ; that he had met with a high arch from



Book II. whence he was perceiv'd by the enemy, who  
 ~~~~~ally'd out with all diligence, and getting possession of the passages, put themselves in a condition to repulse him. Cheik Ali bravely attack'd 'em, and the two partys made the great cry, the usual signal for a battel. The fight was bloody, and the soldiers were so animated against one another, that they wou'd listen to no other words than those which encourag'd the slaughter of the enemy. In short, many warriors on both sides were kill'd; but as the quivers were empty'd, some persons, thro a religious motive, labour'd at an accommodation, in which, thro the goodness of God, they succeeded; and Ali Bei spok to the Cheik Ali Behader: they embrac'd one another in token of peace and friendship, and Ali Bei oblig'd the other to stay with him, where he receiv'd all imaginable civilitys and handsome entertainment: they convers'd together for many days, Ali Bei hoping, thro the intercession of the Cheik, the emperor wou'd pardon his past faults.

Timur having agreed to the prince of Mazendran's request, because he had voluntarily submitted, march'd towards his capital. He pass'd by Chamlagan and Tcharmagan, and encamp'd in the meadow of Radecan. At this place the Cheik Ali Behader, and those who accompany'd him, join'd the imperial camp; and this general procur'd for Ali Bei the honor of kissing the imperial carpet, having a sword and a handkerchief\* in his hand. The Cheik knelt down, and besought the emperor to grant his pardon to Ali Bei. Timur did so, and afterwards caress'd and made him several presents.

This action of the Cheik very much pleas'd Timur, and increas'd his reputation at court.

\* See Ch.  
 4. of this  
 book in  
 the note.

he gave him Radecan, in quality of a lordship, and Siorgal \*. Chap. 41.

This monarch also gave Sebzuar to Ali Muaid Serbedal, and order'd that Malek Cayafeddin, and his children, as well as Ali Bei, and his men, shou'd be conducted to Samarcand. He then distributed all the country of Youn Garbani to his Emirs; but he order'd the inhabitants and familys in it to be conducted to Transoxiana.

## C H A P. XLL

*Timur marches to Samarcand. Death of the empress Dilchadaga, and of the princess Coibuc Turcan Aga, Timur's sister.*

**T**IMUR having no more enemys to fear in the kingdom of Corassiana, and the lieutenants of Mirza Miran Chah being establish'd in the possession of the towns and other places of the country; he gave leave to the troops to march to their quarters, and departed with expedition for the capital city of his empire.

When the inhabitants of Samarcand saw the court, which was finer than ever it had been before, in their city, they were exceedingly overjoy'd.

They bound Ali Bei, prince of Kelat, as well as the Emir Gouri son of Malek Cayafeddin, and Malek Mehemed his brother, and sent 'em to Andecan, to Mirza Omar Cheik. The hord of Youn Garbani was also sent to Tach-

\* Siorgal is a gift the king makes to any one of a lordship, which he and his heirs enjoy for ever.

Book II. kunt, and Malek Cayafeddin, with his eldest son Pir Mehemed, were kept at Samarcand.

During the winter the following affair happen'd at Herat. The two sons of Malek Facreddin and of his brother, making no figure in Herat, when this country was taken, nor during the government of Malek Hussein, or of his son Malek Cayafeddin, liv'd in extreme poverty; but when Timur conquer'd Herat, these princes represented to him their misery, and told him, that having the honor to be his servants, they took the liberty to let him know that they were cousins-german to Malek Hussein, father of Malek Cayafeddin; that these two princes had made themselves masters of their effects, and that they cou'd have no hopes of recovering 'em but thro his protection. The emperor was touch'd with their misfortune, and gave the government of Gour to the eldest, nam'd Malek Mehemed. About the same time a Gouri, nam'd Aboufaid Espahbed, a man of dauntless courage, who had been put in irons by the order of Malek Cayafeddin, and remain'd in prison ten years, was releas'd by the favor of Timur.

An. Dom.  
1380.

Towards the end of the year of the Hegir<sup>a</sup> 782, the Mirza Miran Chah, having pass'd the winter with the Emirs upon the bank of the river of Morgab in a place nam'd Yendi, which the Persians call Pentchdeh, that is, the five villages; it happen'd that Malek Mehemed governor of Gour, thro his folly and ignorance, with a troop of Gouris more ignorant than himself, march'd to Herat, and was join'd in the way by Aboufaid Espahbed; and when they were arriv'd in the city, another band of rascally fellows, highwaymen, and vagabonds also join'd 'em; and being assembl'd together, the

they committed great disorders and unheard-of acts of injustice, cruelty and abomination. The governor, intendants, and officers of the Emirs retir'd of their own accord into the fortrefs of Ectiareddin, the gate of which the rebels burnt; which so much astonish'd the garison of the Turks, that without taking care of any thing, they flung themselves off the walls, to endeavour to save their lives: but there was no quarter granted 'em, and no one cou'd save himself from the hands of the rebels.

The Mirza Miran Chah having advice of these disorders, sent with all expedition the Emirs Seifeddin and Acbouga with some troops to Herat, and himself march'd thither afterwards with an army.

When the Emirs arriv'd, the Gouris advanc'd to repulse 'em, and gave 'em battel at the end of the street of Khiavan; but they were defeated, and many of 'em slain. Some of 'em fled into the city, and dispers'd themselves during night: and as the Mirza Miran Chah arriv'd about that time, his troops drew their swords to chastise this rabble, and slew so great a number of 'em, that they built a very high tower with their heads, as an example for the future to seditious persons<sup>s</sup>.

When the emperor heard of this news, which was brought him by the Mirza Miran Chah, he gave orders that Malek Cayaseddin, who was imprison'd in the fortrefs of Samarcand, his brother Malek Mehemed, his grandson the Emir Gouri, and Ali Bei Youn Garbani, shou'd be all put to death.

---

<sup>s</sup> This circumstance ought not to surprize the reader, nor appear to him incredible, there actually being till this day at Ispahan, capital of Persia, such an edifice built of the skulls of wild beasts.



Book II.

An. Dom.

1383.

In the year of the Hegira 785, which was that of the Mouse, the most illustrious princess Dilchadaga, wife of Timur, pass'd from this world into the other; and some days after her decease, dy'd also Cotluc Turcan Aga, Timur's eldest sister, famous among the princesses in her time for her piety and charity, which consisted in founding of hospitals, mosques, colleges, and many other publick works for the assistance of the people, who all by this means partook of her bountys.

She was bury'd near prince Cotsam son of Elabbas. The emperor was highly afflicted at this loss for a long time. Every one paid his complements of condolence with the usual ceremonies; and he did several charitable things for the repose of the souls of the deceas'd, and gave abundance of alms to the poor who deserv'd 'em: but because his natural good nature caus'd in him an extraordinary sorrow, which kept him too long from the care of the affairs of state, the Cheriffs, doctors, old men and religious, among whom were Seid Bereke, Coja Abdelmalek, and Cheik Zade Saghezdgı, presented themselves before him, and comforted him by an agreeable conversation drawn from the tradition and discourses of Mahomet, from the Alcoran it self, and from many pious historians; who excited in him the desire of taking upon him the care of the people and army, and of rendring justice. In short, he approv'd of this maxim, as he had done before, that an hour only employ'd by a prince in executing justice, was of more importance than the worship given to God, and the prayers made during one's whole life: so that being at last comforted by the verse of the Alcoran, which tells us, *That we must return to God, because we are his*

he for the future employ'd all his zeal in the regulation of the state and religion.

Chap. 42.

C H A P. XLII.

*Timur sends a sixth army into the country of the Getes.*

THE emperor having learnt that there were disorders committed in some places of the country of the Getes, commanded Mirza Ali to march thither with an army, to destroy the seditious people of that country, the greatest part of whom were not Mahometans; he recommended to him principally to pursue Camaredin, the author of those troubles: and then he went to Kech. On advice of Mirza Ali's departing with his army, the people of Behriu laid an ambuscade to surprize him, and succeeded so well in it, that they plunder'd all his baggage, vanquish'd, and oblig'd him to return to the emperor.

The emperor at the same time, to revenge himself on these rash people, sent the Cheik Ali Behader, Seif Elmoulouc, Atilmich, and Argoun Chah Ectachi, with troops to make war on 'em; and as he heard no news from 'em so soon as he expected, he sent after 'em the Emir Gohanchah Yakou, Eltchi Bouga, Chamseddin, Outcheara, and Saintemaure Behader, with ten thousand horse: but these Emirs were scarcely come to Atacom, when they met those upon their return who were sent before 'em, and had overtaken the people of Behriu, of whom they had kill'd a great number, pillag'd their country, and made many slaves. But as the

Book II. the Emir Gehanchah had orders to seek out Camareddin; he oblig'd the former Emirs to return with him to that expedition. They went together to Issigheul, and from thence as far as Gheucstopa, in search of Camareddin; but not being able to find him, they return'd to Samarcand in autumn, and had the honor to salute the emperor.

---

## C H A P. XLIII.

### *Timur marches to Mazendran, and thence to Sistan.*

**T**IMUR having resolv'd to march in that season to Mazendran, gave orders for the raising of fresh troops, to render his army more formidable. When all was ready, he took horse at the happy moment, according to the observations which were made; and having reviewed all the troops, and display'd his standard, he march'd towards Mazendran. After having encamp'd and decamp'd many times, he arriv'd at Termed; and order'd that the victuals for his army shou'd be brought thither. This prince caus'd a bridge to be built in a narrow passage, where having cross'd the river of Morgab, he encamp'd on its banks: the Emir Yakou, governor of Cabulestan\*, had the honor to kiss the carpet in the camp, where he gave an account of the affairs he had in charge, and at the

---

\* This province, whose capital city is Cabul, hath on the S. Zabulestan, on the N. Bedakchan, on the E. the kingdoms of China and Coran, and on the W. those of Bamjan, Gour and Rayer.

same time desir'd orders from the emperor, relating to the government of his frontiers.

During these transactions, advice was brought that the Toman of Nicoudari, which inhabited a place fit for the summer season, design'd to revolt; and that Cheik Daoud Sebzuari, whom Timur had honor'd by making him chief of Sebzuar, had been guilty of so much ingratitude and insolence, as to kill Taban Behader governor of that town, by which action he declar'd himself a rebel: that the Mirza Miran Chah having notice of it, had sent the Emir Acbonga of Herat at the head of an army to Sebzuar, and the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin had follow'd him with fresh assistance; that they had besieg'd Sebzuar, and put abundance of the rebels to the sword, after having taken this town; that the Cheik Daoud fled, and retir'd into the fortress of Bedrabad, situate on the ridge of a mountain, where he had fortify'd himself; but that the Emirs Hadgi Seifeddin, and Acbonga, had actually besieg'd it. Timur had no sooner heard of this rebellion, and that of the country of Sistan, than he sent the Cheik Ali Behader and Outchcara Behader, at the head of a great army, against the Emir Veli prince of Mazendran, that they might encamp near him, and reduce his frontiers to obedience; and himself march'd towards Sistan.

His army encamp'd at the beginning of the month of Ramadan in the year of the Hegira 785, before the town of Herat, the inhabitants of which, as we said before, were join'd with the Gouris rebels; and the emperor himself march'd to Sebzuar, where he encamp'd. This fortress was attack'd according to his orders, and many breaches were made; the Cheik Yahia Corasani being appointed to direct the miners,

An. Dom.  
1383.

the



Book II. the place was so ruin'd, that the greatest part of those within perish'd, and the Cheik Yahia was crush'd to pieces under a wall which fell down.

Strange  
punish-  
ment of  
the rebels.

There were near two thousand slaves taken, who were pil'd alive one upon the other with mortar and bricks, so that these miserable wretches might serve as a monument to deter others from revolting, who knowing the vengeance of this conqueror, shou'd not bring themselves into this inevitable misfortune, which their pride might tempt 'em to.

When the emperor was satisfy'd with this revenge on the inhabitants of Sebzuar, he regulated his troops, and sent the vanguard to Sistan; whither he afterwards march'd with the rest of the army, which consisted of a hundred thousand warriors compleat.

The prince Chah Gelaeddin of Ferah having a design to come to Timur's court, had no sooner advice of the march of this monarch than he went out of his fortress, and came with diligence before the imperial standard, with a spirit of sincerity and submission: he made presents to Timur, which indeed were but mean, considering the prince to whom they were presented; for no one was able to make those which were worthy of him: but they were suitable to the ability of Gelaeddin, who well knowing it was his interest to be in favor at court, acquainted the emperor with the resolution he had taken of sacrificing his life in his service.

Timur order'd Akitmur Behader, and other captains, to make inroads in the neighbourhood of the town of Sistan, and pillage that country. They executed this order with expedition, and so much vigor, that the gates of the town were beaten to pieces; and as soon as the army had pass'd

pass'd the mountain nam'd Ouc, and was come to the fortress of Zere<sup>2</sup>, these brave warriors assaulted it according to order, and gain'd the victory; tho five thousand enemys, who had no thoughts of being conquer'd, fought a bloody battle, wherein the greatest part were slain with arrows and swords: our soldiers made a mountain of the dead bodys, and with their heads erected a tower.

# C H A P. XLIV.

## *Town of Sistan<sup>1</sup> besieg'd, and taken.*

THE emperor having rang'd his army in form of a crown round the place, advanced to the gate of the town with a troop of chosen men, in whom he cou'd confide, and got upon a hill of sand. Chahchahan Tageddin Sistani, with many others, came out from Chah Cotobeddin to find the emperor, whom they had the honor to salute: after having given assurances of their obedience and submission, they besought Timur to permit 'em to pay him a tribute and the ordinary customs: but during this conference with the emperor, the besieg'd sally'd out in multitudes with good troops, and prepar'd themselves for the fight. Timur, who knew of their design, plac'd two thousand horse in ambush, and order'd Mehemed Sultan

<sup>1</sup> Near a lake in Sistan, to which it gives its name.

<sup>2</sup> A town and province. The town, otherwise call'd Zarrange, is situate in long. 97. lat. 32. 20. on the river Senaroud, which is a branch of the Hendمند, which discharges itself into the lake of Zere. This province, which is part of Corassana, is otherwise call'd Sedgestan and Nimrouz.

*Book II.* Chah to advance with a few men, and begin the fight; but at length, on pretence of flying, to turn to the right with what cavalry he had. This order was executed: and the enemys, who were only foot, growing presumptuous on this flight, sail'd not to pursue 'em vigorously as far as the place where the ambush was laid; but the 2000 horse fell on 'em with fury, and there was a bloody battel. The enemys infantry wounded many of the horses with their swords, and abundance were slain; but the lances kill'd a great number of the enemy, and the rest were closely pursu'd even to the gates of the town. The approach of night put a stop to the battel; but the next morning, the crys and trumpets were heard on all sides. The emperor in person commanded the main body; and under him Mirza Miran Chah the right wing, being assisted by the great Emirs, among whom were Hadgi Seifeddin, Acbouga Behader, and other princes of the royal blood; and the left wing was led by the Emir Sar Bouga, who had near him Codadad the son of Hussein. Our troops march'd round the place, and having in a manner block'd it up, beat their kettle-drums, to signify that it was time to begin the attack; they continu'd to sound the trumpet, and having made the great cry, dug a ditch before 'em, and there fix'd palisados, and did many other things till night came on.

Then two thousand of the enemy sally'd out to surprize the besiegers; and having agreed to attack the quarter of the Emir Chamfeddin Abbas and Behrat Coja, they cross'd the ditch, being favor'd by the night, and advanc'd as far as the tents, and even to the middle of the camp, where they slew some horses and camels. But our captains, who were willing to engage

these

these rash fellows, suffer'd them to cross the ditch, and discharg'd so many arrows on 'em, that they kill'd a great number, and wounded the rest, who with great difficulty retreated into the town.

The army march'd the next day to the place, and attack'd it on all sides. The attack was answer'd by those who sally'd out to repulse the besiegers; but the standard of the prophet being display'd, the Mirza Ali with five hundred horse fell upon the enemy, and repuls'd 'em as far as the town, which he enter'd with his battalion: nevertheless he was resisted by the brave men of the country of Zabul, who having no longer any thoughts of saving their lives, but only of performing heroic actions, not only resisted him with extreme valor, but being succour'd by a troop of others who follow'd 'em, shut the gate upon our warriors, and kept 'em close in the town. This action rekindled the fury of both partys, and reviv'd in the Zabulians the memory of the history of the son of Dastan?

Akitmur Behader, having advice that the gate of the town was shut upon the Mirza Ali, ran thither full speed with a thousand horse, the most valiant soldiers of the army. They cut the gate to pieces with their swords, slew the guards, and dispers'd the soldiers who had shut the gate on our men: by which means the Mirza Ali went out of Sistan in triumph, with those who were under his command, and came to the imperial camp.

---

\* Roustem, the son of Zal, surnam'd Dastan, born at Zabul, of which place he was king; the greatest hero the history of Persia ever mention'd.



Book II.

Chah Cotobeddin, king of this country, not being able to defend himself against an army so numerous and formidable as that of Timur, found himself oblig'd to submit; he came out of the town to ask pardon of the emperor, and made the following speech: "Great prince, in vain I strive to defend my self against you, whose mighty arm is able, if I may so say, to bend mountains. Of what use will it be to me to tempt fortune, who has rais'd you to such a height, that you seem able to command even her? No, my lord, I see no other means of saving my life than by flight. But what place is there for me to retire to, where I may shelter my self from your vengeance; since every one obeys your power? There is no asylum under heaven in which I can better trust, than your royal clemency. Yes, my lord, I have fled to save my self from you; but 'tis to you I have fled."

The emperor not only pardon'd him, but even distinguish'd him from the other princes by his favors.

After this action, Timur having on a plain cuirass without sleeves, mounted his bay horse; and with fifteen men only rode to the left wing of the army to review it; but at the same time he had advice that between twenty and thirty thousand of the populace of Sistan, tho their prince was gone out of the town, and had presented himself before the imperial throne, being arm'd with bows and arrows, had slid down the walls, holding by one another's hands, and had the boldness to march against the victorious army: which oblig'd Timur to turn towards the body of his army to command 'em; but as the enemy let fly a great number of arrows, Ti-

Timur's  
horse  
wounded.

mur's

mur's horse was wounded. The emperor, was no sooner come to his tent, than he put Chah Cotobeddin in irons: and having rang'd his army in order, he was about to march in person to the fight; but the most affectionate Emirs took hold on his horse's bridle, and on their knees represented to him, that he had many years to live under his auspicious fortune, and as long as any of them remain'd, he ought to undertake no action, in which the least danger might be suspected. Timur, at the pressing instances of his officers, had no sooner turn'd his horse, than all the Emirs fell so furiously upon the enemys, with their arrows and swords, that they cut them in pieces, crush'd a great number of 'em under their horses feet, and wounded others, who with difficulty retir'd into the city, the gate of which they shut with the utmost expedition. The victorious soldiers pursu'd their victory, gave a second assault, mounted the breast-works; and having made many breaches, enter'd the place, of which they made themselves masters, ruin'd the houses and public edifices, put to the sword those horse who were not slain in the fight, and in short raz'd the walls of this fine city, the inhabitants of which they kill'd, both men, women and children, from persons of a hundred years old, to infants in the cradle.

The emperor staid there some days, during which time they carry'd away the treasures of the kings of Sistan, and all the precious stones, other riches, and curious pieces of great price. The soldiers took even the very nails of the gates, and burnt every thing which cou'd be consum'd with fire.

Some fabulous authors report, that in the country of Zabulestan a voice was heard, which

Book II. advertiz'd the soul of Roustem ' of all these disorders in these words; " Lift up thy head, " behold the condition of thy country of Persia, which is at length reduc'd by the power of " the Tartars."

An. Dom. 1383. This conquest was made in the month of Chawal in the year of the Hegira 785, which was that of the mouse; the sun being in capricorn.

They then sent the Chah, that is, the king of Sistan, Cotobeddin, to Samarcand, as also the generals of the army, and governors of the provinces. The town of Ferah was the place of the retreat of the Cadis, doctors, and other lawyers. The brave soldiers who had a share in gaining the victory, enjoy'd the emperor's favors above others; and the government of this province was given to Chachahan.

---

Roustem had always conquer'd the Tartars, and they cou'd never make themselves masters of any town of Iran when he was alive. He was general of the Persians, king of Zabul under Cyrus and other emperors; and he slew Estendiar, who is thought to have been the same with Xerxes. He liv'd very long, and in four or five reigns. See in the *Chah Namé*.

C H A P. XLV.

*Timur marches to Bost.*

AFTER the taking of Sistan, the royal standard was carry'd to Bost <sup>2</sup>; and the troops in their passage conquer'd the fortrefs of Tak, which they raz'd to the ground.

And when they were encamp'd on the banks of the river of Hirmen <sup>3</sup>, they destroy'd an edifice call'd the bank of Roustem; and left no footsteps of that antient monument.

The army pass'd by Kuke Cala, where they had advice that Toumen Nicoudari, was advanc'd to the quarters of Kidge <sup>4</sup> and Mecran, which he closely besieg'd. Timur judging it convenient to oblige Toumen to return, the Mirza Miran Chah was nam'd for that purpose; and to destroy this rebel, Mireke Mehemed, son of Chir Behram, the emperor's favorite, sent to accompany the prince the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, Cheik Ali Argoui Berlas, Sevindgic Behader, and other Emirs. They march'd day and night; and when they had pass'd the desert, they found Toumen with his men of the hord of Nicoudari, encamp'd in the meadow of Coran.

Toumen no sooner had advice that the imperial troops were arriv'd, than he mounted his

<sup>2</sup> A town of the kingdom of Sistan, on the frontiers of Zabul; long. 100. lat. 33.

<sup>3</sup> The same as Hendmend.

<sup>4</sup> A town in the kingdom of Mecran, long. 99. lat. 27. 50.



Book II. horse, and came into the field ready for battel.

The Emir Seifeddin his old friend, considering his great age, entertain'd him with all possible respect and civility: he enquir'd of him the state of his health, and strove by the most obliging expressions to bring him over to his duty, assuring him he had nothing to fear from the emperor, but might come with courage to the foot of the throne; and he pray'd him to use no hostility. But fate was wholly set against Toumen; he had no regard to his friend's advice, but began the fight, where he was soon kill'd by a lance, and his head was sent to the emperor.

Timur with the army march'd by the upper part of the river of Hirmen; and as it was for the advancement and honor of monarchy, that whosoever shou'd be guilty of disrespect, or commit any insolence against Timur, shou'd receive a punishment suitable to his boldness; it happen'd that the prince of Mam Catou, who had wounded Timur in the hand with an arrow, when he return'd from Sistan accompany'd by the Emir Hussein, at this time came to the court with presents: but at his arrival, he being known to Timur, whose anger was excited, and who wou'd never let treason go unpunish'd; as soon as he was gone out from his presence, he commanded him to be seiz'd, and shot to death with arrows: which punishment appear'd too mild for so great a crime. The victorious troops in their march made themselves masters of the town of Mam Catou, and of Calasurc, which signifies the red fortress.

There were three thousand of Toumen's subjects got together in the town of Hezarpez, the residence of the Sede ' of Toukai, who had shut

---

\* A company of a hundred men.

up the passages of the mountain, and fortify'd themselves. As they did not observe the Mus-fulman laws, they committed so many disorders, that the Mahometans were weary of their insults, and resolv'd to besiege the town. Chap. 46.

The troops on their arrival began to attack it; and at length our valiant soldiers, seconded by the good fortune of the emperor, took it by assault, tho it was thought impregnable. The rebels were chastis'd: some were cast headlong from the top of the mountain, others were slain, and their heads serv'd to build towers, as usual.


Timur march'd from Hezarpez to the citadel of Dehne, of which the hord of Tagatchi had made itself master. The men of this hord guarded it with a great deal of care; but their measures were broken by the strength and valor of our troops, who did some memorable exploits at this place. They carry'd it by assault, put all the garison to the sword, and built towers with their heads, to strike terror into other princes.

---

## C H A P. XLVI.

*War against the Ouganians, inhabitants of the mountains, south of Candahar.*

**T**HE Ouganians had sent some time ago a man of the mountain of Couh Solyman; to give notice that they were willing to submit themselves to the emperor, and to desire from him a Deroga; which was granted: but as some time after news was brought that they had revolted, the army march'd towards their country, with order to fight 'em. This order was

Book II. obey'd; and there was a bloody battel. The  Mirza Ali Aicoutmur, and some of the troops were wounded; and Nikepei Chah, in losing his life against these infidels, obtain'd the glory of martyrdom \*. These sad accidents excited the courage of the valiant Akitmur; he cast himself at the emperor's feet, to beg leave of him to permit him to return against the enemys, that he might continue to employ his life in his service, which he had entirely consecrated to that use.

Timur, who knew his intrepidity, fearing lest he shou'd run headlong into too great dangers, refus'd what he demanded, tho many regiments, which had not had the boldness to withstand the enemy, had left the field of battel. In the mean while, Ramadan Coja, who thought it a crime to turn his back upon the enemy, kept firm in his post, and made a brave resistance. Timur commanded Bafti Coja Uzbek and Chamfeddin to fall upon 'em; and as they executed this order, Aid Coja, a young man, who had laid in ambuscade on the ridge of rock, dexterously took hold on one of the enemys by the hair of the head, dragg'd him to the ground, and cut off his head, which he carry'd to the emperor: this was look'd upon as an heroic action from so young a man.

At length, all our brave soldiers fell upon the enemys on every side with so much courage and resolution, that thro the assistance of heaven and Timur's good fortune, they made themselves masters of the fortrefs', and oblig'd

---

\* The Mahometans make it an article of their faith, that those who are kill'd in the wars against the infidels are martyrs.

† The fortrefs of Couh Solyman built upon this mountain.

the perfidious Ouganians to come out of it, Chap.46. who were deliver'd to the soldiers, and according to the laws of Genghiz Can, put to death.

From thence the emperor began his march to Candahar, to which place he had already sent Gehan Chah Behader<sup>\*</sup>, Moubacher, and Esken-der Cheiki with troops. Those lieutenants had seiz'd on the avenues of the place at their arrival, and begun the siege; but having had an opportunity to fight, by an effect of the good fortune of our prince, they carry'd the town by assault, seiz'd on the governor of the province, and having put him in irons, sent him to court, where he was hang'd.

Timur being come to Candahar, gave a handsome reception to Gehan Chah Yakou: he honor'd him with several presents, and at length sent him to the town of Calat<sup>†</sup> at the head of an army. When he was arriv'd there, he besieg'd it, and made several assaults, in which the enemys had sometimes the worse, and sometimes the better; but they cou'd by no means defend themselves against the cunning of the engineers, who, by undermining ruin'd the walls and breast-works on all sides; and by this means the general made himself master of the town, the walls and buildings of which he order'd to be raz'd; and then rejoin'd the imperial camp, at the same time that Mirza Miran Chah, returning from Cuslar and the Rebat<sup>‡</sup> of Sultan Mahmoud, came before the throne.

---

\* Also call'd Gehan Chah Yakou, son of the Emir Yakou.

† A town in the kingdom of Coran near Candahar, different from Kelat in Corassana and Eelat in Armenia,

‡ Rebat signifies a park.





## C H A P. XLVII.

*Timur returns to Samarcand.*

**S**ISTAN, Zabulestan, and their dependences, being brought into subjection to Timur, there remain'd no more enemys in these provinces, every one obeying him, which made this monarch desirous, since the charming season was come, to return to the capital city of his empire. He gave both the military and civil government of Candahar to Saïfel Berlas Candahari: and he presented Saïfet Nicoudari with the Toman of that country; and as the Emir Yakou dy'd in the winter, he gave his place to his son Gehan Chah; and at the same time disbanded the Emirs, officers and troops; and leaving the army, departed with all expedition to Samarcand, where he arriv'd in fourteen days.

The princes and princesses of the blood, accompany'd with the other ladys, and all the great lords, Emirs, Cheriffs, and other principal persons of the empire, perform'd the ceremony of kissing the earth, and wishing the emperor joy upon his conquests. They also made the usual presents, and sprinkled upon his head pearl-seeds, precious stones, and gold-dust; and gave thanks to God for his happy return, and distributed alms. All these demonstrations of zeal and respect were soon after renewed on the birth of a prince, who about this time was born to the emperor; and who was nam'd Ibrahim Sultan: and the Emirs distributed among the people a great deal of money, testify'd their joy by magnificent entertainments and publick feasts; and

and in the assemblys of pleasure they serv'd up Chap.48.  
 wine to encrease the joy and diversions. But  
 this prince dy'd very young, and his death  
 caus'd in the emperor a sorrow natural to a fa-  
 ther.

## C H A P. XLVIII.

*Timur marches into the province of Mazendran.*

AFTER the emperor had staid three months at Samarcand, he resolv'd to march to Mazendran; but first prepar'd to enter Iran: The army during its march us'd extraordinary expedition to get to Termed; the engineers built a bridge upon the Gihon, which the imperial troops had no sooner cross'd, than all the kingdoms of Iran were in a consternation.

Timur encamp'd at Balc, and staid there some days, expecting to be join'd by the troops of the provinces, pursuant to an order he had before given: and his army was soon considerably increas'd, by the arrival of about a hundred thousand horse, whose commanders were arm'd with cuirasses and bucklers.

We have above \*related that the daughter of \*Chap.39.  
 Gelaeddin Chah, prince of Fars, had been demanded in marriage for the Mirza Pir Mehemmed, son of Gehanghir, son of Timur: whereupon in the beginning of the year 785, the emperor sent Oladgia Itou and Hadgi Coja, his ambassadors to Fars, to conduct this great princess to court; which they did accordingly about this time. An.Dom. 1383.

## Book II.

The princess Serai Mulc Canum, and Touman Aga, accompany'd with many other ladys, went to meet her, and receiv'd her with all imaginable ceremonys and pomp; they sprinkled over her precious stones, pearl-seed, and gold-dust; they prepar'd marriage-feasts; and in short, nothing was wanting that was usual in public rejoicings. After the marriage-feast was finish'd, Hadgi Coja was accus'd before the throne of many crimes committed in the last campaign, with design to raise himself above his quality: he was question'd upon these accusations, convicted, and being condemn'd, was put to death.

Timur then review'd his army, which he had assembled from all parts of his dominions, and began his march as soon as it was ready. When the court was come near the river Morgab, the princess Canzade, wife of Mirza Miran Chah, met 'em, coming from Herat; to receive her spouse; and the Mirza Calil Sultan was committed to her care, in order to be educated by her. Timur left the princess Touman Aga at the camp, and sent the empress Serai Mulc Canum, and the other ladys, to Samarcand. He decamp'd at the same time, and taking the road to Burkei Tach, came down from Seracs, from whence he went to Baverd<sup>2</sup>, and arriv'd at Nesa<sup>3</sup>, where he learnt that the Emir Veli having fortify'd the citadel of Douroun, had shut himself up in it, and furnish'd it with a good number of soldiers. Then the Cheik Ali Behader, Sevindgik Behader, Mombacher, and other Emirs, who commanded the

<sup>2</sup> The same as Abiverd.

<sup>3</sup> A town in the desert of Kivac, between Corassana and Carczem, long. 93. 20. lat. 48. 45.

vanguard of the army, met that of the Emir Chap. 48.  
Veli, in a place nam'd Ghiaoukerch. Each party was rang'd in order of battel, and at the same time advanc'd. Mobacher began the attack with vigor: an arrow which was shot at him hit him on the face, near the teeth, and went out by his neck; but this brave warrior, notwithstanding his wound, rush'd a second time upon the enemy, whose head he cut off, and flung into the middle of the field. This action astonish'd the enemys, and put 'em to flight; and Timur, that he might recompense Mobacher for this heroic action, made these places of Ghiaoukerch and Hourberi, Siorgals, and gave 'em to him, that he might enjoy the revenue of these lordships for ever. From this place they departed for Douroun: our men besieg'd this castle, and made several assaults; and at length having taken it, put the governor and the troops of Veli to the sword.

The court having quitted Douroun, went to Tchilaoun, a country full of villages; and having cross'd the river at Jorjana, encamp'd at Chasuman, where the Hezares and Sedes had express orders not to separate from their squadrons without leave, on pain of death; that they might employ themselves in building bridges on rivulets and rivers, and doing other useful works, as cutting down trees in forests, making causeways, and clearing the roads.

The vanguard of the two armys meeting, engag'd in a bloody fight. Hadgi Mahmoud Chah Yefouri gave marks of an extraordinary valor and strength; but he was wounded in the hand with a sword. Akitmur, and his son Cheik Timur, fought like brave men, and made the enemy's ranks give way. These skirmishes continu'd twenty days: but on the twentieth,

as



Book II. as the army of Timur was passing the bridge of Dervich, the Emir Veli advanc'd, and fought with heroic valor and resolution. But because the power God gives to armys, to whom he designs the victory, is more than human, this unfortunate prince was vanquish'd, and oblig'd to fly. Our soldiers closely pursu'd him, took several of the bravest of his army, whom they put to death, as also many others, who not finding means to escape, serv'd to fill the country with the dead and wounded.

The troops, after this compleat victory, enter'd the camp, and then that all necessary precautions for their security might be observ'd, the colonels and captains had orders to cause intrenchments of earth to be cast up round their own regiments, to make a fort of ramparts with their bucklers, and before these ramparts to fix stakes, which might serve as palisadoes.

The Emir Veli attacks the army during night.

The day being almost gone, Timur, who thro his great experience always foresaw danger, order'd thirty of the best companys of his army to lie in ambuscade in a certain place. When night was come, the Emir Veli, accompany'd by a great number of soldiers of Mazendran, sall'y'd out of the fortress to attack the camp. For which purpose his men made the great cry on the side of the right wing of the army, where the prince Miran Chah was encamp'd. Veli was marching to fall on him, and being arriv'd at the trenches, they struck with their swords and lances against the bucklers and palisadoes which had been fix'd there, tho not without the loss of many of their men who fell one upon another into the ditches.

Then the prince Miran Chah march'd against 'em in person, and order'd that all the troops he commanded shou'd let fly a shower of ar-

rows

rows together; and at same time the thirty companys all prepar'd to fight with sword in hand, and rushing with fury out of the ambuscade, fell upon the enemys; and as the Emir Veli, among other artifices had caus'd a great many pits to be dug in those roads, in which they had drove stakes before they fill'd 'em with water, part of his army, in the flight, fell into these wells, and there miserably perish'd.

The emperor finding the Emir Aicoutmur absent, demanded where he was; he was answer'd, that he was gone to pursue those of the enemy's rear who had fled. In the mean while the army, which march'd all the rest of the night, found themselves in the morning at the town of Ester Abad, capital of Mazendran, where they burnt and destroy'd every thing, without sparing either old men, women, or children, or even sucking infants.

This war happen'd in the month of Chawal in the year of the Hegira 786. Fear seiz'd the Emir Veli, who the same night, carrying with him his wives and children, and guarded by some foldiers, went to Damgan by the way of Langaru; he left 'em in the fortress of Chir-decouh, and at length march'd to Rei. The invincible Timur sent troops under the command of Godadad Housseini, Cheik Ali Behader, Omar Abbas, Comari Einac, and other captains, to pursue him; and they made such haste, that they almost overtook him at Rei. This prince was so afraid of losing his life, that he went into the woods of the country of Rusteindar, which were inaccessible, because of their thickness, and the height of some mountains which were near; and at length escap'd from his enemys who pursu'd him.

The

Book II.

The Emir Veli was son of Cheik Ali Bifoud, one of the Emirs of Taghitmur Can; and at the time that the Serbedals were so daring as to bathe their hands in the blood of this king, Veli, who was present at the assembly, fled to Nesa, and his father was massacred with his master. This young lord having found means to make himself powerful in this town, at length went to Ester Abad, of which he made himself master; insomuch that Locman Padi-chah, son of king Taghitmur, being frighten'd by Veli, fled, and wander'd about as a vagabond from country to country, till at length lifting himself in the service of Timur, (who conquer'd Ester Abad) he receiv'd from his liberal hands the government of this town.

---

### C H A P. XLIX.

*Timur marches into the province of Irac Agemi.*

THE emperor order'd the Emirs Acbouga and Outchcara Behader to pass the winter at Ester Abad with the ammunition of the army; and out of every ten men he chose three to accompany him. He march'd towards the kingdom of Rei, and his troops were no sooner arriv'd in that country, than Sultan Ahmet Cheik Avis Gelair<sup>4</sup>, who was at Sultania, astonish'd at the march of the emperor, fortify'd the castle of this town, and garison'd

---

<sup>4</sup> The grandson of Sultan Avis, son of Buzurk Hassan, whose wife Bagdadcatun, daughter of the Emir Tchouban, Sultan Aboufaid had espous'd. Buzurk Hassan was the first of the Ilkanians.

it with his best soldiers under the command of his son, nam'd Acbouga; and then fled towards Tauris. In the mean while Omar Abbas, at the head of sixty horse, march'd to Sultania, to gain intelligence of the state of the place; and his journey was so successful, that he got there, notwithstanding the terrible snows and excessive cold. Some days before, the enemy having news of his march, resolv'd to fly; whereupon they took with 'em their young prince Acbouga, and departed with all expedition for Tauris: but they were not all gone out of the fortrefs when Omar Abbas arriv'd with his sixty soldiers; who with intrepid courage, enter'd the place sword in hand, and made himself master of it. He employ'd all his industry to preserve it, till he shou'd receive orders from the emperor who was at Rei, to whom he sent Irmakchi to advertise him of this happy conquest.

## CH A P. L.

### *The emperor Timur marches to Sultania.*

AT the beginning of the spring Timur set out for Sultania; and in the mean while Sarek Adel, one of the greatest lords of the court of Cheik Avis, whom Chah Chuja had heretofore brought from Sultania, was summon'd by the emperor to court, being then in the service of Sultan Zein Elabeddin, son of Chah Chuja, who died in the year of the Hegira 786, which number was compos'd out of the letters of the epitaph made on him, which was,

1384.

VOL. I.

S

Hai-



Book II. *Haifez Chah Chuja* : It is pity so great a man  
 as Chah Chuja shou'd die.

Timur, as a singular favor, order'd this lord to be near his person ; who to obey this order, departed from Chiraz with expedition, to have the honor to kiss the carpet of the throne ; where he was no sooner arriv'd, than he was distinguish'd by the emperor's goodness, and favor'd with many presents ; besides which Timur gave him the government of the province of Sultania, and the countrys dependent upon it, after having order'd Mehemed Sultan Chah to leave him in those quarters with an army, that he might make himself master of the neighbouring countrys.

An. Dom.  
 1385.

After this expedition, which was in the year of the Hegira 787, and in the year of the Leopard, Timur returning from Sultania, laden with the glory he had acquir'd by his victory, enter'd into the mountains of Rusteindar. The princes of this country not only had not strength to resist him, nor prudence enough to come before Timur ; but they sought safety by flight before the army arriv'd there. By this means the country was brought in subjection to Timur, and his officers easily made themselves masters of it ; the troops pillag'd it on all sides, and the soldiers were enrich'd with the booty.

The Emir Veli, who was retir'd into a place nam'd Yalous, was so terrify'd at this action, that he fled ; and our victorious emperor turn'd upon the towns of Amol and Sarye, with design to make himself master of them, as soon as he cou'd come at 'em by the way of the mountains of Couhestan. But Seid Kemaleddin and Seid Razieddin, who were the princes of these places, to save themselves from the evil which threaten'd 'em, sent their Nai-  
 bes,

bes, that is, their lieutenants, with presents of Chap. 51.  
precious stones and gold dust, to lay at the  
feet of the emperor, with a considerable tribute  
to be paid him : so that by their lieutenants be-  
ing admitted to take an oath of fidelity to the  
emperor, they coin'd gold money which they  
honor'd with the name and surname of the in-  
vincible Timur; and to raise his glory as high  
as they were able, they made prayers for him  
in all the mosques of their country. At length  
Timur commanded 'em to obey Locman Padi-  
cha, to whom he had given the principality of  
Ester Abad, that so he might oblige 'em to  
preserve their fidelity and obedience, and not  
undertake any thing which this prince shou'd  
not approve.

---

C H A P. LI.

*Timur returns to Samarcand, the capital  
of his empire.*

WHEN the officers of Timur had got  
full possession of the provinces of Ma-  
zendran, Rei, and Rustembar, as far as Sulta-  
nia, the imperial standard march'd to the seat  
of the empire. When the Court had cross'd the  
Gihon, and were arriv'd at Samarcand, the  
inhabitants wish'd all happiness and prosperity  
to the emperor at his arrival; he there pass'd  
the summer in the pleasures of the season, and  
the winter at Zendgir Serai, in the delights of  
conversation and entertainments. During this  
winter, Tocatmich Can sent to Tauris, by the  
way of Derbend, an army of near ninety thou-  
sand men, who were for the most part infidels,  
of a cruel and merciless nature, and who had  
S 2 been

Book II. been so inur'd to war, that they were almost cover'd over with wounds and scars. In this army were twelve Aglens', princes of the royal blood of Touchi, the chief of whom was Bic Poulad; there were also several Emirs, as Aïsa Bei, Yagli Bei, Cazanchi, and others: they march'd to Chirouan, and being arriv'd in Azerbijana, block'd up Tauris.

The governor of this city was not able to manage his affairs in such a conjuncture; whereupon the inhabitants, thro the counsel of the Emir Veli, who after his defeat retir'd into this town with Mahmoud Calcali, fortify'd the walls of this and some other neighbouring places. They repuls'd our troops with vigor, and defended themselves courageously for eight days: but at length the army of Tocatmich Can, being more numerous than that of the besieg'd, made it self master of the town; and the Emir Veli, with Mahmoud Calcali, fled to the country of Calcal. The Can's army pillag'd the place, and exercis'd all imaginable crueltys and abominations: the desolation was universal, and all the riches, treasures, and raritys, which had been amass'd there during a great many years, were consum'd in less than six days in this dreadful pillage. After the army had entirely seiz'd on this booty, and bound all the slaves, it return'd before the winter was past, by the way it came.

The emperor having advice of this devastation, was incens'd at the violence and tyranny which had been exercis'd against the Mussulmans; in the mean time, he resolv'd to conquer the kingdoms of Iran, which he was oblig'd to by his laws, because this great country

---

\* All the princes of the blood of Touchi are surnam'd Aglens: not

not being at that time govern'd by any prince who was powerful enough to execute his orders there, every thing was in confusion, by reason of the different sentiments of those who commanded. Chap. 52.

And as the ambition of neighbouring princes daily encreas'd, he was expos'd to the like evils with those which, as we just now mention'd, happen'd to Tauris.

## C H A P. LII.

*Timur enters the kingdom of Iran, where he stays three years successively.*

**I**N the year of the Hegira 788, which answers to that of the Hare; Timur having resolv'd to make war in Iran, caus'd orders to be publish'd, that the Tavachis <sup>6</sup> shon'd get together, with all expedition, the troops of the army, and that the soldiers of all the provinces, with their officers, should come immediately to court. An. Dom. 1386.

This royal order was every where executed, and the army being in a condition to depart, Timur nam'd the Emir Solyman Chah, the son of Daoud, and the Emir Abbas, with two others, whom he left at Samarcand, to govern the empire of Transoxiana in his absence.

The emperor having cross'd the Gihon, happily arriv'd at Firoz Couh, after many days march; and then Seid Kemaleddin, prince of Sari, sent his son Seid Cayaseddin to court, with

<sup>6</sup> A kind of commissarys for levying the troops, like the Chaoux among the Turks.



Book II. many soldiers to guard him, to be enroll'd among the other officers. About this time also our monarch, who was able to discover the most secret affairs of state, and understood the carriage of the princes and governors of countrys, had advice of the actions of Malek Azzeddin, prince of the little country of Lor, of the great crimes his insolent people had been guilty of, and of the robbery he had committed on the highways with impunity, it not being long since his subjects had beat and plunder'd a caravan, which was going thro their country in pilgrimage to Mecca.

Timur had no sooner heard of this abominable action, than he resolv'd at the same time to revenge the pilgrims on these robbers; and when he had advice of the new effects of their further malice, he thought himself oblig'd to chastise these villains, and to deliver the Mahometans from their tyranny: upon which he order'd that of every ten men of his army, two of the bravest shou'd be chosen, and arm'd to the best advantage; which being executed, this prince quitted his camp, and mounted his horse at the head of his flying camp, compos'd of his most valiant soldiers, and march'd with all expedition to Lorestan. As soon as he was arriv'd there, he caus'd Ouroudgurd and the neighbouring places to be plunder'd; and at length he made himself master of Corram Abad, a fortress almost impregnable, whither the robbers of that country were retir'd. He caus'd it entirely to be raz'd, and the greatest part of 'em being taken, they were flung headlong from the tops of the mountains.

At the same time Akitmur Behader, Omar Abbas, and Mehemed son of Sultan Chah, fell

sick

sick thro the intemperateness of the air, or rather by the decree of providence which sent 'em from this world into the other; and Coja Ali Muaid Serbedal, who was wounded in battel, died also some time after. Chap. 53.

As soon as Timur had brought into subjection this little country of Lor, and deliver'd it from the disorders of these robbers, he de-camp'd, and rejoin'd his army, which came to meet him in the plain of Nehavend.

### C H A P. LIII.

*Timur marches to Azerbijana, or the country of the antient Medes.*

**T**HIS monarch having advice, that the Sultan Ahmed Gelair, who had rais'd troops, was departed from Bagdad to Tauris, again left his camp with some troops under the conduct of Cheik Ali Behader, and the same day march'd with expedition at the head of his army to that city.

But Sultan Ahmed hearing of his march, was not willing to wait his coming, but fled, and made haste to Bagdad.

Timur sent Seifeddin, with the other Emirs, and troops to pursue Ahmed. When they had overtaken his army, he was so terrify'd, that abandoning his led-horses, baggage, and all his furniture, he fled; and as soon as our soldiers had sufficiently pillag'd his baggage, they made the great cry *Souroun*, and return'd.

In the mean while Elias Coja, son of Cheik Ali Behader, having march'd by Nakhivan with a small number of horse; found Ahmed in

Book II. the salt-pits of Nemezar, where this Sultan, guarded by several troops, made a brave resistance, by which many were wounded on both sides. Elias Coja himself receiv'd a wound, which disabled him; and this accident sav'd Ahmed from the danger his life was in. This captain's wound, join'd with his bad constitution, caus'd in him a violent distemper, which had kill'd him, if the good fortune which always attends Timur's officers, had not favor'd his recovery; and at length he was heal'd, except that he remain'd lame, the distemper being got into his foot.

On this occasion there were many massacres and pillagings at <sup>7</sup> Nakchivan. Comari Einac having receiv'd some displeasure from the government, set fire to the great dome of the palace of Ziaelmulc, to revenge himself; and in it there perish'd, in a miserable manner, fifteen persons, who were choak'd by the smoke of the straw which was brought thither.

Timur having entirely brought into subjection the kingdom of Azerbaijan, went to encamp in the neighbourhood of Chenob Gazane, where Seid Razi Coja, Hadgi Mehemed, Bendghir Cattat, Cadi Cayafeddin, Cadi Abdellatif, and other great lords and Cheriffs of this country, came to make their submissions to him; and afterwards a sum of mony was impos'd on the inhabitants of Tauris<sup>8</sup>, as usual, for having saved their lives; which the receivers collected.

The court and army staid at Tauris, and the neighbouring places during the summer. Timur

---

<sup>7</sup> A town of Azerbaijan, long. 81. 15. lat. 38. 40.

<sup>8</sup> Capital of Azerbaijan, long. 82. lat. 38.

commanded Sarek Adel <sup>9</sup> to be put to death, whom they cast down from a wall, after having pillag'd his house; and then the most skilful masters in every art and science were sent to Samarcand. Chap. 53.

In the mean time Mahmoud Calcali seiz'd in the province of Calcal on the Emir Veli, who, flying to save his life, wander'd from country to country. He was deliver'd to Comari Einnac, who put him to death, in conformity to the laws of Genghiz Can; and his head was laid at the foot of the throne. Death of Emir Veli.

In autumn, the government of Tauris was given to Mehemed Sultan Chah, and the imperial standard was carry'd to Nakchiran. The army then march'd to Merend <sup>1</sup>, and to the defile of mountains nam'd Dez; then it cross'd the river Ourous\* on the bridge of Ziaulmulc, <sup>\* Araxes.</sup> and encamp'd on its banks. There is not a more magnificent bridge in the world than this; it is in the territory of Nakchivan near the town of Youlaha, where the Ourous run at the foot of a mountain. The bridge is built of stone, and is of vast strength: it is flat at top: the stones are so well join'd, and all the building is so just and perfect, that the most skilful architect can't view it without admiration. Among the arches of this bridge there are two so high and broad, that the breadth of one is more than sixty Ghez <sup>2</sup>, and of the other more than fifty five; they having been measur'd at low water: and because when the waters are highest the stream of this river

<sup>9</sup> Adel fled for refuge from the court of the Ilkhanian kings to that of Timur.

<sup>1</sup> A town of Azerbijan, long, 80. 45. lat. 37. 50.

<sup>2</sup> Ghez in Persian signifies a cubit.



Book II. runs thro the great arch, which is contiguous to the mountain, the lower part being empty, they have there made a Caravanſera. At the two ends of the bridge there are gates made out of the ſame rock, of unparallel'd beauty.

The army having decamp'd from this poſt, arriv'd at the citadel of Corni, which they immediately attack'd, and took by aſſault. They ſeiz'd on Cheik Haſſan the governor, and brought him, with a chain about his neck, to the emperor.

They afterwards came to the town of Surmalu, ſituate on the bank of the Ourous : and having inveſted it on all ſides, they took it by ſtorm ſword in hand. They immediately raz'd it, and ſeiz'd on Toutan Turcoman, the leader of this people, whom they bound with cords, and laid before the throne.

From Surmalu the army came to Cars, a town ſtrongly built with ſtone, and which in that country was thought impregnable. A certain Turcoman, nam'd Pirouz Baç, was governor of this country : The ſtrength of the place, and the difficulty of coming at it, becauſe of its ſituation, made him proud ; inſomuch that after having well fortify'd the citadel and walls of the town, he imagin'd himſelf able to reſiſt the army of the emperor, who order'd all the machines to be got ready, and that as ſoon as the Gourghes ſhou'd be beat in all the quarters, and the great cry Souroun made, the place ſhou'd be inveſted on every ſide.

The enemy wanted not courage and reſolution to defend himſelf : tho he was briſkly aſſaulted, yet he gave marks of his intrepidity and valor ; but at length perceiving that victory declar'd her ſelf by degrees for the imperial army, Pirouz Baç ſubmitted with a thouſand

testimonys of his obedience, tho the wrath of Chap. 54.  
the victorious troops cou'd not be appeas'd but  
by the pillage of the town, which was at length  
raz'd to the very foundations.

## C H A P. LIV.

*Timur enters Georgia at the head of his army.  
The description of the Persian way of hunt-  
ing; as also of the Gerke and Nerke.*

GOD hath recommended to Mahomet to excite the Mussulmans to make war on the enemys of their religion, because it is the most excellent of all actions; and the Alcoran praises above all others, those who risk their fortunes and lives in such a war.

This was Timur's only aim, from the beginning of his rise to his death; but he particularly executed it at this time by beginning a war which he had a long while projected.

His zeal exciting him to march to Teflis<sup>?</sup>, when he was decamp'd from before Cars, he mounted his horse in a rising ground nam'd Ac Bogra, at a time when the violenc of the cold was extraordinary, and the air was full of ice and frost.

He continued his march by Kitou, and at length arriv'd at Teflis. The strength of the walls of this town had render'd the Georgians proud and insolent, in imitation of the other infidels; insomuch that confiding in the citadel, which they had very well fortify'd, they prepar'd for a vigorous defence.

? Capital of the kingdom of Georgia, long. 83. lat. 43.

Book II. The emperor gave orders for the siege. The Emirs and other officers prepar'd with all expedition the arms and machines necessary for assaulting the place. After having put in order the wings, the body, and other parts of the army, they invest-ed the town; and at the same time cry'd out, *Allahou Ecker*, God is great, which is the cry call'd Souroun, already spoken of. Then the emperor took his sword in his hand, and our soldiers cover'd with their great bucklers made a general assault on the town. All the brave men of the army gave marks of an extraordinary valor; and apply'd themselves so briskly to their duty, that thro the assistance of heaven this royal town was conquer'd, and prince Malek Ipocrates \* taken prisoner, and brought to the emperor: he was bound in chains, and carefully secur'd.

Explica-  
tion of the  
Gerke and  
Nerke, in  
the Per-  
sians hunt-  
ing.

After this conquest, the emperor departed from Teflis, and resolv'd to follow the diversion of hunting: so the Emirs receiv'd his orders, and the troops form'd the Nerke, that is, being rang'd in a circle to hinder the passage of the beasts, they surrounded a great space of ground full of plains and hills; and some time after was the Gerke, that is, the men who form'd this circle, constantly approaching one another, the stags, deers, lions and other wild beasts of all sorts, were shut up and brought into a narrow compass.

When the emperor, the princes his sons, and other princes of the royal blood, were enter'd into the circle according to the customary rules of the chase, and had taken their diversion in killing many wild beasts, the soldiers who enter'd in

---

\* King of Georgia, a Christian, who afterwards turn'd Ma-  
hometan.

their turn into the inclosure, took all they cou'd Chap. 58  
with their hands, of which they kill'd the best, and let go the others: in short, there was more game kill'd than the troops cou'd carry away, and they were oblig'd to abandon a great part to the mercy of the birds of prey, and other savage beasts \*.

## CHAP. LV.

### *Timur returns to Carabagh.*

**T**IMUR departed from this country with such good fortune, that thro the divine assistance, his troops in the road, and the neighbouring places, made themselves masters of many towns and castles, which were in the hands of the infidels: they releas'd the country from their tyranny; and having pillag'd all the places which these men had with so much difficulty conquer'd, they enrich'd themselves with a vast booty.

The victorious army encamp'd at Cheki, from whence the emperor sent several bodys of troops against the infidels. The Emir Gehan Chah had orders to fall upon the Lekezians, who were entirely pillag'd and the major part slain.

The Emir Mehemed Dervich Berlas enter'd with a body of troops into the mountains of Cheki, where he took many fugitive rebels, whom he put in irons, making 'em slaves; and the soldiers seiz'd on every thing they had.

---

\* A more compleat account of this way of hunting practis'd among the Eastern nations, may be seen in the history of Genghiz Can, Book III. ch. 7. p. 260.— 266.



Book II.

Argoun Chah, and Ramadan Coja, with other troops march'd with expedition to the province of Tencgout, where they perform'd several warlike exploits: they kill'd a great many men, plunder'd all the places, and carry'd away so many captives, that all the country was surpriz'd.

The Emir Mehemed Bei, and the Emir Moussa, also brought their troops into the country of Acadgeb, and made themselves masters of it: and Timur at the head of a victorious army caus'd the standard of the holy war which he undertook, to be fix'd at the foot of mount Alburz, where he made known the purity of his intentions, and the strength of his faith, by hymns and psalms, which he sung to the praise of God, in token of the triumphs of the mussalman religion, and the destruction of that of the infidels.

The Emirs at length return'd, after they had fully executed their commission, by the conquest of the castles and towns of the infidels, the greatest part of which were razed, for the chastisement of their disorders, and by the booty which they brought away. These generals join'd the imperial camp in a place nam'd Cabale, or Cambale. They also made themselves masters of the red castle, and razed it: from thence they came to Carabagh Surcab \*, from whence the army march'd to encamp on the banks of the river Cor †, over which they built a bridge, which was carry'd on by the means of floats of reeds and little sticks, which the emperor had order'd to be made. He cross'd this bridge at the head of the army, and march'd to Berda ‡, the inhabitants of which submitted without making any defence.

\* Calafurk.

† Cyrus.

§ In the province of Aran, between the Black-sea and the Caspian, joining Georgia, long. 83. lat. 40. 30.

Timur being at Carabagh, order'd Ipocrates, Chap. 55. prince of Teflis, to be brought before him, whom he had before imprison'd and put in irons. He had a conference with this prince concerning the mahometan religion, invited him to be a Mussulman, and gave him a thousand good reasons to persuade him to it; and he communicated to him so much light in relation to the law of Mahomet, that thro a special grace, that of the vocation enter'd into his mind, which had been hitherto full of darkness. In short, Ipocrates quitted his error, and turn'd Mussulman. He declar'd there was no other god than God; and that Mahomet was not simply a man as others, but that he was the envoy of God, and the seal of the prophets: and in fine, having confess'd the divine unity, he was rank'd among the true Mahometans.

This man had a coat of mail, which was reported to have been that which the prophet David had forg'd in a smith's shop, and which he had made proof of by several times soaking and drying it\*.

He presented this piece to Timur, with other curiosities remarkable for their antiquity. This monarch receiv'd 'em, and not only permitted him to be of the number of his favorites, but thro the zeal which he had of winning over to him the hearts of others, he permitted him to return home, after having honor'd him with several presents. All this good treatment from Timur, was the cause that most part of the people of this kingdom embrac'd the mahometan religion.

---

\* In this passage we see a specimen of those trifling ideas the Mahometans have of ancient history: there are many more ridiculous in the following part of this work.

Book II.

At this time the Emir Cheik Ibrahim, prince of Chirvan<sup>7</sup>, who by his power, reputation, honesty, and noble descent, was distinguish'd among the kings of that time, came to court; and as he was a man of good sense, he submitted entirely to the emperor; and by this means he had the honor to kiss the carpet of the throne. He offer'd handsom presents; and among other things several parcels of rarities, each of which, according to custom, was compos'd of nine pieces.

Among the other galant actions of this prince to render himself agreeable to Timur, the following was most pleasing to this monarch: After having brought out all the parcels of rarities, which shou'd have been nine pieces of each sort, he presented him with eight captives which he had bought; and as some one said that the ninth piece was wanting, he presented himself to make up the number: which so highly pleas'd Timur, that he not only loaded him with favors and gifts, but even gave him the kingdom of Chirvan with its dependences, and the title of king of Chirvan, under which title he became famous in the world.

Timur also receiv'd tokens of submission from the sovereigns of Ghilan<sup>8</sup>, who for several ages, confiding in the strength of their walls, and the difficulty of access to their mountains and woods, as also in the number of their marshes and sloughs, had not obey'd any king. The princes who then reign'd sent their children and

---

<sup>7</sup> A province near Armenia, which has for its capital Chamaki, long. 84. 30. lat. 40. 50.

<sup>8</sup> A province on the south shore of the Caspian sea, whose capital is Derbayend, long. 87. 20. lat. 36. 10.

officers with presents to the foot of the throne, who promis'd for their masters not only a ready obedience, but also the payment of a tribute.

Then the Cheik Ali Behader, who had the care of the emperor's baggage, arriv'd at Carabagh by the way of Ardevil; and the emperor pass'd the winter on the banks of the river Orous.

---

C H A P. LVI.

*The march of Timur to Berda. The motion of the army of Capchac. Defeat of the troops of Tocatmich Can.*

AS soon as winter was gone, that is, at the beginning of the year of the Hegira 789, which among the Moguls is call'd the year of the Crocodile, the invincible Timur march'd to Berda, having receiv'd advice that Tocatmich Can of Capchac had revolted, and brought an army into the field, which he had sent by the way of Derbend<sup>2</sup>, contrary to the counsel of Ali Bei Goncograde<sup>1</sup>, Oronc Timur, and Acbouga Behrine<sup>1</sup>. These three Emirs, famous in the empire of Touchi Can, were remarkable for their prudence, candor, and nobleness of mind; they daily endeavor'd to shew the falsity of the sentiments of Tocatmich Can, and represented to him the way he ought to take: they counsel'd him to preserve the rights of the emperor Timur

An. Dom.  
1387.

---

<sup>1</sup> A town of Armenia, on the W. shore of the Caspian Sea, long. 89. lat. 43. It is also call'd Babelabouab.

<sup>2</sup> Tribes of Tartars in Capchac.



in full force, to treat his officers with civility, and to acknowledg the obligations due to this monarch, who had put him in possession of the empire of Touchi, and of the throne of his ancestors, by his power, favors, and extraordinary goodness, without which he cou'd never have attain'd to that grandeur and majesty to which he is at present rais'd; that thus he was oblig'd always to remember the favors he had receiv'd from this great prince, and to give marks of his gratitude, since the thoughts of it always occasion'd joy, and it is sometimes the sole cause of the rise of a kingdom. "Who knows, say they, but that in some change of fortune, (from which God preserve the Can!) he must not be oblig'd to have recourse to the protection of the great monarch Timur, as to an asylum?" In short, the sincerity of these lords, who only sought his good, was of great service to the kingdom, till Cazanchi, who had kill'd his own father, found means to approach him, together with Ali Bei: but as soon as these disturbers of the state had an easy access, Tocatmich, at their persuasion, turning from the right way, broke off the good correspondence he had kept with Timur, proudly declar'd himself his enemy, and brought an army into the field, which he sent into Azerbijana.

Timur had speedy notice of these things; and there was no sooner advice brought him that they perceiv'd on the other side of the river Cor a great body of strange troops, than he order'd Chaik Ali Behader, Aicoutmur, Osman Abbas, and other Emirs, to cross the river, and to observe the disposition of affairs in that country, and to inform him of it; tho at the same time he prohibited their attacking the troops which were seen there, if they belong'd to the army of

Tocatmich, because of the treaty made with that prince. When these Emirs were departed from the camp, Timur, excited by his good fortune, sent after them the Mirza Miran Chah, Hadgi Seifeddin, and other princes, with troops to assist 'em, in case they shou'd be attack'd. In short, those who went first, coming up to the enemy's army, knew it to belong to Tocatmich Can: wherefore upon serious reflection they dissembled their desire of fighting, and immediately retir'd; but the enemys attributing this action to cowardice, grew proud, and fell upon 'em, discharging all their arrows. Then our men perceiving themselves forc'd to it, bravely defended their lives: and a bloody fight ensu'd, tho' our Emirs were not prepar'd for it. The field of battel was near a wood, which hinder'd our men from fighting after their own manner, so that they cou'd not dogg the enemys, as they desir'd; and this situation was the reason that about forty horse were kill'd, and our brave men, who were always admir'd for their valor, were put to the rout.

In the mean time the Mirza Miran Chah, who had cross'd the river of Cor, arriv'd with the troops he commanded: he saw this tragical spectacle, and at the same time fell upon the enemy. All his brave men fought 'em both on the right and left, killing all they met; insomuch that not being able to sustain the attacks of our warriors, they shamefully fled. Our soldiers pursu'd 'em as far as Derbend: they took a great many prisoners, whom the Mirza Miran Chah put in irons, and sent to court. Choride, brother of Mobacher, who was wounded in the fight, was of that number, and was brought to the imperial camp: but Timur affecting an air of gravity and resolution, did not only not punish

Book II. the wickedness of these miserable people, but rather chose to pardon 'em. He enquir'd of 'em concerning Tocatmich Can, as he had done before the last action, and shew'd the good will he bore to him by these words: "How comes it that your prince, whom I regard as my son, uses me so ill, as to send an army into this country, without any provocation given him? For you know there is between us a certain right of fatherhood and sonship. And why is he the occasion of the loss of so many thousands of Mussulmans? It is requisite that for the future he abstain from this method of acting, which will bring shame upon him; and on the contrary, he must punctually observe the articles of alliance which we have sworn to, instead of rekindling the war which was lain to asleep." After our monarch had thus spoken to 'em, he set 'em at liberty; ordering 'em clothes and mony, and a guide to conduct 'em; that they shou'd pass thro the midst of the army, and be sent back to Capchac, where they ordinarily dwelt.

The verses which the celebrated Cheik Sadi<sup>1</sup> applies to God, may be properly refer'd here to Timur: "How can he deprive his friends of his favors, who so liberally distributes 'em among his enemys?"

After the Mirza Miran Chah, had repass'd the river Cor, he return'd to the camp by the banks of that river, and at length decamp'd to march to Gheustche TENGHIZ, which signifies the blue sea.

---

<sup>1</sup> The author of *Gulistan*, or *Rosarium Politicum*, a book of morality, translated into latin by Gentius.

C H A P. LVII.

*The arrival of the empress Serai Mulk Canum,  
and the princes her sons.*

W H E N the court was at Gheutche Tenghiz, the emperor had advice that Serai Mulk Canum was coming thither with the young princes, the Mirza Charoc and the Mirza Calil, his sons, from Samarcand. He was so overjoy'd, that leaving his court at Gheutche Tenghiz, he took horse, and went with expedition to meet 'em. He met this charming company at Merend, where the princes, with their mother, sprinkled, according to custom, gold and precious stones upon his head, in so great quantity that the officers were fatigu'd in gathering 'em up; and they then spread out their rich presents, compos'd of the most singular rarities. Afterwards the emperor departed from Merend to return to his camp, and at length march'd to the castle of Alengic, where there was a fortress commanded by the lieutenants of Sultan Ahmed.

Three days after his arrival, he order'd that the Emirs with their soldiers, shou'd in the night ascend the mountain which join'd this place, and as soon as it was day attack it. They executed this order, and making themselves masters of the lower citadel, with sword in hand they ruin'd it. Those who guarded it, being afraid, fled to the top of the fortress, the inhabitants of which were so bold as to refuse to surrender, tho they wanted water. Yet at length thirst reduc'd 'em to despair; for being ready to perish, they capitulated, and promis'd with an oath to



Book II. depart out of the place, and give it up to the besiegers; which was the reason that the troops ceas'd attacking it, and came down from the mountain. But the minute the besieg'd were ready to go out, there came a great cloud, follow'd by a large shower of rain, which in twenty four hours fill'd all the cisterns and reservatorys of water; and they had no sooner quench'd their thirst, then they broke their word and treaty.

Timur hereupon order'd Mehemed Mireke and Outchcará Behader to begin the siege; and this prince retir'd into the camp. He had sent before this enterprize the Cheik Ali Behader against the fortress of Bayazaid; but as soon as he arriv'd there, not thinking himself strong enough to carry the place, he was follow'd by the Emirs Hadgi Seifeddin and Aicoutmur, at the head of a great detachment. At length, they besieg'd the place together, attack'd it on all sides, beat down the walls, and turn'd back the water; insomuch that in a short time having taken and raz'd it, they put the governor in chains, and brought him to the emperor.

### C H A P. LVIII.

*Timur's army marches against Cara Mehemed, prince of the Turcomans.*

**A**T this time the emperor Timur having advised that the Turcomans were always molesting the Mussulmans, whom they attack'd not only in the ordinary caravans, but even in those of Mecca, to which the name of holy was given; and that no one cou'd pass safely by the places where they dwelt; he departed from the province of Nakchivan, and march'd towards 'em,

em, after having sent orders to Mehemed Mi-Chap. 58.  
reke, whom he left at the siege of Alengic, to come immediately to the camp. He also order'd in the road, that the baggage shou'd march to Alatac, and stay there.

Then the emperor march'd with expedition at the head of his army, and as soon as he arriv'd at the castle of Bayazid, formerly call'd the fort of Aidin, the troops pillag'd it, and plunder'd all that the inhabitants had left in that country. Passing further, they arriv'd at the castle of Avenic, where Mefer, son of Cara Mehemed, resided: they pillag'd all they found belonging to the Turcomans in the mountains and plains of those provinces, and in the neighbouring places.

From thence they march'd to the town of Erzerum\*, which they took the same day they came; and Timur encamp'd on the banks of the river of Chiachour, from whence he sent an ambassador to Arzendgian<sup>†</sup>, to persuade Taharten, the sovereign of it, to make his submission to him. The ambassador was receiv'd with many honors and ceremonys. Taharten gave him a favorable reception, and treated him with all imaginable respect; he obey'd the emperor, and consented to pay the Carage<sup>‡</sup>; and having charm'd the ambassador by a thousand civilitys, he sent him back to his master.

Then our prince appointed three of his best squadrons, under the command of Mirza Miran Chah to go in search of Cara Mehemed<sup>§</sup>, father

\* The same as Van, situate in the upper Armenia.

† A town formerly call'd Arzen-Arroum, and Erzerom, situate in Bilad-Arroum, i. e. Anarolia, or lesser Asia; long. 77. lat. 39. 40.

‡ A town of Arroum, long. 74. lat. 38.

§ A tribute which the Mahometan princes exact from the Christians and Jews, who dwell in their dominions.


¶ The chief of the monarchy of the black-sheep.

Book II. of Cara Yousef Turcoman. This prince enter'd with his brave warriors into the lands of these disturbers of the people's quiet; and after having plunder'd their cattel, horses, camels, sheep, and other goods, made the greatest part of their wives and daughters slaves, whom they brought away, and then rejoin'd the court.

Mehemed Mireke was also sent into this country on the same account with a body of men: the road which he took brought him by chance into the mountains, where he found a narrow passage stopt up, into which he march'd. The enemy perceiving him, oppos'd his passage; so that our brave men were oblig'd to draw their swords. Nevertheless, thro Timur's good fortune, they escap'd out of this dangerous place after a bloody conflict; and return'd with expedition to the camp.

Soon after, Cheik Ali, son of Argon Berlas, Iebalcha Bargougi, and Yetlic Couthin, all valiant and intrepid men, put themselves at the head of another squadron, to go in search of Cara Mehemed: they march'd every where with extraordinary diligence, and at length discover'd him; where he was retir'd to the top of an inaccessible mountain among steep rocks: nevertheless they attack'd him; our men did surprizing actions, and Lala Coja, who had been the emperor's governor, was slain in the fight. At length the enemy got upon the ridge of the mountain, where he was out of our reach; upon which the Emirs thinking all their attacks wou'd be in vain, immediately return'd, and brought their troops to the imperial camp.

Timur then sent thither some other chosen troops under the conduct of Gehan Chah Behader; this captain also enter'd their country, which he plunder'd, bringing away a great number

ber of their cattel, arms, and other goods, Chap. 58. which were distributed among the troops, who return'd to the camp in triumph. 

In the mean while Chah Malek, son of Caya-feddin Berlas, who was gone another way without the emperor's order, was found dead in a desert, where he had been slain by these robbers.

The emperor decamp'd, and march'd to the plain of Mouche\*, all the houses of which he caus'd to be plunder'd. He at length arriv'd at the city of Eclat', where the people submitted to him; and after having given 'em skilful commanders, he departed for the town of Adalgiaouz, the prince of which came out to meet Timur, to whom he submitted; and having the good fortune to kiss the carpet, he laid at the emperor's feet as much gold and precious stones as he was able; he also made other presents, and at length being assisted by his good fortune, he was rank'd among the officers of this prince, who according to his wonted clemency loaded him with his favors; he not only caress'd him, but again confirm'd him in the principality of his country and all his lands.

Timur continu'd his march by the lake of Van, and march'd to Bend Mahi\*, from thence to Alatac, where the baggage and body of the

---

\* A village at the foot of a mountain, from whence springs a little river; it has a plain twelve days journey long, call'd Sahrai Mouche, i. e. the plain of Mouche. It is in the lower Armenia, two days journey from Mia Farekin, and three from Eclat; long. 73. 50. lat. 39. 50.

† The capital of lower Armenia, long. 75. 50. lat. 39. 20.

\* A place from whence a little river discharges it self into the lake of Van, and where are caught a great many little fish call'd Tarric.

The author of this work hath wrote a particular description of the lake of Van.



Book II. army waited for him in the meadow of Abara  
 Serai.

## CHAP. LIX.

*Timur marches to Van and Vastan<sup>o</sup>. The letter which Chah Chujah king of Persia wrote to Timur at his death.*

THE victorious standard of Timur was carry'd to Van and Vastan; and Malek Azzeddin, who commanded there, being afraid of the army, shut himself up in a castle, which is a strong citadel, situate on the ridge of a mountain, and border'd on one side by a lake.

The army us'd all their efforts to take it: they invest'd the fortress on the land-side, and omitted nothing which is practis'd in sieges; they also attack'd the walls of the town.

Two days after Malek Azzeddin was inspir'd by his good genius to obey Timur; he came down from the fortress, and had the honor to kiss the carpet of the throne: but the inhabitants, by reason of their baseness, revolted from their prince, and would not receive him; they fortify'd the avenues of the fortress, and put themselves in a posture of defence: whereupon our troops erected battering rams, got ready their machines for casting of stones, and assaulted the place.

This famous fortress, which had never been conquer'd by any sovereign, was taken by the

<sup>o</sup> A town S.E. of Van, and at six leagues distance; situate in the lower Armenia, on the bank of the lake of Van, long. 77. 50. lat. 34. 50.

arms of the great Timur on the twentieth day Chap. 59.  
of the siege; and our troops enter'd it sword in  
hand: they slew a great number of the rebels,  
and cast down several from the top of the moun-  
tain, after having ty'd 'em neck and heels.  
And thus they clear'd the world of these villains,  
who had no other employment than that of com-  
mitting disorders and robberys.

Then there arriv'd at court an ambassador from  
Arzendgian on the part of Taharten, who sent  
presents of abundance of curiositys, as silver mo-  
ny, the finest horses, and mules of a particular  
breed.

The prince's letter contain'd a testimonial of  
his respects and obedience, offers of his service,  
and a resolution to be always firmly attach'd to  
Timur's interest.

The emperor gave a very favorable reception  
to the ambassador, and dispatch'd orders, where-  
in he confirm'd the principality of Arzendgian  
to Taharten, as heretofore; and dismiss'd him  
with letters-patent for his investiture, with which  
he sent robes of honor of inestimable value.

The emperor order'd the castle of Van to be  
demolish'd. There are several incredible things  
related concerning this fortress; and among o-  
thers, that it was built by Cheddad son of Aad,  
on the brink of a very steep mountain, and that  
Yadghiar Andcoudi, who was prince of a To-  
man, having one day undertaken to raze it, he  
could not so much as loosen a stone tho he em-  
ploy'd a great number of soldiers.

Timur departing from his camp, happily ar-  
riv'd at Selmaz<sup>1</sup>, where after having gratify'd  
Malek Azzeddin by his favors, he left him in

<sup>1</sup> A town of Azerbaijan, long. 79. 5. lat. 37. 40.

Book II. the government of all Kurdestan, and at the same time began his march.

The prince of Ermitizec had at that time the honor to kiss the imperial carpet; and after having made his submission, he acquitted himself of the dutys a servant is oblig'd to perform, and gave great marks of his obedience. His sincere submission was the reason that Timur left him the principality of Ermit, and made him a present of a young she-slave, of extraordinary beauty.

The emperor at length march'd to Meraga\*, and from thence to Ghilan, where he staid some days; he had before that sent a man nam'd Merahem to Zein Elabeddin, son of Chah Chuja prince of Chiraz†, to summon him to come to him, with order to tell him that his father was particularly attach'd to the emperor, with whom he had made an alliance; that at the time of his death he had wrote a letter to this monarch to recommend his son to him; for which reason it belong'd to him to make appear his willingness to continue this friendship, and shew some marks of his zeal; and that as a testimony of this union, he ought to come with expedition to the emperor's court, which was not far from him, there to receive the favors of this monarch, and have a handsom reception; that he might at length return home with all the satisfaction he can possibly expect, not only as to himself in particular, but what might procure the advancement of his friends, and abasement of his enemys.

As we have had occasion to mention the letter of Chah Chuja, we have thought proper to insert a copy of it here, that the reader may have a detail of all the circumstances.

\* A town of Azerbaijan, long. 82. lat. 37. 20.

† Capital of Fars, not so antient as Esfacar, the Persepolis of the antients, long. 88. lat. 29. 36.

*A letter writ to the emperor Timur by Gela-  
leddin Chah Chuja, king of Persia, and  
prince of Chiraz, just before his death.*

“ **G**OD is truly living; there is no other  
“ god than God: every thing is done by  
“ his order, and you must return to him.

“ May it please God that this letter come  
“ safe to the hands of him, whose majesty and  
“ power extends as far as heaven, which is the  
“ support of empire; who is the most accom-  
“ plish’d of all those, who make profession of  
“ practising justice and mercy: the liberal pro-  
“ tector of the greatest kings, the most equitable  
“ and just of the emperors of the earth, and of  
“ this time; whom God always favorably re-  
“ gards, because he is the Pole of truth; **THE**  
“ **EMIR TIMUR GOURCAN**: whose  
“ reign and empire may God establish for ever,  
“ that the Cæsars, the masters of the world,  
“ and the most potent princes, may fly to him  
“ for refuge. God grant that this emperor may  
“ always be aiding in the execution of the di-  
“ vine orders, and in rendring all due respects  
“ to the commands of the Almighty: and lastly,  
“ may this prince, who has no equal in the  
“ world, arrive to the highest pitch of his de-  
“ sires.

“ After having thus wish’d you all happiness,  
“ and given you all the praises which are requi-  
“ site to maintain union among true friends;  
“ we put you in mind that great men esteem the  
“ world as the theatre of inconstancy, and the  
“ place of the most strange events; and that  
“ men of learning are never attach’d to trifles,  
“ nor transitory pleasures and beautys, because  
“ they



Book II.

“ they know that the corruption of all things  
 “ being necessary, the duration of creatures is  
 “ impossible; for which reason they have pre-  
 “ fer’d the delights of eternity to the perishable  
 “ things of this world. In short, I have em-  
 “ ploy’d, poor and indigent as I am, as far as in  
 “ me lay, these few days which I have receiv’d  
 “ of God, to exalt the standards of the faith,  
 “ to observe the order of the law and of justice,  
 “ and to execute the commandments of our pro-  
 “ phet in all those things which the Creator has  
 “ put into my power; and infine, I have only  
 “ apply’d my self in the sight of God, and for  
 “ the love of him, to preserve the people under  
 “ my protection in perpetual peace; and by the  
 “ divine grace, I have carry’d my self with all  
 “ the world, as well as I was able, in the man-  
 “ ner your highness cou’d expect.

“ As to the treaty of peace and alliance made  
 “ between us, designing never to break it, I re-  
 “ gard the gaining of the imperial friendship  
 “ as a great conquest; and the chief of my  
 “ wishes hath been to remain firm and constant  
 “ in this peace, and, if I dare say it, to have  
 “ in my hand the treaty I have with you at the  
 “ day of judgment, lest you shou’d reproach me  
 “ for having broke my word.

“ You have continually loaded me with favors  
 “ thro your goodness; they have drawn upon  
 “ you the praises and approbation of every one;  
 “ and the manner in which you have bestow’d  
 “ ’em is the cause that they are known through-  
 “ out the world.

“ As I am at present call’d before the tribunal  
 “ of the sovereign master of the universe, I  
 “ thank his divine majesty, in that I have done  
 “ nothing wherewith my conscience can re-  
 “ proach me, notwithstanding any thing I can  
 “ with



“ with for ; because notwithstanding the faults  
“ and sins I have committed, which are inse-  
“ parable from human life and the deprav'd na-  
“ ture of men, God hath liberally granted what-  
“ ever I cou'd desire ; and I have tasted all the  
“ pleasures I cou'd expect, during the fifty three  
“ years I have staid on earth.

“ Thus with a spirit full of confidence, al-  
“ ways hoping that the beneficent and merci-  
“ ful God will pardon my faults, I have an-  
“ swer'd, whensoever he hath call'd me, that  
“ I am ready to obey. In short, I die as I have  
“ liv'd, only carring with me the word of the  
“ unity of God, and turning my eyes and my  
“ designs towards the Creator alone, who finds  
“ nothing agreeable in us except our good  
“ works ; and I have abandon'd all the vanities  
“ of the world.

“ I pray God to give his blessing to this mo-  
“ narch, who is as wise as Solomon, and as  
“ great as Alexander ; to preserve for a long  
“ time his life and empire ; to augment the  
“ honors he possesses, and to stretch out farther  
“ the limits of his dominions, that all men  
“ may be under the protection of his justice.

“ In consideration of the sincere union be-  
“ tween you and us, I thought it my duty to let  
“ you know the state of all things. Tho it be  
“ not necessary to recommend to you my dear  
“ son Zein Elabeddin, God grant him a long  
“ life under the shadow of your protection ; for  
“ I leave him to the care of God and your ma-  
“ jesty, as well as my other children and bro-  
“ thers, having always regarded your alliance  
“ and friendship as the greatest treasure I can  
“ leave to my successors. I don't doubt your  
“ performance of the treaty, not only as the  
“ maintaining of treatys is a point of religion,  
“ which

Book II. “ which we are oblig’d to have regard to, but also  
 “ because of the good-will you have always  
 “ shewn to any who belong to me on every oc-  
 “ casion.

“ I therefore beseech your majesty to look up-  
 “ on all the princes who wait upon his person  
 “ with an eye of distinction, according to your  
 “ usual custom, and to grant ’em your protection  
 “ in all their affairs; so that the people of this  
 “ present time may see the marks of it, and it  
 “ may be declared to all future generations:  
 “ and that the envious, who for a long time  
 “ have wish’d my ruin, may have no cause to  
 “ rejoice at my death, nor to take advantage of  
 “ my family; but on the contrary, be oblig’d  
 “ to pay respect to my memory, and your majes-  
 “ ty’s merit.

“ I also beg of you to say the *Fatihha*<sup>4</sup> and  
 “ other prayers for your sincere friend, who has  
 “ the happiness to depart out of this world in  
 “ peace and alliance with you, that thro the  
 “ blessing of the prayers of a prince so great and  
 “ happy, my people may know that God hath  
 “ been merciful to me, and rais’d me up among  
 “ the saints. This is what we pray your ma-  
 “ jesty to execute, as our last will, of which  
 “ you being the depositary, it will answer in  
 “ this world and in the next.

“ Lastly, I beseech the Almighty, that be-  
 “ cause of your majesty’s good works, he will  
 “ assist you always with his favors, and make  
 “ the rest of your reign happy.”

---

<sup>4</sup> The first chapter of the Alcoran, which the Turks recite,  
 as we do the Lord’s prayer.

C H A P. LX.

*Timur marches again into the countrys of Fars and Irac Agemi.*

**A**S the good fortune and prosperity of Zein Elabeddin was almost at an end, he wou'd not appear before the emperor Timur; and in his extravagant humor he even seiz'd on the envoy of this prince. Timur having sought into the reasons of his conduct, was justly incens'd, and resolv'd to march into Fars and Irac.

In the autumn of the year of the Crocodile, which answers to the year of the Hegira 789, this monarch prepar'd to conquer these two kingdoms. He compos'd the vanguard of his army of his best troops, which he sent before; and order'd 'em, as well as the baggage, to march towards Rei', and to pass the winter at Sarek Camich.

An. Dom.  
1387.

The Mirza Miran Chah, the Emir Seifeddin, and the Cheik Ali Behader, were commanded to guard the baggage; and the imperial standard, with the rest of the army, march'd towards the kingdom of Fars, whose capital is Estacar', an agreeable city, which had formerly been the residence of the kings of Persia for many ages.

The emperor having march'd thro the country of Hamadan', arriv'd at Gerbadecan',

' A town of Couhestan, a province of Persia, long. 86 20. lat. 35. 35.

' The same as Persepolis, long. 88. 20. lat. 30.

' A town of Couhestan, long. 83. lat. 38.

' A town of Couhestan, long. 85. 25. lat. 34. It is also call'd Ghilpaighan.



Book II. where he rang'd his army in order of battel; and from thence he went to encamp before the city of Ispahan\*.

Seid Muzaffer Cachi, uncle of Sultan Zein Elabeddin on the mother's side, and governor of the city for this prince, came out, accompany'd by Coja Rukneddin Saed, and all the lords, Cheriffs, doctors of the law, and other principal inhabitants of the city, to implore the emperor's mercy. They had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet: Timur receiv'd 'em favorably, and treated 'em with friendship and clemency.

Timur enters Ispahan.

The troops having seiz'd on all the avenues of the city, Timur enter'd it in triumph, and retir'd into the fortress of Tabarruk†. He then plac'd a garison in Ispahan, the command of which he gave to Aicoutmur, and return'd to his camp, where he regulated the number of soldiers which shou'd be employ'd in guarding the gates; and then sign'd an order that all the horses and arms of the city shou'd be given into the hands of his officers, which order was put in execution.

The chief men and elders of the city enter'd into the imperial council, where the sum was settled which was to be paid to redeem the lives of the inhabitants, to whom quarter had been given. They consented to it; every one was tax'd to pay his share of it; and they demanded commissarys to collect the money.

The quarters of the city were shar'd among the Emirs, and it was order'd that every Emir shou'd send one of his men a commissary in his quarter; and that all the mony which these

\* A city of Couhestan, the present capital of Persia, long. 86. 40. lat. 32. 25.

† The fortress of Ispahan is thus call'd.


commissarys collected shou'd be remitted to the care of Nour Mulc Berlas, and Mehemed Sultan Chah. Timur kept in his camp all the grandees of Isphahan; and the commissarys went into the city to collect the sum which was settled.

But it unhappily fell out that a rash young fellow of the suburbs of Isphahan, nam'd Ali Cutchapa, by trade a smith, caus'd in the night the drum to be beat in the city; and at this noise a company of rabble got together, with design to shew their rashness. They surrounded the quarters of the city, cut the commissarys throats; and there were sav'd in this massacre only those whom the inhabitants of each quarter, who were wise and brave men, defended against the insults of these villains.

Several soldiers, who were gone into the city on particular occasions, were massacred in the night, and Mehemed son of Catai Behader was of this number. In short, there were more than three thousand of our men kill'd in this sedition. These young fools, after having put to the sword all the Turks they cou'd find, run to the gates of the city, seiz'd upon those who guarded 'em, and endeavor'd to fortify 'em as long as they were masters of 'em, that they might hinder the passage of our troops: and thus these seditious fellows laid the foundation of a grievous rebellion, to execute the designs with which their chimerical imaginations had flatter'd 'em.

The next morning the circumstances of this disorder were made known to the emperor. He fell into a violent anger; so that he immediately order'd the army to march against the city, and take it.

Our brave warriors at the same time executed this order. Instances were made to hinder the effects of it; but the affair being begun, they

Book II.  cou'd not retreat from it: so the inhabitants were constrain'd to fight to defend their lives; and Beian Timur Acbonga was kill'd on this occasion, which so animated our troops that they carry'd the town by assault. Timur sent men to guard the quarter of the Cheriffs, and the street of the Turekes, where the doctors of the law dwelt, and particularly, the house of Coja Imameddin Vaez, tho this great preacher had been dead a whole year.

The emperor order'd that all the inhabitants shou'd be put to the sword, and that they shou'd be chastis'd with all sorts of punishments for their revolt, and the massacres they had committed.

The houses of the honest men, who during the disorders had sav'd our warriors from the insult of the rebels, were preserv'd; by which means a great number of Mussulmans escap'd the fury of the soldiers.

Timur's anger was so great, that he order'd the Tomans, Hezares and Sedes, to furnish a certain quantity of the heads of the inhabitants, that every one might share in the punishment of these perfidious persons; and Tavatchis of the Divan were nam'd to be the controllers and depositarys of those heads that were cut off.

It was reported by men of credit, that many soldiers of our army, who were not willing to kill the Mussulmans, bought heads of the executioners, and carry'd 'em as if they had cut 'em off themselves. At first a head was sold for twenty Dinars<sup>2</sup> Cupeghi; but when every one was furnish'd with the number they were tax'd at, a head was sold for no more than half a Dinar; and at last no one bought any. Thus every one

<sup>2</sup> A sort of money at that time in use among the Tartars.



they met was slain; and a great number who had quarter in the day-time, and who fled in the night, found the ways cover'd with snow, and had the misfortune to be pursu'd next day by the soldiers, who, resolv'd upon revenging the death of their companions, follow'd the track of these fugitives, brought 'em out of the places they were hid in, and put 'em to death: which is a token of the depth of the divine decrees, and that God will finish whatsoever he has begun.

The least computations, which are writ in the registers of the Divan, of the number of the men who were slain amount to seventy thousand heads, which were laid in heaps upon the walls of Ispahan, and of which there were at length built towers in several parts of the city.

In short, since the war began, God has not made any people feel a more cruel effect of his wrath than this, to revenge the deaths of three thousand innocent Mussulmans kill'd by this insolent rabble.

This terrible action happen'd on monday, the sixth day of Zilcade, in the year of the Hegira 789.

An. Dom.  
1387.

If we are agreed, that in consequence of the strange effects of the infinite providence of God, the things which happen in this lower world by generation and corruption, have any relation to the motion of the heavenly bodys; we may say that all this happen'd very near the time when the eleventh of the celestial triplicity was in Gemini, and the conjunction of the two unfortunate planets, Saturn and Mars, was in the sign of Cancer.



## C H A P. LXI.

*Timur marches to Chiraz<sup>3</sup>, the capital of Fars or the true Persia.*

**T**IMUR after his victory and the conquest of Ispahan, appointed Hadgi Bei and Nounan Chah to govern this city for a year, and march'd towards Chiraz. Zein Elabeddin, prince of Persia, had no sooner receiv'd advice of his coming, than he fled to one of his cousins-german call'd Mansour, who was governor of Tollar<sup>4</sup>, tho they were at variance. Zein Elabeddin acted in this as that man wou'd do, who to avoid the heat of the sun shou'd run into the fire. He went to join Chah Mansour with his troops by the way of Cazon<sup>5</sup>, without considering that he who indiscreetly trusts his enemy, abandons his own good fortune, and exposes himself to the blame of all the world, Zein Elabeddin being arriv'd at the bank of the river Doudanke<sup>6</sup>, Chah Mansour brib'd his troops over to his side.

<sup>3</sup> Chiraz was capital of Persia before Ispahan; and is at present capital of the province of Fars. It was the seat of the antient kings, after they had abandon'd Estacar or Persepolis.

<sup>4</sup> Formerly call'd Cuchter, a town of the province of E-houaz, which is part of Courestan, long 84. 32. lat. 24. 30. Here is a great river, over which Sapor king of Persia formerly built a famous aqueduct a mile long, by which the water is carry'd up to the town. Abulfeda says this town is the most antient in the world.

<sup>5</sup> Capital of the province of Sapor, which is part of that of Fars, long. 87. lat. 29. 15.

<sup>6</sup> A river which runs by Tollar.

And as, according to the Alcoran, the temper of soldiers, or rather the corrupt nature of men, tends to ingratitude, the soldiers of Zein Elabeddin, having no thoughts on the obligations they ow'd their master, came over to Chah Mansour: and so there remain'd but few with Zein Elabeddin; which was the reason that Mansour sent other soldiers to seize the prince, and bring him to Toftar. They put him in irons in the castle of Selafel; and at length Chah Mansour caus'd those soldiers to be imprison'd, who had so ungratefully abandon'd their master, and all the money and goods they had were confiscated.

The emperor arriving at Chiraz, fix'd his standard on the first day of the month of Zilhage, in the year of the Hegira 789: and at the same time his orders were observ'd by all the kingdom, which without opposition was brought in subjection to his officers, and register'd among the dominions of Timur. An. Dom. 1387.

A poet of that time is very much commended, who says that the blessing of conquests consists in gaining the possession of peoples hearts without resistance; and that what is not acquir'd by fatigue and labor ought not to be call'd happiness.

The victorious standard was erected, and all the governors and Kelivis of the kingdom had the honor to kiss the ground on which Timur stood, at a place nam'd Taft Caradge, without the city. They agreed to pay a thousand Toman's Kapeghis, and to convey 'em with expedition to the royal treasury.

---

? A Toman is worth twenty French crowns.

Book II. The Emir Osman Abbas had orders to go in-  
 ~~~~~ to the city to receive the sum, which was ac-  
 cordingly paid into his hands.

At this time they kept a feast, which was ho-  
 nor'd with Timur's presence. They read the  
 Countbe \* in his name: and after he had per-  
 form'd the dutys of prayer and sacrifice †, he  
 return'd to his camp.

Chah Yahia, prince of Yezd †, nephew of the  
 deceas'd king Chah Chuja, with his son-in-law,  
 and his eldest son the Sultan Mehemed; as also  
 Sultan Ahmed prince of Kirman †, and brother  
 of Chah Chuja; and Abou Ishac, grandson of  
 Chah Chuja, who came express from the town  
 of Sirdgian; and all the neighboring sovereigns;  
 as also the Atabecs of Lor †, and Gourghin  
 Lar †, who are said to have been of the race of  
 Gourghin Milad; having all made their submis-  
 sions, had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet:  
 they made presents worthy of this great mo-  
 narch, who gave 'em a handsom entertainment,  
 and us'd 'em with all imaginable civility;  
 while in the mean time the troops went to pil-  
 lage some countrys which were not yet brought  
 under subjection.

When the kingdom of Fars, with its depen-  
 dencies, was entirely subdu'd, and the lieute-  
 nants of Timur establish'd in it, the secretaries,

\* A kind of homily, where the Catib, or preacher, begins  
 with the praises of the prince then reigning.

† The publick sacrifice is a camel, and private ones are  
 sheep. The sacrifice of the camel is most curious.

† A town of Fars, long. 89. lat. 32.

† A kingdom in the middle of Corassana, and E. of Persia.  
 At present it is only a province of Persia. Its capital is Sird-  
 gian, long. 90. 20. lat. 29. 25.

† A nation in Courestan.

† A town of Fars near Kirman,



who are call'd Munchis, and the Debirs ' were Chap.62.  
employ'd in recording the great exploits and  
actions done at that time. They wrote letters,  
which they call'd letters of conquests, in the most  
agreeable style imaginable; and after having  
seal'd 'em with the imperial seal, they sent  
'em by certain couriers call'd Mobaches, who  
are employ'd in carrying of good news, to Sa-  
marcand, the capital of the empire, in Co-  
rassana, and to all the other countrys and pro-  
vinces in subjection to Timur; which great  
actions were publish'd in all the mosques, where  
the Coutbe was read.

---

C H A P. LXII.

*Reasons which induc'd Timur to return to the  
capital of his empire.*

ONE wou'd have thought that this last  
and famous conquest, which so highly esta-  
blish'd the power of Timur, might have always  
assur'd to him his authority and quiet; but as  
the most perfect things are more easily alter'd  
than others, there soon grew disturbances in the  
empire. A courier, who came from Transoxi-  
ana in seventeen days, brought advice that a war  
was rais'd in that country, and that Tocatnich  
Can had violated the treaty, and sent a power-  
ful army thither. This army of Capchac, the  
commanders of which were Bick Yarok Aglen,  
Ilicmich Aglen, Aisa Bei, Satgan Behader, and  
other Emirs, having march'd by the town of Sa-

---

§ Secretaries of state in Persia.



Book II. ganac<sup>6</sup>, came to that of Sabran<sup>6</sup>, and besieg'd it. Timur Coja Acbouga, who was governor of it for Timur, did his duty in the defence of the town, and vigorously resisted the besiegers, who us'd all their efforts to take it; which notwithstanding their valor they could not do; and being constrain'd to raise the siege, they went to ravage other places.

The Mirza Omar Cheik, who was at Andecan, got together all the troops of this quarter, and march'd against 'em; the Emir Solyman Chah and the Emir Abbas, with the troops that remain'd at Samarcand, went to join Omar Cheik, having left to guard that city the Emir Lal, brother to Tagi Bougai Berlas, and Cheik Temour, brother of Akitmur Behader. They cross'd the Sihon together, and met the enemy's army in the field of Juclik, five leagues E. from Otrar. This expedition was fully perform'd in the autumn of this year. The two armies were rang'd in order of battel, and began the combat, which continu'd till night. Omar Cheik, the most valiant and dauntless man of the age, rush'd into the very middle of the main body: he pass'd thro' all the enemy's army, and was at a great distance from his own. When his soldiers no longer saw him, they began to mistrust their strength, and were defeated; and the Emir Abbas was wounded with an arrow. In the mean while the Cheik, accompany'd by the good fortune of the invincible Timur, retir'd in safety from the midst of his enemys, and went with expedition to Andecan, where he rally'd the troops which were dispers'd.

There then came news that Ancatoura, nephew of the Emir Hadgi Bei Ircanout<sup>7</sup>, forget-

<sup>6</sup> Towns of Capchac.

<sup>7</sup> A hord of Tartars.

ful of the favors he had receiv'd from the emperor, had also violated the peace; that he was departed from Mogolistan<sup>\*</sup> at the head of an army, which was already arriv'd at Seiram and Tachkunt; and that the troops having committed divers hostilitys, had ravag'd this country.


Omar Cheik had advice of it, and at the same time assembled the troops of Uzkont, and came to Cogende, where he learnt that the enemy were gone to Andecan by the road of Chackichmen. He immediately return'd to cut off their retreat, and came up with 'em on the banks of the Sihon before Acfiket<sup>?</sup>. The troops of both partys having secur'd the passes, encamp'd in view of one another, and march'd in the same posture for some days upon the banks, till they found an opportunity of coming to blows.

One night Ancatoura made use of a stratagem of war: he left a thousand men in his camp, and order'd that while he march'd at the head of the rest of his troops on the bank of the river, they shou'd light fires in several parts of the camp, to induce the others to believe that all the army was yet there. He made so much haste, that he found a proper place to pass the Sihon, which he cross'd, and at the same time Omar Cheik march'd against him. The two partys being in view, there ensu'd a battel, in which this prince behav'd himself with courage: but as the enemy far surpass'd him in number, he ceas'd fighting, and enter'd Andecan. Anca-

---

<sup>\*</sup> I believe the author is mistaken, and has put Mogolistan instead of Gete, at least that he thinks 'em the same, as is imply'd in other places.

<sup>?</sup> A town, N. of the Sihon, long. 101. 10. lat. 42. 20.

Book II.  toura pursu'd him thither, and wou'd have made himself master of all the avenues of the town to besiege it; but Omar Cheik, excited by his valor, and trusting in the divine assistance, immediately sally'd out sword in hand, and like a lion fell upon the army of the Getes, who were far more numerous than his own. In the mean while his valor made him rush into the midst of his enemys, whom he fiercely attack'd with his lance and sword; but Tonkel Behader made after him sword in hand, laid hold of the bridle of Omar's horse, and led it out of the field.

Ancatoura was not willing to fight any longer; he return'd, and took the road of the country of the infidels. The prince Omar sent troops to pursue him; which they did for three days, insomuch that a great many stragglers of the Getes were slain. The Emir Solyman Chah, the Emir Abbas, and among the captains of Couchons\*, Temourtach, Berat Coja, Sevendge Temour, and others, who retir'd after they had been vanquish'd in the fight of Juclik, staid to guard Samarcand. They made the inhabitants of the suburbs and the neighboring places enter into the city, and sent Temourtach to Termed to secure that. When the enemy arriv'd in those countrys, they only pillag'd the towns; but some of their troops, which went to Bicara, and were there join'd by others of the army of Tocatmich, who came by Carezem, resolv'd upon besieging that city.

Tagi Bongai Berlas was then in the place with Atilmich Coutchin, and Derbi Coutchin; who had fortify'd the walls. These captains defended themselves, and vigorously repuls'd the

---

\* A company of a hundred horse.

enemy; infomuch that in the feveral attacks they made, the befiegers had always the worft, and defparing of taking Bocara, they rais'd the fiege, and made inroads into Tranfoxiana. They fet fire to Zendgir Serai, whither they were conducted by Sultan Mahmoud fon of Kei Cofru Catlani. They march'd by Carfchi and Cuzar, and thence as far as Kioften on the banks of the Gihon. The Emir Abbas at this time died of a wound he receiv'd from an arrow in the battel of Juclik.

Chap. 63.

### C H A P. LXIII.


*Timur returns to Samarcand; and gives the government of Fars and Irac to the family of Mouzaffer..*

**T**IMUR, being at Chiraz, on advice of the events we have related, fent to Samarcand by the way of Yezd, the Emir Osman Abbas, with thirty of the bravest horfe of the army, commanding him to make hafte.

The emperor gave the government of Chiraz to Chah Yahia, nephew of Chah Chuja; that of Ispahan to Sultan Mehemed his eldeft fon; and that of Kirman to Sultan Ahmed brother of Chah Chuja. He invefted the Sultan Abou Ifhac, grandfon of Chah Chuja, in the government of the province of Sirdgian, as alfo in the town and caftle, which we fhall hereafter have occafion to mention. It was made a principality by this monarch, as alfo a Siorgal, that is a lordship, which he gave to him and his heirs for ever; and he honor'd all thefe princes with his letters-patent, feal'd with the imperial fignet,

which



Book II. which is call'd Altomga, that is, the mark of  
 the red hand.

The emperor then commanded the illustrious and learned lord, the Cheriff Gerjani, to quit the country of Fars, and reside at the royal city of Samarcand. He gave the same orders to the principal Emirs of the deceas'd king Chah Chuja, to the Emir Aladin Einac, and to many other lords who were the principal men of the state; and he sent to the same country the workmen and artists with their familys, whom he found to be most expert and skilful in their respective trades. Then having resolv'd to return to Samarcand, he took horse at the end of the month of Muharrem, in the year of the Hegira 790, at a most  
 An. Dom. 1388. lucky moment.

When Timur was arriv'd at Bendemir<sup>1</sup>, the brave Pehlevan Muhaddeb Corasani, governor and prince of Abrecouh<sup>2</sup>, sent an expresse to inform him, that it not being convenient to leave the town without a governor, he besought him to send a Deroga, that he might have the happiness to kiss the ground in presence of the emperor; in which case he wou'd come with expedition to court. Timur sent thither Toukel Baour Chah, who was no sooner arriv'd than Muhaddeb readily went to meet this monarch; and by the procurement of the Emirs he had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet. When the victorious standard was arriv'd at Abrecouh, Muhaddeb paid his humble respects to Timur; and after having offer'd presents suitable to his ability, he gave him a sumptuous feast. He was treated with all manner of civility by the

<sup>1</sup> A river which passes by Chiraz.

<sup>2</sup> A town of Fars, dependent on Estacar, long. 87. 50. lat. 31. 30.

emperor, who confirm'd him by letters-patent in his principality of Abrecoh. Chap. 64.

The court at length march'd to Ispahan and Tactapol. When the enemy had advice of Timur's arrival in Transoxiana with his army, however resolute they seem'd before, they now thought fit to fly; some went to Carezem, others to the desert of Capchac: and the victorious standard having cross'd the Gihon, and arriving at the seat of the empire, was set up in the city of Samarcand.

Timur immediately sent Codadad Husseni, Cheik Ali Behader, Omar Taban, and others, in pursuit of the enemy.

These princes march'd day and night to come up with 'em: they drove 'em as far as Bilen; and after having put abundance of 'em to the sword, they return'd to court.

#### C H A P. LXIV.

*The emperor orders a process against some Emirs, whom he had left in Transoxiana.*

THE troops of the emperor Timur being accusom'd to vanquish their enemys, it appear'd strange to this monarch that in the battel of Juclik the army of Tocatmich Can. had had the advantage of our troops. Upon which he order'd that they shou'd bring before him the Emirs who had been at the battel; and having learnt from themselves the particular circumstances of the fight, he order'd 'em to be question'd in the council of war, and then to be prosecuted.

Berat

~~~~~  
 Berat Coja Coukeltach, who on this occasion had given no marks of that valor which is usual in the hero of a triumphant army, had his beard shav'd<sup>3</sup>; and after having receiv'd severe reproaches for his cowardice, they painted his face with cerufs and vermillion, put on his head a coif, as if he had been a woman, and made him run bare-foot thro the city.

On the contrary, Kutche Malek, who had shewn an heroic courage in the pursuit of the enemy, and with thirteen men only had attack'd in the night three hundred infidels of Ancatoura's party in Yactchal near Cogende, and had deliver'd out of their hands several of the inhabitants of Cogende and the countrys adjacent, whom they had made slaves, and whom he afterwards sent to their country; Kutche Malek, I say, receiv'd, as a reward of his great actions, a country which was made a principality, for him and his successors to enjoy for ever: and after many other considerable favors and caresses from Timur, he was honor'd with the priviledg'd order of Tercan<sup>4</sup>,

And the Mirza Omar Cheik, who had given incontestable proofs of his valor by his great exploits, had the pleasure of being rais'd in dignity and power, by the favors of the ever-victorious emperor his father.

---

\* <sup>3</sup> There is no greater reproach among the eastern nations than to shave the beard after it has once grown; and the shame is still much the greater to have it done by the hands of the common hangman.

\* <sup>4</sup> Tercan is a dignity, which whoever enjoys has great privileges confer'd upon him, as is observ'd in the history of Genghiz Can.



---

## B O O K III.

*Three bloody wars against Tocatmich Can king of Capchac. The conquest of his country: The plundering of Muscovy, Circassia, Bulgaria and Georgia. The conquest of Persia, Mesopotamia, and Courdistan. The war against the Getes, and the ravaging of all Mogolistan.*

---

### C H A P. I.

*Timur-Bec departs for his fifth expedition into the kingdom of Carezem.*

**I**N the year of the Crocodile, which answers An. Dom.<sup>1</sup> to that of the Hegira 790, Timur began 1388. his march towards Carezem: he encamp'd at Egryar<sup>2</sup>, from whence he sent Condge Aglen, and Temour Cotluc Aglen with the vanguard: these two princes had abandon'd Tocatmich Can, and fled for refuge to the court of Timur.

---

<sup>1</sup> Six leagues from Samarcand.



Book III. When they had cross'd the river of Bagdadec<sup>a</sup>, they sent Aid Coja to discover the condition of the country; who meeting on the road a shepherd of Illicmich Aglen<sup>b</sup>, seiz'd him; and having question'd him concerning the condition of the enemy, sent him to court. Timur being inform'd of all he desir'd to know, continu'd his road to the river of Chedris<sup>c</sup>; which when he had cross'd, there came a deserter from the enemys, who said that Illicmich Aglen and Soliman Sofi had abandon'd the kingdom of Carezem to save their lives; and were fled to Tocatmich Can emperor of Capchac.

On this news Timur sent Mirza Miran Chah, with five other Emirs follow'd by their regiments, in pursuit of the two princes. These Emirs march'd with such expedition by the road of Comkint<sup>d</sup> and Kiz<sup>e</sup>, that they overtook 'em, attack'd 'em, and made a terrible slaughter of their men: and having pillag'd their baggage, return'd in triumph laden with the spoils of the enemy.

Ruin of  
the capital  
of Care-  
zem.

Timur staid some days in the capital city<sup>f</sup> of Carezem; during which time he order'd the inhabitants to go and live at Samarcand, and carry their goods with 'em. Then this great city was raz'd even to the very foundations, and sown with barley, to punish his enemys for their daring to raise war against him. Thus our prince hav-

<sup>a</sup> A river which falls into the Gihon below Bikunt.

<sup>b</sup> Prince of Capchac, king of Carezem, with Soliman Sofi whose sister he espous'd.

<sup>c</sup> A river which runs into the Gihon, and serves as a frontier to the kingdoms of Zagatai and Carezem.

<sup>d</sup> A town of Tranfoxiana, long. 97. lat. 42. 50.

<sup>e</sup> A town of Tranfoxiana, long. 97. lat. 43. 50.

<sup>f</sup> Corcange minor, situate in Tranfoxiana on the Gihon, long. 94. 55. lat. 42. 10.

ing reveng'd himself, march'd towards his capital city, where he happily arriv'd in few days; and at his entry order'd the ensigns to be display'd in token of victory.

Notwithstanding Timur's wars, as his inclination and designs always tended to make kingdoms flourishing, and his subjects happy by the administration of justice; every one call'd him *the father of the people*. But imagining he cou'd not intirely make 'em happy but by being the sole master of the universe, he was oblig'd, like other conquerors, to strike terror into all parts, and severely to chastise those who resisted him; by which means his armys were so formidable, that they were compar'd to the tempests of heaven, because of the desolation they brought with 'em. Wherefore three years after this conquest, in the year of the Hegira 793, Timur resolv'd to continue the war in Capchac, and send Mousike, son of Junki Coutchin<sup>a</sup>, into Carezem, to repair the ruins of this kingdom, and settle it in its first state. Mousike, according to his commission, re-peopled the country, and brought it up to its antient splendor, and even surrounded with walls the towns of Cat<sup>b</sup> and Kivac<sup>c</sup>, and all the demesns of the Caan, that is, that part of Carezem which Genghiz Can join'd to the lands of Zagatai Can when he shar'd his empire among his children.

An. Dom.  
1391.

<sup>a</sup> Coutchin is one of the most antient and illustrious houses of the Moguls.

<sup>b</sup> Long. 95. lat. 40. 58. near the Gihon.

<sup>c</sup> S. E. of the Gihon, long. 95. 35. lat. 39. 20.

## C H A P. II.

*Some accidents during Timur's expedition  
into Carezem.*

Rebellion  
of Mehe-  
met Mi-  
reke.

AS soon as Timur was departed for Carezem, Aboul Feteħ, younger brother of Mehemet Mireke\*, abandon'd Timur: he fled from Samarcand, and at night came to the great desert of Capchac; which he cou'd not do so secretly but Lalam Behader Couthin perceiv'd it: wherefore he pursu'd him with so much diligence, that having made use of all the horses of the army which he found on the road, he overtook him at Hifarec†, where he found him sleeping on a plain; he immediately demanded the cause of his flight, and his ingratitude to his prince. He answer'd, that he went to seek his brother Mireke, who had quit- ted Timur, and sent for him. Lalam Behader took him by the collar, laid him on a horse, bound with cords, and brought him back the same way he came; and at Bocara deliver'd him up to Mirza Omar Cheik, to whom he told all that had pass'd between him and the prisoner.

Upon this the Mirza immediately wrote to Timur at Carezem; and in the mean while came with expedition to Samarcand, where he tho-

\* Governor of Catlan, and son-in-law to Timur, having espous'd the princess Sultan Bact Begum, daughter of Timur: he was son of Chir Behram, and relation of Kei Cofru Catlani.

† Also call'd Hifar Chaduman, a town of Saganian between the iron-gate and the river of Vacach, near the kingdom of Catlan; long. 100. 50. lat. 38.

rowly examin'd the circumstances of this rebellion. He had advice, that Mehemet Mireke, not considering that Timur had honor'd him with his alliance, marrying him with the princess Sultan Baç Begum his daughter, who was now big with child, nor reflecting on the loss of so great an emperor's favor, of whom he held the government of the kingdom of Catlan, and the neighbouring places; seduc'd by a fatality, which leads men into disorders, and blind at his good fortune, had neglected his duty to Timur, and was led away with a desire of making himself independent, notwithstanding the misfortunes several of his equals had fallen into, who had endeavor'd the like. Indeed Mireke's conscience reproach'd him a long time for his crime; but his ambition gaining the master of his reason, he at length resolv'd to revolt, and declare war against the emperor, at the same time bringing into his misfortune the troops which were at Samarcand, at the head of which he went out of this town. The Mirza also learnt that when the rebels pass'd by the iron-gate, nam'd Coluga, the troops of Catlan had already pillag'd the province of Termed, and all the neighbouring places; but that they were not able to force the town, because Temour Tach, the governor, had courageously defended it, and plac'd chains cross the streets, to preserve it from the insults of these rebels.

When Mirza Omar Cheik was assur'd of the truth of this news, he departed from Samarcand, and came to Ilgazigage<sup>5</sup>; he there got together the troops, with which he march'd in

<sup>5</sup> A village without Samarcand, on the road to Carchi in Transoxiana. There's another Ilgazigage in Cerassana.



Book III.



purſuit of Mireke. This latter having plac'd his men in order, had already plunder'd the houſes of Dadmute Berlas, and Akitmur Behader, governor of thoſe countrys: he had made himſelf maſter of their effects, and had cauſ'd the arſenal to be open'd, from whence he had carry'd away all the arms and machines of war, and diſtributed 'em among a company of robbers whom he had aſſembled, and to whom he alſo gave horſes and clothes. This rebel, being prepar'd to maintain the war againſt his prince, was ſo confident in this ſtate of independency, and having got a ſumptuous equipage, that he look'd upon the ſun, if one may ſay ſo, but as an atom, not conſidering that enterpriſes and projects againſt the decrees of providence, have never any other effect than that which the rods of Pharaoh's magicians had in the preſence of the rod of Moſes.

It is true, that theſe rebels had no ſooner heard of the approach of Mirza Omar Cheik, and his expedition in marching, than their inſolence was chang'd into a ſhameful cowardice: a dread of coming to blows with ſo valiant a prince, ſeiz'd the hearts of theſe cowards, who fled, and were diſpers'd upon the ſole rumor of his approach.

This accident broke all the meaſures of Mireke, and put a ſtop to his deſigns: he had the affliction of ſeeing in a moment that power, with which he had been blinded, diſappear; and he knew, tho too late, upon what ill bottom it was founded, and what chimeras his pride and ſelf-conceit had form'd in his imagination.

The rebel being fruſtrated of all his intentions, and reduc'd to a deplorable condition, was oblig'd to paſs the river of Vacach, on  
 † the

the stone bridg, call'd Tachkupru<sup>6</sup>, and to fly Chap. 2.  
into the kingdom of Catlan. He was pursu'd with extreme diligence by the Mirza, who having pass'd by Hifar and Tircani Candigai<sup>7</sup>, came to the bank of the river, which he swam over. And Mireke went to the narrow passage, nam'd Derei Dervaz<sup>8</sup>, to seek the protection of Chah Gelaleddin<sup>9</sup>, who refus'd it him, and prudently prohibited his entrance into the castle. He only told him the contents of a moral distich, which his father, a very prudent man, had learnt in his old age, to wit, that we ought to avoid, as far as in us lies, the company of the unfortunate, and to seek those whom fortune favors; in which number was the great Timur, on whom heaven continually shower'd success.

Mireke depriv'd of this protection, departed from the straits of Dervaz, to go in search of another asylum; but he was in very great affliction, because most part of his domestics abandon'd him.

In the mean while our men having gone over all the mountains and plains to seek Mireke, without hearing any news of him; the Mirza Omar Cheik went to encamp in a town nam'd Capchac, in the kingdom of Catlan; and he lodg'd in the palace of Mireke, nam'd Acserai. He staid there many days, hoping that some unforeseen accident, such as usually happen'd to Timur, wou'd bring him with honor out of the intricate affair this rebel had involv'd him in.

---

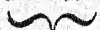
<sup>6</sup> Long. 101. 30. lat. 38. 30. It is call'd in persian Poffenghin.

<sup>7</sup> A village near the river Vacach, long. 101. 20. lat. 38.

<sup>8</sup> A defile of mountains leading from Catlan to Tebet.

<sup>9</sup> Prince of the frontiers of Tebet.

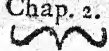
Book III.



Death of  
Mehemet  
Mireke.

He was not deceiv'd in his expectation ; for Osman son of Arocu Omar, going to Samarcand with some domestics, and having pass'd the mountain Boutatou<sup>1</sup>, luckily arriv'd at the brink of a fountain, where he observ'd the marks of the horses feet, which were gone out of the common road. He was inspir'd with a desire to pursue 'em, and he had no sooner pass'd some hills than he perceiv'd Mehemet Mireke, sitting with four valets, who had taken off their horses harnesses that they might feed on the grass : he immediately surrounded 'em, lest they shou'd get away ; and Osman seizing on the horses, stopt the prisoners Mireke and his men, whom he put in irons : he then dispatch'd a courier to the Mirza, to give him advice of it, and forthwith return'd with the prisoners. He was on the road when he receiv'd orders to put Mireke to death, which he readily obey'd ; and Mireke and his brother Aboul Fete'h were executed. These traitors were punish'd for an example to others, and to verify the text of the Alcoran, which says, *That traitors and ingrateful persons are accurs'd by God.* The Mirza having put an end to these disorders by the death of Mireke, departed for Samarcand, where he had the honor to salute the emperor his father. At the time when Mireke revolted and departed from Samarcand, the Emir Gehanghir also went from Condoz, to join the imperial camp with the Tomans of Bourouldai, Taican, and Aperdi ; besides which he was join'd at Balc by the Emir Yadhghiar Berlas at the head of the troops of Balc and the neighboring places. As they were marching together, the Toman of Bourouldai revolted

<sup>1</sup> Near the river Vacach in Catlan above Ghulec.



and turn'd back. Gehancha inform'd the court of it, and return'd to pursue the rebellious Toman, in conjunction with Coja Yousef son of Oladgia Iton, Junaïd nephew of Bourouldai, and Pir Alitaz officer of the troops of Balc; they march'd with such expedition day and night, that they join'd the rebels at Bacalan, and pillag'd their houses and goods. The Emir Gehancha had receiv'd news of the revolt of Mireke, and had learnt that he was encamp'd in the territory of Hisar Chaduman, with the troops he had lifted. This Emir march'd against him with his men rang'd in order of battle, while Coja Yousef came to Arhenk to take care of the troops which he commanded; and Pir Alitaz went to Balc to bring away those which remain'd there; after they had all agreed to meet again on the bank of the Gihon.

Gehancha got there first; and having built some floats, cross'd the river, and encamp'd on the other bank at the head of his squadron; but as soon as night came, Junaïd Bourouldai and his brother Bajazet, as also Ali Ecber, revolted with the squadrons they commanded, which consisted of three thousand horse. They fell suddenly on Gehancha who had no more than sixty men; but this valiant general, excited by the good fortune of Timur, far from being troubled at the sight of so strange an accident, tho' with so few attendants, put his trust in God, and with this small number of men fac'd the enemy, having the river at his back: and he and his men being cover'd with the great and small bucklers which they ordinarily us'd, they march'd courageously against the rebels. The combat was violent; they began with their arrows, and when they were

em-



Book III. empty'd, they had recourse to their lances and  
 swords.

In the mean while Coja Yousef sent a man by the river to Gehancha to advise him to stand his ground, because he shou'd soon come to his assistance. This news did not a little strengthen our soldiers, who with a handful of men, resisted so great a number of the enemy: it rekindled their valor; they kept firm all the day, and when night was come, Coja Yousef, and Pir Alitaz, with a hundred horse, having join'd 'em, after they had swam over the river, they fell so vigorously upon the enemy, that they made 'em feel the effects of their courage by a hundred glorious actions: and the sun was no sooner risen, than victory declar'd her self on their side. The enemy shamefully turn'd their backs, notwithstanding the advantage of their number, which was twenty to one; they fled towards the river, which they cross'd, and retir'd to Bacalan. It is remark'd in the Alcoran, That twenty brave men of resolution and courage always defeat their enemys, tho they be two hundred in number. Our men pursu'd 'em and kill'd several; and the Emir Gehancha encamp'd at Condoz with his soldiers, very well contented with the victory. The fugitives of the hord of Bourouldai believing themselves pursu'd, past on farther; and having gone over the mountains of Hendoukech, they march'd to Cabul, where they found Aboufaid Bifoud. This governor, thro an unheard-of ingratitude, which made him forget all the favors he had receiv'd of Timur, revolted also with 'em.

During these transactions, it happen'd that Acbouga Bifoud, enemy of Aboufaid, whom Timur had order'd to be seiz'd and sent to Mogolistan  
 near

near the mountains of Eltai<sup>2</sup>, having attempted to escape and get to his own country, was again seiz'd and brought to Timur with his feet and hands bound. The emperor hearing of the revolt of Aboufaid Bifoud, was favorable to Acbouga, caus'd his chains to be taken off, and having given him the command of the hord of Bifoud, which this rebel possess'd, sent him to Gehancha; and on his return to Samarcand he even dispatch'd recruits to him by Ramadan Coja and other generals, ordering him to go seek the enemy whithersoever they were retir'd. Thus Gehancha and Coja Yousef departed for Condoz and Bacalan; and having pass'd Hendoukech and Cabul, they join'd Junaid and Aboufaid at Lagaman<sup>3</sup>; they pillag'd the houses of their hords, and ravag'd the country; and those who cou'd avoid the fury of the scymitars, fled into the country of Sende. The Emir Acbouga, having advice of it, departed from Herat with design to fight these rebels; and was join'd in the way by Seifel Candahari with the troops of Candahar<sup>4</sup> which he had got together: they pass'd many mountains and forests, and at length overtook these unfortunate persons; and having block'd up all the passages oblig'd 'em to fight, and so smartly repuls'd 'em, that Junaid, Bajazet and Abou-

---

<sup>2</sup> Mountains in Mogolistan, long. 138. lat. 60. Here the Mogul emperors are ordinarily bury'd,

<sup>3</sup> Lagaman or Langan, a town of the kingdom of Cachmir, frontier to Candahar.

<sup>4</sup> A town of India, frontier of Persia, and at present under the dominion of the king of Persia; it was taken from the Moguls by Chah Abbas the second, father of the present king. It is situated in long. 106. 30. lat. 33.

Book III. said, after the loss of a great many of their soldiers, and the pillage of the little baggage they had left, had a deal of trouble to escape from our men, and fly to the town of Deli<sup>6</sup> in India. Our troops return'd in triumph to the place of their residence with all possible satisfaction.

Death of  
the grand  
Can, in-  
stal'd by  
Timur.

When Timur was in the way to Carezem, Siorgatmich Can fell sick at Bocara where he died: his body was transported to the field of Kech, and bury'd near Coubecan Igage<sup>7</sup> under a mausoleum which himself had caus'd to be built there. After the reduction of Carezem, Timur return'd during the autumn to Samarcand, which city was magnificently adorn'd to receive him: and he immediately establish'd the Sultan Mehemet son of Siorgatmich Can in the place of his father.

Sultan Me-  
hemet in-  
stal'd  
grand Can  
of Zagatai.

Then Timur excited by a fatherly love to his children, took up a resolution to put in practice in their persons the counsel of Mahomet, who says we ought to marry that we may have children, and multiply the species; wherefore he gave orders to his prime officers to make all necessary preparations for magnificent nuptial-feasts and the ceremonies of marriage: he even order'd a most solemn publick banquet, in which the inhabitants spar'd nothing to testify their joy: they adorn'd the great city with the most magnificent stuffs, and hung out branch'd candlesticks in all the streets: they prepar'd high and spacious tents in the delicious garden of Baghi Behicht, that is, the garden of paradise: they cover'd the ground with rich carpets, and stuffs of all colors enrich'd with em-

<sup>6</sup> Capital of India, long. 120. lat 30.

<sup>7</sup> A village in the territory of Kech.

broderys, and adorn'd with pearls and precious stones. In this beautiful and magnificent garden, the great Timur marry'd, according to the mahometan law, the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, and his brother the Mirza Pir Mehemet, as also Mirza Charoc, with the princesses who were chosen for their brides, and who were as beautiful as the Houris<sup>1</sup>. It was in the year of the Hegira 790, that the crown of this vast empire was settled in his august family by these happy marriages. After the solemnity was finish'd, Timur dismiss'd his troops; the Mirza Miran Chah return'd to Corassana; the Mirza Omar Cheik to Andecan; and Timur pass'd the winter at Samarcand with all possible felicity and contentment.

Chap. 3.  
An. Dom.  
1388.

### C H A P. III.

*Timur departs to make war in Capchat, and is victorious over Tocatmich Can.*

**A**S fate had mark'd on the forehead of Tocatmich Can, sovereign of Capchat, the misfortune which must necessarily happen to him, and excited him to despise the gifts and favors he had receiv'd from Timur; this prince gave marks of his ingratitude on several occasions: insomuch that he sent officers to levy troops thro all the empire of Touchi, of which he was master. This army was compos'd of the

<sup>1</sup> The Mahometans believe there will always be in paradise young women whose virtue and beauty will never fade. They are call'd Houris.



Book III. troops of Russia, Circassia, Bulgaria, Capchac, Crim, Cassa, Ellan and Azac, as also of Bachgorod, and even of Muscovy; and made so formidable an appearance, that poets have compar'd it to the leaves of the thickest trees, or the drops of rain in the most impetuous storms. Tocatmich brought this great army into the field, and march'd against Timur at the end of the year 790. The emperor had no sooner advice of it, than he departed from his capital at the head of the troops of Samarcand and Kech, and went to encamp at Sagrudge<sup>2</sup>. He sent Tavatchis into all the provinces of his kingdom to levy troops, and bring 'em to the place of rendezvous. This winter the cold was so violent that the earth was cover'd with snow, and the men were almost froze to death. In the mean while, news was brought, that the army of Capchac, commanded by Ilichmich Aglen<sup>3</sup>, and compos'd of a vast number of horse, had cross'd the River Sihon over-against the town of Cogende, and was encamp'd near Ajouc-Zernont<sup>4</sup>. Timur forthwith resolv'd to give him battel: the lords of his council fell upon their knees, and made pressing instances to hinder him, and particularly besought him to wait till the troops of all the provinces arriv'd: but as he was not ignorant of the proverb, which says, *That delay is dangerous, and that we ought never to put off till to morrow what we are able to do to day*; their remonstrance was useless; and without waiting for other troops besides those of his household which he then had

An. Dom.  
1388.

<sup>2</sup> A village six leagues from Samarcand.

<sup>3</sup> King of Carezem, who fled to Tocatmich Can.

<sup>4</sup> A village in Tranfoxiana, near the Sihon, towards Cogende.

with him, he departed from his camp, and enter'd into the snow, which was already so deep that it touch'd the horses bellys. In the mean while as he was assur'd of the victory, he march'd night and day, and shortly after was join'd by Mirza Omar Cheik, who having got together the troops of Andecan, march'd along the bank of the Sihon with extreme diligence. Timur sent Condge Aglen, Temour Cotluc Aglen, and Cheik Ali Behader, with a body of horse to fall on the enemy's rear, and to block up the passages and hinder their flight. The next day at sun-rising, they pass'd over the hill Telanbar \*, and came in sight of the enemy; they immediately made the great cry Souroun to begin the fight. There was nothing heard but the noise of kettle-drums, the clashing of scymitars, the neighings of the horses, and the crys of the soldiers. After a bloody battel the advantage fell on our side; the enemy gave ground, and were oblig'd to fly, after having lost in the battel a great part of the soldiers, a great many of whom cast themselves into the Jaxartes to avoid the fury of our arms, and there miserably perish'd. Those who escap'd out of the fight fled with precipitation; but the greatest part met the cavalry which Timur had sent to cut off their passage in the rear. And as they were yet pursu'd by our victorious army, they found themselves surrounded on all sides: our men made use of their war-clubs, swords, arrows and lances to destroy 'em; and shew'd so much resolution on this occasion, that the greatest part of the enemys were cut in pieces without obtaining any quarter from our soldiers. There was only the celebrated Airdi Birdi, secretary of state, and one of those whom we call

Bacchis,

\* In Transoxiana.

Book III. Bacchis<sup>3</sup>, who was made prisoner of war; and they had immediately cut off his head if he had not made himself known. So they brought him alive to Timur, who inform'd himself from him of the state of affairs of Tocatmich Can, and at length pardon'd him: he even gave him a vest, which he accompany'd with many other civilities, and inroll'd him into his service; infomuch that he who was before but a slave, became in a moment a great lord. Timur decamp'd, and march'd towards his capital; and in the month of Sefer, in the year of the Hegira 791, he encamp'd at Acar<sup>4</sup>, where he staid some time.

Feb. 1389.

When the spring appear'd, all the troops of the empire of Timur arriv'd. The Mirza Miran Chah came at the head of those of Corassana, and join'd the imperial camp: the troops of Balc, Condoz, Bacalan, Bedakchan<sup>5</sup>, Catlan, Hisar Chaduman, and many other towns and provinces did the same. Timur gave orders to the Mirza Omar Cheik, the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, and the Emir Aicoutmur, to cause a bridge of boats to be built over the Sihon near Cogende. The Emirs obey'd, and built others in many places to facilitate the passage of the troops, and they gave advice of it to the court.

An. Dom. 1389. At the beginning of the year of the Serpent, which answers to the month of Rabyulevel 791, this prince departed to continue the war in Capchac. When he arriv'd at the bank of the Sihon, accompany'd by the princes his sons, he

<sup>3</sup> Secretarys of the Tartar kings, who write in the Igurian characters.

<sup>4</sup> A village near Samarcand and Kech.

<sup>5</sup> A kingdom between Transoxiana and Tebet; it is part of Zagatai, is border'd by the Sihon towards the kingdom of Catlan.

cross'd the bridge at the head of a formidable army. He gave the command of the vanguard to the Emirs Temour Cortuc Aglen<sup>6</sup>, Seyind-gic Behader, and Osman Behader. These captains were no sooner on their road, than they sent out scouts to endeavor to discover those of the enemy. In short, they soon perceiv'd 'em, and at the same time gave advice to the Emirs of the vanguard. These skilful warriors lay in ambuscade to surprize those of Capchac, who having not seen our scouts were lain down to sleep, not regarding the maxims of war, which prohibit the taking any repose before one has advice of the condition of the enemy. Our men mounted their horses, after having prepar'd themselves for fighting; they march'd during the night, and having met the enemy, fell upon 'em like roaring lions on their prey.

They employ'd all sorts of arms to hinder any of the enemy's scouts escaping 'em: they kill'd a great number of 'em; but in the mean while there were several who sav'd themselves notwithstanding their wounds, and having cross'd the river Artch<sup>7</sup>, retir'd to Tocatmich. The army of this prince had besieg'd the town of Sabran<sup>8</sup>, which was vigorously defended by the captains, Gengherche, Lad and Cotchi; which made Tocatmich despair of taking it: so he rais'd the siege, and having pillag'd Yaffi<sup>9</sup>, encamp'd in the large plains of that country.

But he had no sooner receiv'd advice of the arrival of our troops, than he fled with all his

<sup>6</sup> Son of Ourous Can, and consequently an enemy to Tocatmich.

<sup>7</sup> Which discharges it self into the Sihon near Yenghi Kunt.

<sup>8</sup> A town of Capchac, long. 98. lat. 47. 30.

<sup>9</sup> A small town six leagues from Sabran.



Book III. soldiers who heard of it; and this army, so numerous and well furnish'd, which might have render'd it self formidable to all the nations, was defeated by a single report, and scatter'd here and there like grasshoppers on the plains. In short, the name and arms of the conquering Timur were so formidable to his enemys, that as soon as they heard of our approach, they made such haste in their flight, that we cou'd not perceive even the dust which their horses rais'd. The successful emperor, being inform'd of the rout of the enemy, sent Hadgi Seifeddin with the furniture of his household to Samarcand, while he march'd with diligence in pursuit of the fugitives. He sent before him, to gain intelligence, Coja Cheik Coutchin, Toplac Coutchin, Caracan Behader, and Deuletscha Gebegi, with forty chosen men, having each two horses. These horsemen came up with the soldiers of the enemy's rear, who remain'd behind in a place nam'd Sarec Ouzan<sup>\*</sup>; they attack'd 'em, and kill'd a great number; but some fled.

Our victorious warriors were in the desert, and about to return home, when they met Kitba Dercan, encamp'd with the hundred familys of which he was chief. They attack'd him so vigorously, that Chancoul, one of our horsemen, seiz'd him by the collar, and took him prisoner. They took all his people captives, seiz'd their cattel and flocks, which were conducted with a great deal of fatigue as far as Acfouma<sup>\*</sup>, where the imperial army was encamp'd.

---

<sup>\*</sup> A ford on the river Arsch.

<sup>\*</sup> A village of Zagatai, towards Capchac.

Timur decamp'd from that place, pass'd the desert by the way of Ozencchakel <sup>3</sup>, and arriv'd at Bilan <sup>4</sup>; from whence, passing by Sarec Ouzan, and Courdgun <sup>5</sup>, he went to encamp at Alcouchoun <sup>6</sup>.

## CHAP. IV.

### *Timur sends the Mirza Miran Chah into Corassana.*

**T**IMUR, being encamp'd at Alcouchoun, receiv'd advice that the Serbedal <sup>7</sup> princes, and Hadgi Bei Youn Garbani <sup>8</sup>, were revolted with the garisons of the towns of Kelat and Tous; whereupon he sent the Mirza Miran Chah thither, who departed at the head of the main body of the army. He made great haste, and as soon as he arriv'd at Samarcand, he caus'd Malek Pir Mehemet, son of Malek Cayaseddin, to be put to death; that so the cause of the disorders in Corassana might be remov'd, according to the instructions he had receiv'd. He us'd the

<sup>3</sup> A village of Gete.

<sup>4</sup> A town of Capchac.

<sup>5</sup> A hord in Capchac.

<sup>6</sup> A village in Capchac.

<sup>7</sup> Serbedal signifies head on the branch, because those among 'em who are factious, hang their turbants on branches, in token of resolution. The Serbedals reigned forty five years in Corassana, from 737, to 788, of the Hegira. The last of these kings was Coja Ali Muaid Serbedal; he dy'd in the camp of Timur, who plac'd a governor for himself in Sebzuar, where these kings, who were twelve in number, resided.

<sup>8</sup> The same as Youn; several villages in Corassana near the town of Tous.

Book III. same punishment towards Zein Elabeddin, and Mahmoud, son of Malek Pir Mehemet; inso-much that there remain'd not one of the family of these Courdes princes.

This young Mirza at length departed from Samarcand for Corassana; and as he pass'd by the fields of Behrabad<sup>2</sup>, he met the Serbedal kings, who affecting to shew their bravery on all occasions, came to meet him at the head of their army. These desperate men, who had resolv'd to conquer or die, fell furiously upon Timur's son, who sustain'd the onset with unparallel'd resolution; and having given a thousand marks of his great courage in this bloody action, his right and left wings advanc'd, and so dextrously surrounded the Serbedals, that they found themselves taken like birds in a net. Then all the army fell upon 'em, and cut 'em in pieces. Prince Melouc was the only person who found means to escape, tho' half dead, and to fly into Persia with two or three of his guards, who comforted him in his misfortunes. The Emir Acbouga, who was departed from Herat to quell this rebellion, laid siege to Tous, and took it, after Hadgi Bel, younger brother of Ali Bei Youn Garbani, was gone out of it to fly into Persia; but when he was at Semnane<sup>1</sup>, he was seiz'd by the Cheriffs of Hezaregheri<sup>3</sup>, and sent to the Mirza, who put him to death according to law.

After the Mirza Miran Chah had vanquish'd the rebels, and put an end to the disorders, by delivering the kingdom from the perfidious

---

<sup>2</sup> A town near Tous.

<sup>1</sup> A town of the province of Coumes, frontier of Corassana and Mazendran, long. 88. lat. 36.

<sup>3</sup> A town near Semnane.

Serbedals, he return'd to the place of his residence, well pleas'd with his expedition. Chap. 5.

In the mean while Timur having resolv'd to march in person in pursuit of Tocatmich Can, all the Emirs and lords of his council again fell on their knees before him, and as faithful servants represented to him, that it was more convenient, first, to march against Kezer Coja Aglen<sup>3</sup>, son of Togal Timur Can, and against Ancatoura, to give 'em battel and destroy 'em, as a punishment for their boldness, and to take from 'em all means of hurting him another time, and afterwards he might safely go against Tocatmich Can. The emperor finding reason on their side, follow'd their counsel.

## CHAP. V.

*Timur's expedition into Mogolistan against Kezer Coja Aglen, and the prince Ancatoura; which made the fifth campaign in that country.*

IN the year 791, Timur took a resolution to march into the country of the Moguls. He departed from Alcouchoun for this expedition; and passing by the road of Bouri Bachi<sup>4</sup>, with his army, and the troops of his household, he went to Topalic Carac<sup>5</sup>, and ascended the mountain of Ournac<sup>6</sup>; but as his cavalry was not in so

An. Dom.  
1389.

<sup>3</sup> King of Mogolistan and Gets.

<sup>4</sup> A town at the entrance of the great mountain of Caser Caucasus, which the Orientals say surrounds all Asia, long. 105, lat. 54.

<sup>5</sup> A hord near the mountain Ournac.

<sup>6</sup> The residence of Oguz the son of Japhet, the son of Noah, the founder of the Mogul empire; long. 110, lat. 55. It is also call'd Ournac Lornac.



good a condition as he cou'd wish because of the leanness of the horses, he sent three troopers out of every ten to the country of Samarcand, giving their horses to the seven who remain'd; and at length regulated all his cavalry at the rate of two horses to each man. He departed from his camp, and arriv'd at Aiker Sourî<sup>1</sup>, where there was no water, which very much incommoded the army, they being oblig'd for two or three days to dig wells to get some: but as they cou'd furnish thence only a small quantity for so great a multitude, God provided for 'em; for tho they were yet in the midst of summer, there was in the desert a vast large meadow cover'd with ice and snow, wherewith all the army quench'd their thirst, as did also the horses and cattel. The Moguls<sup>2</sup> then gave thanks to God, and departed to encamp at Togrul Otlac<sup>3</sup>; where Timur gave orders to his officers to make preparations for a general hunting; in the chase they travers'd the whole plain of Aigheryali<sup>4</sup>, where several wild asses were taken. They carry'd away the fattest, and left the others; and at length the army arriv'd at the plain of Oulanyarlic<sup>5</sup>, where it encamp'd in a place nam'd Chipar Aigher: at this place they perceiv'd Oulanbonga and Inekehie with a thousand horse belonging to Ancatoura, who march'd over these plains to seek the hord of Behrine. Mirec Elchi and Pir Alitaz commanded the vanguard of

<sup>1</sup> A hord at the foot of the mountain Ournac.

<sup>2</sup> The author here calls Timur and the soldiers of his army Moguls, because that prince descended from 'em.

<sup>3</sup> The meadow of the falcon, a hord in the kingdom of Gete, near the mountain Ournac.

<sup>4</sup> A passage of the river Tic.

<sup>5</sup> A plain in Gete, in which is a town call'd Chipar Aigher.

the right wing of our army; they vigorously attack'd the enemy, and with so much success, that they turn'd their backs and fled. Our men seiz'd on one of their soldiers, whom they brought to Timur: this prince having question'd him concerning the condition of the enemy, learnt that Ancatoura was at Ouronc<sup>2</sup>; whereupon he dispatch'd the Cheik Ali Behader, Aicoutmur and other Emirs to fight him: he order'd 'em to use all possible expedition to join him at Ouronkyar, and enjoin'd 'em not to make any fire all the way, that the enemy might have no news of their march. Timur immediately follow'd 'em, and march'd all night to make more haste. Next morning they perceiv'd that the guide having lost his way, the troops were not in the right road, which oblig'd our men to march all that day to regain the road by Caian Cazi<sup>3</sup>; and at the approach of night they came to Gheucfali<sup>4</sup>. The next morning they re-enter'd the road, and came to Aiokuz<sup>5</sup>: the army encamp'd there, and Timur held a council with the princes his sons, the Emirs, generals, and other princes and lords who accompany'd him; he told 'em, that as it was likely that the misfortune which happen'd in the road, might have occasion'd Ancatoura to hear of their march, and to disperse his troops, it was advisable that the army shou'd be divided into two bodys, to seek the enemy two different ways; which was highly approv'd. Upon this he immediately sent the Mirza Omar Cheik one way

---

<sup>2</sup> Otherwise call'd Ouronkyar, a town of Gete, long. 114. lat. 54.

<sup>3</sup> A town of Gete near mount Ornac.

<sup>4</sup> A village of Gete.

<sup>5</sup> A herd of Gete.

Book III. with part of the army, and gave him for a guide the Emir Gelal, son of Hamid; and Timur with the other body took the road to Chira<sup>6</sup>, Chébadtou<sup>7</sup>, Coni Meragh<sup>8</sup>, Coragan<sup>9</sup>, and Boyurlagou<sup>1</sup>; which places having pass'd, they came up to Caragoutchour<sup>2</sup>.

In the mean while the Mirza Omar Cheik, at the head of his body of the army, pass'd the plains and mountains; and wherever he met with any of the enemy's subjects, he vanquish'd and exterminated 'em, till at length he came up with Ancatoura at Coubac<sup>3</sup>. There was immediately made on both sides the great cry for the battel, which began with incredible vigor; it was continu'd in the same manner, and by the goodness of God our men gain'd the victory: they kill'd a great number of the infidels, and so briskly pursu'd Ancatoura who fled, that they constrain'd him to abandon that country, and fly to Cacamaburgi<sup>4</sup>. They took from him a great quantity of cattel: all his daughters, who were of incomparable beauty, fell into the hands of the conqueror; insomuch that the illustrious Mirza, contented with the advantage he had gain'd, return'd in triumph, and laden with spoils, to Timur his father, whom he had the honor of saluting at Actadictor<sup>5</sup>.

As it was a long time since the Cheik Ali Behader, and Aircoutmur had departed, and they had had no news of 'em; the Mirza Omar Cheik was order'd to march with a good

---

<sup>1</sup> A town of Gete.    <sup>2</sup> A town of Gete.    <sup>3</sup> A famous well.    <sup>4</sup> A town of Gete.    <sup>5</sup> A town of Gete.    <sup>6</sup> A temple of the Moguls.    <sup>7</sup> A town of Gete, long. 115. lat. 53.    <sup>8</sup> An antient castle on the frontiers of Gete, and N. of Turkestan, long. 115. lat. 55.    <sup>9</sup> A village near Coubac in Gete.




convoy to inform himself of what was become of 'em. This young prince immediately departed; but soon after the Emirs, whom he went in search of, arriv'd at the camp another way. In the mean while he pursu'd his road, and when he was arriv'd at a plain nam'd Itchmas Alaghen<sup>a</sup>, he by chance met eight hundred of the enemy's horse, commanded by Carabeian Temour: the Mirza had with him only fifty men, but they were all princes, Emirs, and generals; of which number were Codadad Hufseini, Temour Coja, Acbouga, Hadgi Mamurcha Yefouri, and Pir Hadgi Erlat; and the other lords were of the same rank with 'em. Notwithstanding the inequality of the forces, all these brave men trusted in God, and in the good fortune of Timur; and without hesitation attack'd the enemy, falling upon 'em in this desert far from any place of retreat, as lions upon their prey. The fight was bloody, but ours carry'd the victory, tho every horseman had six of the other side to combat with. The Mirza shew'd greater valor than any of the others on this occasion, and push'd his bravery to a point that was admir'd by all.

Pir Hadgi, son of Yetlandgi Erlat<sup>b</sup>, one of the most valiant warriors of the age, after having overthrown a great number of the enemy, and made his way thro the middle of 'em sword in hand like a roaring lion, was struck with an arrow, which took away his life. At length our brave men (which is almost incredible) put the enemy to the rout, slew a great number; and having pillag'd their horses, sheep, and

<sup>a</sup> A plain in Gete, near the river Irtych, where there is a salt-lake.

<sup>b</sup> The family of Erlat is accounted royal by the Moguls.



Book III.  cattel, return'd to the camp laden with booty, where they were receiv'd with all the applause which so considerable an action deserv'd. Timur at the same time arriv'd at Caragoutchour, where he encamp'd, and divided the booty among the officers and soldiers. He staid at this place long enough for the fatning of his horses. He sent the Emir Gehancha and Outchcara Behader with thirty-thousand horse, with all expedition, towards Artich<sup>\*</sup>, in search of the enemy: they march'd day and night, and arriving at the river of Irnich<sup>†</sup>, half the army march'd along the banks of the river, and many soldiers enter'd into the isles and other places where the enemy might have gone for shelter. There they found a great many, whom they slew, after having pillag'd their goods: they also took a great number prisoners, and return'd in triumph to the royal camp with the spoils.

At length Timur, having destroy'd all these Mogul soldiers who made head against him, put the captives in chains, and sent 'em under the conduct of Mir Lal, father of Tagi Bogai Berlas, Temour Bouga, and other Emirs, to the city of Samarcand, with all they had taken from 'em.

In the mean while Timur pass'd the great desert, and after many days journey arriv'd at Aimal Goujou<sup>‡</sup>, and lodg'd in the palace of Serai Ourdam, with a pompous retinue and the utmost magnificence.

---

<sup>\*</sup> Artich or Irnich, a town of Mogolistan, long. 130. lat. 56. 40.

<sup>†</sup> Formerly call'd Artich, a river which runs thro' all the country of Gete and Mogolistan, and discharges it self into the river Oby, which falls into the northern sea.

<sup>‡</sup> Capital of Gete, frontier of Mogolistan, long. 115. lat. 53.

CHAP. VI.

*Timur holds a diet, and sends his armys into all the quarters of the Moguls, to fight the Getes.*

AS Timur's ambition was boundless, and the least of his designs surpass'd the greatest actions in the world, he never abandon'd any one of his enterprizes till he had compleatly finish'd it. Tho his armys had several times overcome the enemy, who were almost ruin'd in this campaign; yet he held a general council with the princes his sons, and the other lords of the empire, upon the affair of the Getes, which he was in hopes of putting an end to: he resolv'd that the army shou'd be divided into several bodys, each of which shou'd march a particular way; that they shou'd surround the country where the Getes ordinarily dwelt; and as several of these people were retir'd into Mogolistan, they shou'd pursue 'em, and give 'em no quarter in whatsoever province they met with 'em. Pursuant to this resolution he call'd to the council those who were acquainted with the roads of the country, and who might serve as guides: they made their reports relating to the different passages and ways of these quarters; and wrote memoirs of 'em, copys of which were distributed among the princes and generals of the armys. Then a guide was order'd for each body of the army, and the road he was to take was set down, as also the country he was to surround; that by this means those who had fled for refuge

fuge into different places might be taken. And the country of Yulduz was order'd to be the rendezvous of all the commanders of the troops.

The Mirza Omar Cheik, who led the troops of Andecan, had for his guide the princes Burhan Aglen, and Beian Timar son of Gete Bilkidgic: he went by the road mark'd out to him; made inroads both to the right and left, pillag'd every thing he met, and put to the sword all the enemys he found: he cross'd the mountain Doubechin Andour<sup>2</sup>, and arriv'd at Cara Coja<sup>3</sup>, three months journey from Samarcand by the caravan.

Another body of the army was commanded by the Emir Gehancha, and Cheik Ali Behader, which was compos'd of thirty thousand horse well arm'd and mounted; they had for their guide an officer nam'd Sancour, and march'd by a private road; they went to Cara Art<sup>4</sup>, and to Chourougluc<sup>5</sup>, where they flew and pillag'd all the Gotes they met.

Osman Abbas commanded another body of the army of twenty thousand men, and had for a guide the Emir Gelal Hamid; they pass'd by Saghizgan<sup>6</sup>, Sougoulgan<sup>7</sup>, Ligh<sup>8</sup> and Gheveyar<sup>9</sup>, where they treated the inhabitants in the same manner they had treated the others.

Codadad Huseini, and Mobacher Behader were at the head of another body of twenty thousand men, who having for their guide Co-

<sup>2</sup> A mountain in Mogolistan near the lake Etracgheul.

<sup>3</sup> A town of Mogolistan, call'd also Aramur; long. 130. lat.

45. <sup>4</sup> A town in Mogolistan.

<sup>5</sup> A vally in Mogolistan, famous for the goodness of its soil. <sup>6</sup> A place in Mogolistan, where the king's revenues are collected.

<sup>7</sup> Another place for the same use. <sup>8</sup> Towns of Mogolistan.

martecour, arriv'd at Bicout\*, by the road of Chap. 6.  
Ouritchou?; they there met the hords of Boul-  
gagi and Ilker, to whom they gave battel, which  
prov'd bloody, and continu'd twenty-four hours  
without ceasing: but at length the enemy gave  
ground, and our victorious soldiers repuls'd 'em  
sword in hand, after having slain one part, and  
put the other to the rout; they pillag'd their  
goods, and return'd to the camp laden with  
spoils.

Timur began his march with his guards and  
household troops, and having taken Kelandoudgi  
for his guide, he went by the road of Oluc  
Coul?; and having ascended Sitchcandaban?,  
he again met those Boulgagis, who had esca-  
ped the fury of the last battel; he had no sooner  
perceiv'd 'em than he attack'd these infidels,  
who were defeated at the first onset, and cut  
in pieces.

Daban  
signify's a  
hill.

It is to be noted, that when Timur march'd  
into Capchac against Tocatmich Can, he left  
in Turkestan the Emir Yadghiar Berlas, the E-  
mir Soliman Chah, Chamseddin Abbas, and  
Cayaseddin Tercan; and when he was upon  
his return from that country, after having van-  
quish'd and pursu'd the army of Tocatmich, he  
turn'd towards Gete, and sent messengers to  
those Emirs who were in the western Turke-  
stan, between the kingdoms of Gete and Cap-  
chac, to order them also to march to the coun-  
try of the Moguls, that they might assist in the  
destruction of the Getes who were there.  
They obey'd these orders, enter'd into Mogo-


\* A town of Mogolistan, long. 133. lat. 52.

? A town in Mogolistan.

? The great stream of the river Irtych.

? A mountain, long. 124. lat. 53. 30.



Book III. listan, and left on the frontiers, according to  
 Timur's directions, Toi Bouga Cheik, that he might cause those lands to be cultivated. These Emirs march'd every where in search of the Getes; and after having gone many days journey, they came to Ourdaban<sup>3</sup>, then they cross'd over the river Abeile<sup>4</sup>, and arriv'd at Surgheul<sup>5</sup>, and at length at Tchitchelic<sup>6</sup>, the inhabitants of which were pillag'd, and our soldiers enrich'd with the spoils. From thence they went to Balaican<sup>7</sup>; and wheresoever they met any of their enemys, they destroy'd 'em, or brought 'em away captives and laden with chains. They search'd every where for the hords of Boulgagi and Saloudgi; and when they came to Molzoudon<sup>8</sup>, they met Kezer Coja Aglen, king of Mogolistan, at the head of a great army: our Emirs judg'd it improper to attack him on horseback, but as they were not accustomed to fly, they dismounted and tied their horses bridles to their belts: they then on a sudden let fly their arrows on the enemy, and hinder'd their gaining any advantage of 'em. The fight lasted forty eight hours, during which time our men kept fix'd back to back, facing about on all sides, no one stirring from his post: whatever motion Coublic, and the other commanders of the Getes cou'd make, they did not advance; and the battel was sustain'd on both sides in form. Every one thinking it a point of honor that this battel shou'd be finish'd

---

<sup>3</sup> A mountain of Gete near Transoxiana.

<sup>4</sup> A river which runs into the Sihon.

<sup>5</sup> A town on the bank of the great lake of sweet water.

<sup>6</sup> A town of Mogolistan, long. 117. 30. lat. 40.

<sup>7</sup> A town of Mogolistan, long. 125. lat. 50.

<sup>8</sup> A town of Mogolistan, long. 132. lat. 50.

with some accommodation, our brave Emirs Chap. 6.  
made a treaty with Kezer Coja Aglen, which was sworn to by both partys, and they return'd to Yulduz ; which place was the general rendezvous of the troops. Chah Melic Tercan, who thought it advisable to fly, and was gone into the great desert, join'd Timur at Keitou<sup>2</sup>, where he gave him an account of every thing remarkable in the battel. Upon this news Timur march'd with expedition, join'd the Toman of Sultan Mahmoud Can; and having pass'd by Conghez<sup>1</sup>, arriv'd at Yulduz, where the Emirs Yadghiar Berlas, Soliman Cha, Chamfeddin Abbas, and Cayas Eddin Tercan, who were upon their return after the combat and the peace with Kezer Coja Aglen, had the honor to kiss the royal carpet.

Timur chose the bravest men of his army, and leaving all his attendance, march'd with expedition, cross'd the river at Oulakianaour<sup>3</sup>, and follow'd the track of Kezer Coja Aglen: he pass'd the great desert, and arriv'd at Caroboulac<sup>4</sup>; from thence he went to Tebertach<sup>5</sup>, and coming to Couchon Cai<sup>6</sup>, he discover'd the enemy's army, and pass'd that night there. When the enemy perceiv'd us, they were afraid, and fled, being favor'd by the darkness of the night: there were some of 'em who went into the very middle of the desert, and places most

---

<sup>2</sup> A town of Mogolistan near the river Irutch, long. 126. lat.

54.

<sup>3</sup> A town of Mogolistan on the shore of the great lake Euracgheul, long. 125. lat. 53. 30.

<sup>4</sup> A passage over the river Ancora in Mogolistan.

<sup>5</sup> A famous fountain at the foot of the mountain Bergh'ar, long. 136. lat. 50.

<sup>6</sup> A village dependent on Caracorom.

<sup>7</sup> A village in Mogolistan, frontier of Calmac.

distant

Book III. distant from the public roads, and flung away  
 ~~~~~ their ensigns which were black. Thus the army of the Getes was dispers'd; and as every regiment took to a different road, many went that way by which the army of Timur came, and met the Mirza Omar Cheik, who caus'd 'em all to be slain, and pillag'd by his soldiers: a body of the fugitives, which follow'd another road, was met and cut in pieces by the Emir Gehancha and the Cheik Ali Behader.

Timur having pass'd the mountain call'd Nairin Keutel, pursu'd the enemy as far as Caratach<sup>e</sup>; and the king of the Getes, Kezer Coja Aglen, abandon'd his kingdom to save his life; neither did he compass that design till he had us'd several artifices, suffer'd great fatigues, seen all his warriors either slain or made prisoners, as well as his wives and children, and all the inhabitants of this country, which was entirely ruin'd and brought into confusion. Behold what extremitys those kings, who are enemys to Timur, are commonly reduc'd to! In the mean while our soldiers who had distributed themselves into all parts, gave no quarter to any one inhabitant of Gete, and made terrible havock as far as Conlan Keutel<sup>r</sup>; they got possession of an infinite number of horses, camels, sheep, and other beasts; and made abundance of both sexes slaves. Then the victorious Timur began his march homewards; he came to Jalich<sup>e</sup>, where he divided among the soldiers all the immense booty which he had taken from the Getes in all Mogolistan: at length he decamp'd from Jalich,

---

<sup>e</sup> A mountain of Mogolistan.

<sup>r</sup> A mountain at the extremity of Mogolistan, towards China.

<sup>e</sup> A town of Mogolistan near Bicour, long. 133. lat. 53.

and passing by Cagirtou<sup>9</sup> and Bilagir<sup>1</sup>, came to Yulduz, where he encamp'd. *Chap. 6.*

The Emirs and several bodys of the army, who were sent different ways into all the quarters of Mogolistan, to destroy entirely the Getes, came to this place, laden with spoils and an infinite quantity of captives, and had the honor of kissing the imperial carpet in this general rendezvous.

Yulduz<sup>2</sup> is a place of great delight and pleasure: the many delicious fountains, and abundance of pasture, render the living therein so very agreeable, that poets have compos'd verses in its praise. The beauty of its fountains is the reason of its name; for Yulduz signifies the morning-star: the grass there is so strong and nourishing, that the leanest horses, when they have been a week in its meadows, become fat and strong.

From thence Timur sent the Mirza Omar Cheik, with a numerous attendace, to his government of Andecan, ordering him to pass by the way of the iron-gate, nam'd Coluga, and to destroy the enemy whom he shou'd find in those quarters. This prince readily obey'd; and as soon as he had pass'd the iron-gate, he met the prince Coublic, one of the great Emirs of the Getes. On the noise of the great cry Souroun, and the great trumpet Kerrenai, the armys of the Mirza and Coublic began to move; the attack was made at the same time, and all

---

<sup>9</sup> A town.

<sup>1</sup> A mountain of Mogolistan, long. 135. lat. 50.

<sup>2</sup> Distant from Samarcand two months journey by the caravan, or four hundred and eighty leagues, at eight leagues a day; it is call'd Cyalis by F. Martini, in the voyage of F. Benoist Goetz to Carai, and is in the road from Muscovy to China.



Book III. the field was cover'd with the dead and wounded. Fortune declar'd in favor of the Mirza; Coubluc was taken, and his head cut off, according to the law of Genghiz Can. The Mirza, after he had made himself master of all Coubluc's horses, sheep, and other goods, and exterminated his subjects, continu'd his road by Couzain<sup>3</sup>, Outcheferman<sup>4</sup>, and the great city of Cachgar<sup>5</sup>, and at length successfully arriv'd at Andecan, the place of his residence, and the seat of his government.

---

## C H A P. VII.

*Timur returns to the seat of his empire.*

**T**IMUR having accomplish'd his designs with regard to the Getes, whose country he had entirely ruin'd, after vanquishing the inhabitants, multitudes of whom were slain, and others taken captives; and having enrich'd his soldiers with the spoils, (in which expedition he had march'd above a thousand leagues) being at length contented with his victories, he resolv'd to return to the imperial city of Samarcand. He departed from Ketchik<sup>6</sup> Yulduz at the head of his armys; and when he was arriv'd at Oluc<sup>7</sup> Yulduz, he appointed a solemn feast, and order'd preparations to be made for a magnificent entertainment, which was to be set off with the most exquisite diversions and

---

<sup>3</sup> A town of Tebet.

<sup>4</sup> A town of Turkestan.

<sup>5</sup> Capital of Turkestan, long. 107. lat. 43.

<sup>6</sup> The lesser Yulduz.

<sup>7</sup> The greater Yulduz, mention'd in the foregoing chapter.

pleasures. All the plain was cover'd with tents and pavilions, and the ground on which the imperial tent was fix'd, with carpets of brocades with flowers of gold; in the tent was plac'd a throne enrich'd with jewels of inestimable value; on which the emperor being set, with the scepter in his hand, and the crown on his head, he distributed robes of honor, and belts adorn'd with precious stones, to the princes, Emirs, Cheriffs, and all the lords and officers of his army: he also honor'd with his favors the generals and captains of his troops, as a recompence for their fatigues, and in joy of his victorys. But the pleasure which the brave-warriors receiv'd, when Timur applauded their actions, was inexpressibly great; in this charming retreat he sent 'em in cups of gold the most delicious wines by the hands of the most beautiful women in the world.

After they had pass'd some days in this joyful manner, they decamp'd from this delightful place; and Timur leaving the Emir Gehan Chah with his baggage, departed on sunday the fifteenth of Scaban 791, which answers to the year of the serpent; and made such expedition, that he arriv'd the seventh of Ramadan at Samarcand, that is to say, in twenty two days; tho from Yulduz to this capital of Transoxiana is generally accounted two months journey by the caravan. He render'd to the inhabitants of this great city, by his happy arrival, and the news of his victorys, that joy which his absence had depriv'd 'em of. The ladys, the children of the queens, the princes of the blood, and the officers of the city, testify'd their pleasure by the quantity of gold and precious stones, which they sprinkled over his head, the magnificence of the public feasts, and the

Ani. Dom.  
1389.

~~~~~ presents which they had the honor to make him: they adorn'd the city, and render'd it so splendid that it seem'd as if the season was turn'd into spring.

When winter was come, Timur went to Bocara, and pass'd that season at Gheulferketi<sup>s</sup>, where he order'd several little houses to be built in form of a dome for the lords and ladies of his court. And as there were here several fine ponds, in which were a vast number of all sorts of birds, and particularly swans, he resolv'd to divert himself with fowling. He encamp'd on the banks, and the officers built floats, on which they enter'd these ponds, and with great crys and the noise of drums and kettle-drums, scar'd the birds, and constrain'd 'em to fly; and while they pass'd from one pond to another, the fowlers cry'd out to encourage 'em, but they cou'd not escape the furious assault of the merciless Togrul\*, which is the strongest and most cunning of all the birds of prey: the drums likewise made 'em fearful, so that in a short time they caught 'em in vast numbers. These birds are here in so great plenty, that the author of the Mogul annals, call'd Gehan-gucha, writes, that the princes Zagatai and Octai, sons of the great Genghiz Can, pass'd a whole winter in this sport in this country, from whence they sent every week fifty camels laden with swans, to be distributed in the general camp, which was without Samarcand: and this distribution of the birds is call'd by the Tartars Chirilga. But no other author makes mention of this particular custom. During the winter, Soliman Chah was elevated to the highest degree of fortune, and was particular-

\* Abird  
unknown  
in France.

---

• A pond near Bocara.

ly favor'd by Timur, who gave him the illustrious princess Sultan Bact Begum<sup>9</sup> in marriage; for whom he had banquets prepar'd, and the most magnificent presents.

After the Mirza Miran Chah had finish'd, according to the emperor's intentions, the affairs for which he was sent into Corassiana, he began his march to return to court: the Emirs and other lords went to meet him with great ceremony, and he paid his respects to Timur in his winter-quarters at Bocara. He was very handsomely receiv'd, Timur tenderly embrac'd him, and having kiss'd his face, he entertain'd him, and enquir'd concerning all the circumstances of his journey. The Mirza entirely satisfy'd him in his answers; having kiss'd the earth, and made supplications to God, according to custom, he offer'd his presents, which very much pleas'd Timur, who applauded him in every thing, and order'd him to set down in a rank worthy of his grandeur. The joy at his arrival was universal, because it was apprehended that this prince added fresh glory to religion and the state.

The emperor was desirous that during this winter the young Mirza Aboubecre, son of Mirza Miran Chah, shou'd be betroth'd to the daughter of the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin. The princess Canzade prepar'd the marriage-feast. But as there is no happiness without a mixture of sorrow, and 'tis the divine appointment that we shou'd weep in the midst of joy, the illustrious lady Coudac Catoun, wife of Timur's father, pass'd from this transitory world to eternity. Timur shew'd much affliction at the loss

---

<sup>9</sup> Widow of Mircke, and daughter of Timur.



Book III. of this venerable lady, prepar'd funeral-banquets, and gave much alms to the poor, the lame and the orphans. The body of the princess was carry'd to the town of Kech, where it was inter'd.

After winter, Timur departed for Samarcand with all his court, hunted in his march; and having pass'd by Carchi, went to encamp at Akiar in the agreeable meadow of Kech, on the bank of the river of Cochca'. The ground on which the royal tent was prepar'd was cover'd with brocade, as was all the field with standards and umbrellas.

## C H A P. VIII.

### *The Controultai, or diet, held by Timur's order.*

AS the valor of Timur, and the power of the Turks<sup>1</sup>, especially of the soldiers of Zagatai, was now arriv'd to a very high pitch; so they were not only independent and sovereigns, but even made all the other people from the east of Asia, to the west of that part of the world, to tremble: and by the large booty the soldiers had gain'd in the several campaigns, they were become so rich, that the officers, to maintain their own power, seem'd to employ themselves only in suing only the protection of those princes

<sup>1</sup> A river which runs into the Toun, which discharges it self into the Gihon.

<sup>2</sup> The author here calls the Zagaraian soldiers Turks, as in other places he gives 'em the name of Moguls.

who they suppos'd might one day be their masters. Timur therefore thought it advisable to enlarge the regiments, and by that means augment the expences of the commanders, and diminish their riches, which might seduce 'em from their obedience. In the year 792, which answers to that of the horse, he sent orders to all parts of his dominions for holding the Couroultai at Akiar, where he was encamp'd.

An. Dom.  
1390.

All the Emirs and generals of the army, the chiefs of the Tomans, and Hezares, the centurions and captains of ten men, as also the governors of the provinces, came to the solemn banquet, which was usually made in that assembly; the ceremonys whereof were observ'd with so much prudence and regularity, that it seem'd as if they were once again in the times of Feridon<sup>3</sup> or Afrasiab<sup>4</sup>. When the order for augmenting the regiments of the army was signify'd, all the commanders fell down, and kiss'd the earth, in token of obedience; they agreed to every thing contain'd in the order of their sovereign, and the whole was regulated according to his pleasure; they all gave it under their hands, that they wou'd bring to the general rendezvous the number of troops they were tax'd at. The Tavatchis<sup>\*</sup>, who took their subscription, were the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, the Emir Gehancha Jacou, and the Emir Chamseddin Abbas. At the dissolution of this numerous assembly there was another magnificent feast made

\* Commissarys  
general.

<sup>3</sup> An antient king of the Persians about the time of the deluge.

<sup>4</sup> An antient king of the Tartars or Scythians.

In their times were made feasts wherein fifty thousand men were sumptuously entertain'd. See the history of Chah Name, or of the kings of Persia, by Fardihouffy.

Book III. by Timur's order, the expences of which were prodigious great. The princesses and ladys were all adorn'd with the richest jewels; the earth was cover'd with carpets of gold, China brocades, and embroider'd pieces of work enrich'd with pearls, rubys, and other precious stones: the cups, which were presented by the most beautiful women in the world, were of pure rock-chrystal, work'd with all the delicacy and fineness which can be expected from the skill and industry of the most ingenious artists of past ages. Timur laid hold on this occasion, where the joy was so general, to give in marriage the princess Sevindge Cotluc Aga, daughter of Chirrin Bei Aga, who was exceedingly handsom and much belov'd by him, to the Mirza Omar Cheik his grandson: and after the solemnity of the nuptials was over, the Mirza Miran Chah was order'd to return into Corassana, and the Mirza Omar Cheik to Andecan, as the Emirs and governors were to their respective governments and hords. The emperor also departed home, and some days after came down to the meadow of Ilgazigage, situate without the town of Samarcand, after having put the affairs of his empire in all necessary order.

---

## C H A P. IX.

*Timur sends his troops into the country of the Getes.*

**A**T the beginning of the same year the emperor sent into the country of the Getes the Emirs Soliman Chah, Codadad Housseini, Chamseddin Abbas, and his brother the Emir Ofman

Osman; and among the colonels of the regiments and the officers of the household, he sent Saddictaban, Sultan Sendger, the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, Hassan Jandar, Tilec Coutchin, Aid Coja, Toukel Baourchi, and Nufret Comari, who commanded twenty thousand horse. As soon as they had cross'd the Sihon at Tachkunt, they march'd to Issigheul<sup>5</sup>, where they met the Emir Malich Aperdi and his son Beikech, with Badir and Sadir, Turcomans, at the head of five thousand brave men who came from Andecan from Mirza Omar Cheik, and join'd our army. When they arriv'd at Gheustopa<sup>6</sup>, they staid some days to inform themselves of the state of the enemy; they took the road of the mountain Arjatou<sup>7</sup>, met many of the enemy, of whom they slew several, and took others prisoners; they carry'd away their wives and children, pillag'd their goods, and destroy'd the country. Thus they went thro all the provinces of the Getes, and advanc'd as far as Almalegh, where having swam over the river Abeile<sup>8</sup>, they arriv'd at Caratal, a hord of Ancatoura; there they learnt that Olagiai Bouga Moutchel Catchi, of the family of the Coutchins, who went before 'em at the head of four hundred horse to gain intelligence, had met Camareddin in a hunting-country, that our men had been worsted, and that the greatest part of the soldiers on each side were kill'd on the spot. Upon this news the Emirs sent Hassan Jander, Malich and Beikech, to inform themselves more truly of this event. These captains, whose prudence and va-

---

<sup>5</sup> A lake near Berket in Gete, long. 100. lat. 43.

<sup>6</sup> A hill in Gete, long. 101. 20. lat. 43. 25.

<sup>7</sup> A mountain of Gete near Almalegh, long. 102. lat. 44.

<sup>8</sup> A river which discharges it self into the Sihon.



Book III. for were well known, immediately departed, and arriving at the field of battel, saw a great many lie dead on the earth; and among 'em one of our men of the hord of Malangou, in whom there remain'd a little life, he having eat nothing but herbs for forty days: they comforted him, and brought him to the Emirs. He assur'd 'em that in this place they had fought Camareddin, that there were many soldiers slain on both sides, and that ours fled after having been sufficiently maul'd, and that Camareddin march'd towards the fields of Itchna Boutchna \*. The Emirs immediately departed in search of him, and having pass'd by Itchna Boutchna, they arriv'd at Ouker Keptadgi †, where they left their baggage, and departed thence post; and when they were arriv'd on the banks of the river Irtich, they learnt that Camareddin had cross'd it, and was gone towards Taoulas ‡, into the woods where sables and ermins are said to be found: they saw the rafts and boats the enemys had built to cross the water. The Emirs staid some days at this place, and cross'd the river, to engrave their arms and red characters with fire on the pine-trees of these woods; which they did, that succeeding ages might see the marks of the arrival of the army of Timur on the trees of the forests of his enemys, and as an assurance of their conquests beyond the river Irtich.

But as there were six months past since they came into these desarts, where they wanted provisions, and most of 'em liv'd on what they got in hunting, and on wild roots; and as the air became extremely cold, they resolv'd to return,

---

\* A town of Turkestan, long. 107. lat. 47.

† A town of Turkestan, long. 100. lat. 48.

‡ A town of Tartary, long. 127. lat. 60.

which they did by Altoun Caourke<sup>3</sup>, where there is a road made on the banks of the great lake call'd Etrac Gheul<sup>4</sup>, and making great haste, they happily arriv'd at Samarcand, where they had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet. Chap. 10.

## CHAP. X.

### *Timur marches into the desert of Capchac.*

**D**URING the autumn of the same year An. Dom. 1390. 792, Timur took up a resolution to make war in person in Capchac; for this purpose he regulated his troops, turn'd all his foot soldiers into cavalry, equipp'd 'em with arms, and provided 'em mony and every thing necessary. He departed from Samarcand at the head of his army; and having caus'd a bridge to be built over the Sihon at Cogende, he cross'd this river with design to pass the winter at Tachkunt, between Barsin and Tehinas.

In the mean while his devotion prompted him to visit the tomb of Cheik Massahet, where they say many miracles are perform'd. Timur knowing this visit was due from him, not only on a religious but even on a political account, in that it wou'd further the accomplishment of his designs. He came to Cogende for that purpose, which he did with shew of extraordinary devotion, distributing among the poor ten thousand Dinars Copeghi<sup>5</sup>: and at length he went to Tachkunt,

<sup>3</sup> A town on the bank of the great lake of Turkestan.

<sup>4</sup> Great lake in Turkestan on the frontiers of Mogolistan.

<sup>5</sup> The Dinars Copeghi are ducats of gold, worth seven liyres, ten sols of French mony,

Book III. where he lay dangerously sick for the space of forty days; during which time the Emirs and great lords were in the utmost consternation. This prince was in a manner the soul of the world; and the fear of losing him made many persons tremble. In short, the people believ'd that his sword wou'd no longer be able to protect the weak, and keep the powerful within bounds: that the security of families wou'd soon be lost, houses plunder'd, and the cloysters broke open, wherein true chastity is preserv'd. Whereupon every one address'd themselves to God by prayer, and the vows made for his health were so ardent and efficacious, that the Almighty restor'd him, because it was absolutely necessary for the publick weal. This good news caus'd every one to rejoice; and they render'd solemn and public praises to God for the recovery of the emperor's health.

When Timur had recover'd his strength, the Mirza Miran Chah arriv'd at the head of the troops of Corassana, and paid his respects. The emperor review'd his army and put it in order; he made presents to the generals and other Emirs, and distributed among the soldiers all the silver money which was in the treasury; which distribution the Turks call *Okulga*, as the distribution of the birds taken in the chase is call'd *Chirilga*. He also gave horses, arms and clothes to those who wanted 'em, and assign'd guides to the several generals.

The guides of the body of the army in which the imperial standard was fixt, were Temour Cotluc Aglen, son of Temour Malec Can of Capchac, Condge Aglen, also prince of Capchac, and Aidecon Uzbek.

An. Dom.  
1391.

On thursday the twelfth of the month Sefer, in the year of the Hegira 793, the sun being then

then in the eighth degree of Aquarius, Timur departed from Tachkunt with his court, and left Mirza Pir Mehemet Gehanghir, and Mirza Charoc, to govern the empire of Zagatai in his absence, and gave 'em for lieutenants the Emirs Lal and Melket. Timur sent away all the ladys, except his favorite Sultaneſs, Tchulpan Mulc Aga, daughter of Hadgi Bei<sup>7</sup> of Gete; who in this journey had the honor of privately converſing with the emperor. As ſoon as the imperial ſtandard began its march, the Emirs of the Tomen and Hezares, and the colonels of the regiments, departed at the ſound of the trumpets, and the court came to Cara Suman<sup>8</sup>.


At this time ambaffadors came from Tocatmich Can; they were conducted with all the uſual honors and ceremonies, by the Emirs in the higheſt ſtations. The great ſnows and rains oblig'd the court to ſtay ſome days at Cara Suman. Timur order'd that the ambaffadors ſhou'd be brought to him with freedom, and ſhou'd enter in at the great gate of the imperial tent. As ſoon as this permiſſion was granted 'em, they ran<sup>9</sup> thither, touch'd the ground with their head, in token of their reſpect to the emperor; and they us'd nothing but the moſt reſpectful compliments, by which they begg'd pardon for their maſter, and aſcrib'd a thouſand praiſes to Timur. At length they pre-

<sup>7</sup> Hadgi Bei Ircanour, prince of the Getes.

<sup>8</sup> A town of Capchac, long. 99. lat. 45. 6.

<sup>9</sup> The cuſtom at the entry of ambaffadors ſent to the Tartar emperors, is this: as ſoon as the gate of the imperial pavilion is open, and a ſign made to advance, they run to caſt themſelves at the feet of the throne.



Book III.  sented to him a Choncar<sup>1</sup>, and nine horses of surprizing swiftness. He indeed took the Choncar in his hand: but he gave the ambassadors no other marks of a good reception or compliance, tho it was the custom of this great prince to caress all ambassadors. Those who perceiv'd this difference of reception, said all they cou'd to engage Timur to pardon Tocatmich. To conclude their audience, they presented also, thro the intercession of the great Emirs, the letter of Tocatmich Can, which contain'd the following words.

“ Your majesty has always acted the part of a father towards me; you have always nourish'd and brought me up as your son, and the favors I have receiv'd from you are innumerable. If my wicked proceedings and the war I have carry'd on by the instigation of some malicious persons, which has been my misfortune, and of which I repent and am ashamed, can once more find pardon from the clemency of my lord, this will be an addition to the obligations I owe to him; this goodness will make me consider what I am, and hereafter, far from acting contrary to the treatys made with his majesty, I will do every thing which shall please him in token of my respect and thankfulness: in short, I will be a submissive and obedient servant to his orders.”

---

<sup>1</sup> A sort of bird of prey presented to the kings, adorn'd with several precious stones; which is a mark of homage: and the Muscovites, as well as the Crim Tartars, are oblig'd by their last treaty with the Ottomans, to send one every year adorn'd with a certain number of diamonds, to the port of the grand seignior of the Ottomans.

Timur answer'd the ambassadors in these terms: " When your master Tocatmich was wounded and ill us'd by his enemys, and came for refuge to us, every one knows that I rank'd him among my children, and us'd him kindly. At length looking upon his interest as my own, I made war on Ourous Can, and march'd my troops against him; which was the reason that great part of my cavalry, and an infinite number of equipages and riches entirely perish'd by reason of the cold which this winter was extremely violent. Notwithstanding this misfortune, I endeavour'd to maintain and defend him against every one; I separated his country and subjects from those of Ourous Can, and put 'em into his hands: at length I render'd him so powerful, that he was crown'd emperor of Capchac, and ascended the throne of Touchi: Truly I confess that this good fortune comes from God, but I know at the same time I have been the instrument of it: and the friendship I had for him induc'd me to call him son, while he call'd me father. When he saw himself powerful, and fortune had begun to be favorable to him, he forgot the obligations he ow'd me: and without thinking in what manner a son ought to behave towards a father, he took the opportunity, while I was gone into Persia, and was employ'd in the conquests of the kingdoms of the Persians and Medes, to betray me and commit acts of hostility against me. He hath sent his troops to ruin the places near my kingdom. I seem'd to take notice of it, that he might consider with himself, be asham'd of his action, and for the future abstain from the like extravagances. But he was so drunk with his ambition,

Book III.

“tion, that not distinguishing good from evil,  
 “he hath since sent another great army against  
 “me, the vanguard of which, compos’d of a  
 “considerable body of horse, is enter’d into my  
 “country. It is true, as soon as we put our-  
 “selves in a readiness to march against this  
 “vanguard, they fled before they cou’d per-  
 “ceive the dust our horses made : and now To-  
 “catmich having advice of our march, begs  
 “pardon, because he knows no other way to  
 “save himself from the punishment he deserves.  
 “But since we have seen him so often violate  
 “his oaths, and treatys, it wou’d be impru-  
 “dence to rely on his promises. We will exe-  
 “cute, with the assistance of God, the reso-  
 “lution we have taken, and the design for  
 “which we have levy’d our army, that all the  
 “world may see that God punishes the ingrate-  
 “ful. In the mean while, whatever reason we  
 “have for making war, and exterminating him ;  
 “if he presently tells the truth, and sincerely  
 “desires peace, he must send to meet us Ali  
 “Bei<sup>o</sup> ; that he may negotiate it with our great  
 “Emirs ; and we will do whatever is con-  
 “sistent with our dignity, and the present con-  
 “juncture.”

Timur then order’d the ambassadors to be  
 regal’d, and gave ’em vests of gold stuffs ; he  
 settled their expences, and commanded that  
 they should be handsomly treated, but that his  
 officers shou’d have an eye upon their actions.

March 5.

The sixth day of the month of Rabyulevel,  
 Timur held a council with the princes his sons  
 and the great Emirs ; and it was resolv’d that the  
 ambassadors of Tocatmich shou’d follow the

---

<sup>o</sup> First minister of Tocatmich Can.

†

army,

army, which at length march'd to the conquest of the empire of Touchi: they pass'd by Yassi, Caratchoc<sup>3</sup>, and Sabran; and having gone along way, and encamp'd and decamp'd for three weeks in the vast plains of Capchac, the horses were so fatigu'd with the great way they had gone, and the scarcity of water, that they were reduc'd to extremity. At length on the first day of the month of Jumazyulevel the army arriv'd at Sarec Ouzan, where the horses quench'd their thirst, and the soldiers return'd thanks to God; they employ'd some days in crossing the river, because the waters were very high: but having found an easy passage, they decamp'd, and swam over the river. During this night two servants of Aidecou Uzbek fled, and pass'd the desert to find Tocatmich Can; they pursu'd 'em, but were not able to overtake 'em. The army continu'd its march in the great desert, and encamp'd in places where there were wells, that they might not want water.

The twenty-first of the month Jumazyulevel, they came to a mountain nam'd Coutchec Tac<sup>4</sup>; from thence in two nights and one day they went to encamp at Oulouc Tac<sup>4</sup>, where Timur wou'd have the pleasure of seeing this great desert of Capchac: he ascended a mountain, and saw with admiration those vast plains, which for the space they took up, and their verdure, resembled the sea. He staid there all the day, and order'd the soldiers to bring stones to that place, where he caus'd a very high obelisk to be erected; and skilful engravers engrav'd on it the date of the year

<sup>3</sup> A town of Capchac between Yenghikunt and Sabran.

<sup>4</sup> Mountains in Capchac, between the rivers Arich and Hlan-jouc.



Book III. and day on which Timur came there at the head of his army, that this structure might remain as a lasting monument to posterity. The troops decamp'd, and while they march'd follow'd the chace; they arriv'd at the banks of the river Ilanjou<sup>c</sup>, where they encamp'd; and when they had cross'd the river, they continu'd their march, and in eight days arriv'd at Anacargou<sup>c</sup>. And as it was four months since they came from Tachkunt, the army wanted victuals; and what was more strange, in whatsoever part of the desert they march'd, tho they had gone six or seven months journey, they met not a single man, nor any cultivated land. Victuals were extremely dear and scarce in the camp; a sheep was sold for a hundred Dinars Copeghi, and a Man<sup>7</sup> of wheat of good weight, weighing six royal Mans, was worth near a hundred Dinars Copeghi; and moreover it was very difficult to get them for money. Timur order'd his guards, as also all the Emirs of the Tomans, the colonels of thousands, the centurions and decurions, to make proclamation that no one on pain of death shou'd bake in the camp either bread, pastry-work, mutton, pies, tarts, or any thing proper for boiling; but that every one shou'd be contented with Boulamaja<sup>s</sup>, which is commonly bak'd. The Emirs themselves began to live in this manner, for an example to others; insomuch that a Man of wheat of Embar weight, equal to eight royal Mans, with a few herbs added, wou'd make sixty dishes of Bou-

<sup>s</sup> A river which runs into the Tic in Capchac.

<sup>c</sup> A hord in Capchac, long 100. lat. 54.

<sup>7</sup> A Man weighs a pound and a half french weight.

<sup>s</sup> Meat fricass'd and minc'd, with a white sauce, like a fricassly of chickens.

lamaja, and each soldier had a dish allow'd him every day. But as at length they were not in a condition to allow so much, many soldiers were depriv'd of it, and were oblig'd to hunt constantly in this vast desert, and to live upon only some eggs of birds and certain animals, with what herbs they found fit to eat; of which they cou'd scarcely find enough to sustain life. Timur order'd a general hunting on sunday the first of Jumaz-yulaker: the Tavatchis gave orders to the Emirs of the right and left wing of the army to send out soldiers to form the Gerke; so they surrounded a great tract of land, wherein they chas'd an infinite number of beasts and birds; and two days after made a slaughter of the beasts, which is call'd Camarmichi.

Timur rode on horseback in all parts of the circle, and slew a great number of fawns, antilopes, deers and roe-bucks, till his dinner-time, which was two hours and a half before noon; and then he return'd to his tent: at length the soldiers fell upon the game, and slew so many stags, deers and other beasts, that abundance of victuals was brought to the camp; which caus'd great joy after the sad scarcity they had suffer'd. They pickt out the fat beasts, and left the lean. Among this game they found a sort of stags larger than buffalos, which surpriz'd 'em, they having never seen the like before: these animals are call'd Candagai by the Mogols, and Bufen by the inhabitants of Capchac; they slew a great many of 'em, and the army subsisted a long time on their flesh.

## C H A P. XI.

*Timur reviews his troops.*

AFTER this hunting was finish'd, Timur was willing to take an exact view of his troops; he order'd 'em to be plac'd by Tomans and squadrons, and that every soldier shou'd have his lance, war-club, poniard, and leathern buckler, and that their horses shou'd be cover'd with tigerskins; he also took care that each of 'em shou'd have a sabre on his left side, and a half-sabre on his right. Timur mounted his horse cloth'd in his royal robes; he had on his head the crown of gold enrich'd with rubys, and held in his hand a golden mace carv'd at top like an ox's head. In this state he began to march by the left wing, which he found in good order: he pass'd before the first rank compos'd of the Toman of Birdi Bei. This general leap'd off his horse, and took notice to Timur of the looks, stature, armor, and address of his soldiers; he fell on his knees holding his horse's bridle, kiss'd the earth, and made supplications for Timur; (for the custom of reviews is, that at that time every commander shou'd make supplication for the emperor, and speak an elogium on him even in his presence.) "Let  
"all the world, said he, be obedient to Timur:  
"our heads and our lives, as fidelity and our  
"duty obliges us, shall always be ready to be  
"sacrific'd at the feet of the horse of his majesty."  
Timur answer'd, and applauded the Bei, wishing that thro the valor of this brave man and of those who are like him, the empire might continue always flourishing. This prince  
staid

staid at the Toman of Birdi Bei, and examin'd all the companys belonging to it : he then rode towards the Toman of Codadad Hussein, which he found compleat and well-equipp'd, the soldiers in their posts, and the ranks perfectly guarded. This Emir, as well as the first, on his knees besought Timur to observe the order of the soldiers of his Toman, as also their stature and equipage, and made a discourse in praise of his majesty, and a prayer for his prosperity. Timur answer'd him with the same complaisance as he us'd to the other ; he testify'd his friendship, and commended him for the good order in which he saw his Toman. Cheik Temour, son of Akitmur Behader, at the head of the Hezares of the hord of Selduz, came next in order of battel ; these had for their arms, bows, arrows, and nets to catch men, besides a scymitar and club. Cheik Temour also made supplication on his knees, and paid his respects. Timur approv'd of his conduct, return'd him thanks, and march'd on farther. He came to the body of the army of Andecan, commanded by the Mirza Omar Cheik, all whose ensigns were display'd ; he staid there a long time, because this body was more numerous than the others. The Mirza hasten'd to pay his devoirs and to the emperor, according to the maxims of war ; which was highly sutable to the son of so great a monarch. He fell on his knees, as the rest had done, and made his vows for the prosperity of his majesty : he congratulated him on his conquests, which extended from the frontiers of China to the Caspian gates. The emperor was very well pleas'd with the body of the army commanded by the Mirza his son, prais'd him exceedingly, and with a great deal of goodness said, " I pray God that  
" fortune be at your disposal, and always give



Book III. "you the advantage over your enemys." Timur overjoy'd, advanc'd towards the regiment of Mahmond Can; and at length came to the Toman of the Emir Soliman Chah: these two generals spake as usual, and gave presents to the emperor, who carefs'd and prais'd 'em for the good order of their regiments. He at length saw the squadron of the young prince Mehemet Sultan Behader his grandson, examin'd theranks of his soldiers with attention, and staid there a long time. This young Mirza made his submissions, as the others had done, prais'd the emperor his grandfather, offering vows for his prosperity, which were well receiv'd; and Timur full of joy said to him, "My very dear and worthy son, my family being enlighten'd with such a lamp as you, can never fail of continuing in brightness and splendor."

At length the emperor examin'd the regiment of the guards, which made up the main body; all the Emirs and captains of which made their submissions and vows, as also the Mirza Miran Chah who commanded the right wing of the army: for after Timur had view'd the Hezares and Tomans, the Emirs and great generals who commanded 'em, as Mehemet Sultan Chah, the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, the Emir Gehancha Yakou, and several others, rang'd their Tomans by Hezares and companys, and put 'em in order of battel neatly equipt. When Timur had pass'd by one regiment, the commanders fell on their knees, and follow'd him in that posture; and leading their horses by their bridles, they made intercession for his health, and speeches in his praise, full of marks of their good-will and sincerity.

This great prince encourag'd 'em, and distinguish'd 'em by applauses sutable to the order he observ'd

observ'd their soldiers in. In short, the review Chap. 12.  
 continu'd two days from morning till evening ;  
 and the emperor found that this numerous army  
 was in the condition resolv'd on at the Couroul-  
 tai or diet, which was held at Akiar in the  
 meadow of Kech, and which the Emirs had  
 promis'd in writing. At length they beat the  
 kettle-drums, made the great cry Souroun as at  
 the beginning of a fight, and got off their hor-  
 ses, infomuch that every one, seeing the exact  
 order of this great army, cou'd not sufficiently  
 admire the power, valor, and good conduct of  
 the invincible Timur.

## C H A P. XII.

*Timur sends the Mirza Mehemet Sultan at  
 the head of the scouts.*

**W**HEN Timur had finish'd this review,  
 and receiv'd the compliments of all the  
 generals of the army, after he had animated  
 their courage by his speeches, he resolv'd to send  
 a general to command the body of troops call'd  
 Mangalai<sup>2</sup> in the Mogol language. The young  
 resolute Mirza Mehemet Sultan fell on his knees,  
 and besought his father to honor him with that  
 employ. The emperor approv'd the zeal he  
 shew'd at so tender an age : and granted his re-  
 quest ; and having caress'd him, gave him the  
 command of the body of the scouts, letting him  
 know that by reason of the employ he had in  
 charge, the generals and soldiers of the army re-

<sup>2</sup> The vanguard of the army.

Book III. pos'd their confidence in him, and that he had  
 need of great presence of mind, a strong constitution, and perfect activity to acquit himself worthily of an employ which was the principal part of war, and on which the security of the army entirely depended. The astrologers having fix'd the hour and moment of his departure, which was on the twenty fourth of April; this Mirza immediately put himself at the head of the scouts, and the great Emirs were order'd to accompany him every where. They had yet no news of the enemy; but the Mirza, after two days march with the Emirs, found a kind of beaten road, and came to the place where they had encamp'd, and made fires in five or six places, which were not yet entirely extinguish'd. They immediately sent advice of it to Timur, who order'd expert guides to find out which way those who had lighted those fires were gone: he always recommended to 'em to gain information of the enemy's army, to keep a strict guard, and to neglect nothing, but use all necessary precautions to discover the enemy, and to be well assur'd of every thing. The Mirza and the Emirs having receiv'd these orders, immediately obey'd, and march'd day and night, greatly fatigu'd, to inform themselves of what they cou'd: they came to the river of Toupal<sup>2</sup>, and having cross'd it, the scouts brought advice that they had seen fire in seventy places; and that they had fought every where, but had not found one person. They brought word of it to Timur, who immediately decamp'd, and march'd with extreme diligence. When he was arriv'd at the river of Toupal, he found the passage destroy'd

---

<sup>2</sup> A river which runs into the Tic in Capchac.

by the scouts, and order'd the soldiers to get faggots and great pieces of wood to mend it; and at length he cross'd the river with all his army, and join'd the former body. *Chap. 9.*

All those who were sent to gain intelligence, wander'd like vagabonds in this vast desert, without seeing one footstep, or learning any news of the enemy. Timur order'd the Cheik Daoud a Turcoman to come before him, and sent him with a convoy to gain intelligence. He was a man of courage and experience, who had pass'd part of his life in these deserts, and there suffer'd extreme fatigues, to finish several important affairs, and had endur'd the cold and heat of seasons. The Cheik departed according to these orders, and after two days and two nights march, discover'd some hamlets of little consequence; he went with his guard behind a hill, and on the next morning they perceiv'd a horseman who came out of these hamlets on some particular business; they waited till he had pass'd 'em, then they rush'd upon him, took him, and carry'd him to Timur. This prince treated him handsomly, and made the Cheik Daoud several presents, and among the rest a gold scarf to hold a quiver, and a rich and curious vest. He demanded of the prisoner news of Tocatmich Can; who answer'd, that it was a month since he and his comrades came out of their own country to dwell in that place, but that they heard no news of the grand Can, tho ten cavaliers in armor, unknown to them, came six days ago to 'em, and retir'd to a wood at a small distance from these hamlets. Timur order'd Aid Coja to go with sixty men to make the inhabitants of these hamlets decamp, and bring 'em to court, which he did. Comari Yesaoul was at length sent with twenty horse, to bring away by force



Book III. force the ten men who were in the wood. He got thither, and fought 'em; some were slain, and the others taken and brought to Timur, who learnt from their mouths certain news of Tocatnich Can, on which the army decamp'd.

May 11.

After having march'd many days, and pass'd several lakes and rivers, they arriv'd the 24th of Jumazyulakher on the bank of the river of Tic<sup>3</sup>. The guide said there were three passages over this river, one call'd Aygher Yali, another Boura Ghetchit, and the third, which was the least of all, Tchapma Ghetchit. Timur did not judge it convenient to march by these passages, lest the enemy shou'd lie there in ambuscade; but he was willing that at the place they were in, they shou'd all, both horse and foot, swim over the river: yet this cou'd not be done in less than two days, because the army was so numerous. Six days after they arriv'd at the river Semmour<sup>4</sup>; and the scouts heard the cry of the enemy, of which they immediately gave advice to the emperor: and even the Mirza Mehemet Sultan seiz'd one of the enemy, whom he brought to his father, who inform'd himself of what pass'd in the army of Tocatnich. This man told him that a great many of the hords were come to that place; but that having advice of Timur's march, they had decamp'd and were return'd, as soon as they knew the place where their enemys were. Timur forbid any one stirring from his regiment, order'd that no fire shou'd be made during the night, and caus'd his army to depart when he had rang'd 'em in order


<sup>3</sup> A river of Capchac, which runs into the Caspian Sea, long. 93. lat. 47.

<sup>4</sup> Which discharges it self into the Tic.

of battel. They march'd on the sound of instruments of warlike musick; and when this vast multitude began to move, it resembled the troubled ocean. The first day of the moon of Regeb, the army arriving at the river of Ayic<sup>3</sup>, Timur stopt at the foot of a bridge, and first caus'd the vanguard to cross over, and then the main body, (for the right and left wings swam over the river) and then he pass'd the bridge, and continued his march. In the mean while our scouts took three of the enemys, and brought 'em to Timur, who question'd 'em concerning the state of their army. They said that Tocatmich Can having no news of the Army of Zagatai, the two servants of Aidecou who fled from the camp, came to seek him, and inform'd him of the approach of an army more numerous than the sands of the desert, or the leaves of trees, with Timur at the head of it: that when Tocatmich heard this news, he was enrag'd to a very great degree, and said he wou'd raise two armys; and at the same time he sent orders into all the provinces to assemble the troops, and went to encamp himself at Kerc Gheul<sup>4</sup>, from whence he sent out other orders to levy soldiers. Tocatmich imagin'd that when Timur shou'd arrive at the river of Tic, he wou'd cross it by the ordinary passages; wherefore he lay in ambuscade in that passage to surprize him: but the emperor being forewarn'd of the designs of Tocatmich, swam over the river at another place, and came near him without danger. Whatever was the cause, this prince understanding the manner of

<sup>3</sup> Ayic or Jaic, a river which runs into the Caspian sea, long. 90. lat. 47.

<sup>4</sup> A lake in Nagaya in Capchaë, between the Volga and the Jaic.

Book III.  the actions of Tocarmich Can, staid in that place till all his troops were come up to him; he rang'd the two wings in order, and commanded they shou'd all have ready their great and little bucklers; that they shou'd draw lines round the camp, and make divisions of it, that the regiments might dig ditches round 'em. This order was executed; every one work'd, and us'd all imaginable precaution, and they pass'd the night in the same place. The next day the army decamp'd, and continu'd its march, and every night observ'd the same rules. Timur order'd all the Emirs to come before him from the commanders of Tomans to the centurions; he spoke to 'em with a great deal of civility, to excite their courage, honor'd 'em with rich vests, and gave them as well as their soldiers particular suits of armor, as also iron clubs, iron corslets for their horses, coats of mail, sabres, bows and arrows; and at length he march'd with design to give battel. They met in their way with many sloughs and marshes, which they pass'd with extreme fatigue; after which they encamp'd to rest themselves.

In the mean while the scouts brought advice that three regiments of the enemy appear'd; there then came further advice, that behind 'em were a great body of soldiers. Timur mounted his horse, and advanc'd against 'em; he caus'd his army to march in order of battel, and then one of our scouts brought a soldier of the enemy whom he had taken; they inquir'd of him concerning every thing they were desirous of knowing, and then put him to death. Altho they had seen some regiments of the enemy, yet the army did not approach; and as these regiments disappear'd, Timur sent Sevindgic Behader and Argoun Chah to gain intelligence,  
and

and thorowly to examine into the condition of Chap. 10.  
this army. Those Emirs advanc'd, and learnt  
that the regiments which shew'd themselves  
were return'd; they sought after 'em without  
being able to meet 'em; of which they gave  
advice to Timur, who sent Mobacher with or-  
ders not to return without certain news of the  
enemy. Mobacher departed with a good num-  
ber of the most valiant horse of the army, and  
made great haste; he arriv'd at a wood, from  
whence at some distance he perceiv'd a smoke;  
and as he observ'd attentively, he heard voices,  
and immediately sent some men to learn from  
whence they came; who brought him word,  
that they were some of the enemy, of whom  
there was a troop in those quarters. He there-  
upon prepar'd for battel, and went to fall upon  
'em: these men seeing there was no other reme-  
dy than fighting, stood their ground to save  
their lives; thus the fight began, and the war  
which seem'd asleep reviv'd again; they resisted  
some time, but at length ours had the advantage,  
and vanquish'd the enemy, of whom they took  
forty, who were brought, gnashing their teeth, to  
the foot of the imperial throne. Timur caress'd  
Mobacher, and gave gifts to those who had ac-  
company'd him; he inform'd himself from the  
prisoners of the condition of Tocatmich Can.  
They told him he had caus'd it to be proclaim'd  
every where that the army shou'd assemble at  
Kerc Gheul; that in consequence of that order  
they went there, and found no one, but knew  
not the reason why they fail'd of coming to the  
rendezvous; that they wander'd as vagabonds  
in the woods and desarts, while they had the  
misfortune to meet Mobacher, and be taken pri-  
soners. After they had learnt from 'em what  
they most desir'd, they were put to death



Book III. by Timur's order. At length they brought to him the son of the prince of Memac<sup>\*</sup>, who had been wounded; he fell on his knees, and said that he was upon his road to Serai<sup>†</sup> to meet the Can, but that he did not find him in the rendezvous, and that he cou'd give no other account. Timur sent Gelal, son of Emir Hamid, with Nadila Tercan, Mouli, Sainte Maure, and other brave men in quality of scouts, with order, that as soon as they shou'd perceive the dust of any of the enemy's troops, they shou'd take care, if the others were the greatest number, to shew themselves and immediately return as running away, by that means to deceive 'em and engage 'em nearer; and that they shou'd not fail to give immediate notice of all that shou'd happen. The Emir Gelal and the others march'd according to these orders, cross'd the marshes and rivers, and perceiv'd the dust of the enemy, of whom fifteen horse separated themselves from the rest, and advanc'd upon our men. Sainte Maure also advanc'd against 'em, spake to 'em himself, and return'd flying. The Emirs immediately gave notice what had pass'd, by Mouli, who join'd Timur with all expedition, and gave him an account of all they had seen, and of what had pass'd, with the utmost exactness.

---

\* A province bordering on that of Serai in Capchac.

† Capital of Capchac on the Volga, long. 80. 44. lat. 52.30.

## C H A P. XIII.

*Battel between the scouts of the two armys.  
Death of the Emir Aicoutmur, and other  
famous men.*

**T**IMUR having receiv'd this news, order'd the Emir Aicoutmur to follow the scouts, and to bring him more positive advice concerning the situation of the ground on which the enemy's army was posted, and of the number of those who were advanc'd; and he was particularly enjoin'd to use great prudence and exact precaution. This Emir hasten'd his departure, cross'd the marshes and rivers, and join'd Emir Gelal Hamid, and the other scouts. From thence he advanc'd, and perceiv'd on the top of a hill some horsemen, who seem'd diverting themselves in viewing the fine plains. He sent to 'em a troop of horse, the bravest he had with him; but the others seeing 'em, fled, and our soldiers, upon ascending the hill, perceiv'd on the other side thirty compleat compaigns of horse in armor, rang'd in order of battel in a vally, who watch'd in this ambuscade an opportunity to surprize us. Our men stopp'd in this place, and sent advice of it to Aicoutmur, who immediately departed, ascended the hill, and us'd all precautions to view the state of the enemy; but as there was a great number of 'em, he thought it not proper to attack 'em, but imagin'd it better to return without noise, and repass the waters and marshes. He sent back his soldiers, while he remain'd with some horse behind the enemy, who observing the Emir  
Ai-

Book III. Aicoutmur staid but with few soldiers, and that the waters and marshes which he must cross wou'd hinder the bringing any assistance, they fell on him full speed. This valiant man briskly sustain'd their attack with unparallel'd resolution: he kept back with his arrows many companys, while he and his companions made a brave resistance, to give time to his soldiers and domestics to pass these rivers and marshes, which himself had also done, if his horse had not been unfortunately shot under him with an arrow; and while he was remounting a second, that was also shot, and immediately died. Then the enemy charg'd the Emir on all sides; but this intrepid person, tho on foot, defended himself against the multitude that surrounded him: he wou'd not give way nor cease fighting, till his enemy, who did not know him, cut him in pieces. This general, whose great fame was yet below his merit, had the honor of martyrdom, which is the crown of warriors.

His death was follow'd by that of Herimulc, son of Yadghiar Berlas, an illustrious man, as well for his birth, for he was a relation of Timur, as his merit, being of the most valiant men of that age. The famous Ramadan Coja, and the celebrated Mehemet Erlat, were also slain in this fight: these were the greatest captains Timur had. On this sad accident, the army of Tocatmich Can was compar'd to a lamp which is going out, and which, as its last effort, casts a light greater than ordinary in the room it is in. In short, from this time the power of Tocatmich continually diminish'd, as will be related hereafter.

Timur then arriv'd at the bank of the river, having near his person the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, and the Emir Gehancha: he got off his horse as well

well as his guards, and cross'd the river with them, notwithstanding the arrows of the enemy, which made an extraordinary noise while they flew thro' the air. Our men having cross'd the river, fell upon the enemy as lions on their prey: the scymitar of the invincible Timur spoil'd the precautions and artifices of these foxes; they were routed, and constrain'd to fly, leaving on the spot the greatest part of their soldiers. Gellal Hamid was remarkable above others: he attack'd with thirty men three companys of the enemy who stood in his way, whom he exceedingly gaul'd; and he acquitted himself of this action with so much skill, valor and courage, that he acquir'd all the glory a warrior can expect from the most noble and vigorous enterprize. Nedila also fought like a brave man, and made appear his merit, which he had the happiness of doing in Timur's presence; as also Chah Malek son of Togaimirken, who did not shoot one arrow without wounding or killing him he aim'd at. Bajazet, who had six fingers on each hand, also on this occasion gave marks of the most heroic valor. And when the troops were retir'd, they surpriz'd three of the enemy, whom they brought to Timur.

Then this prince return'd to his camp, and order'd the brave men to come before him, a list of whom had been drawn up. He highly prais'd 'em; and that posterity might be put in mind of their valor, he not only loaded 'em with favors, but made 'em of the order of the Tercans, and enjoin'd the Yesaouls<sup>1</sup> to receive 'em whenever they came to the palace, and admit 'em to his

<sup>1</sup> Yesaoul and Chaoux signify the same. They are door-keepers, and have liberty to enter into the chamber and closet of the grand Can.



Book III.

presence. He also order'd that neither they nor their children shou'd be condemn'd, or even question'd for any crime, except they have committed it nine times.

Timur declar'd that these privileges shou'd be preserv'd to their successors for seven generations. He granted several other favors to the relations of the Emir Aicoutmur, who had the honor of martyrdom; and among the rest to Chah Malek son of Calagigai. He gave him the posts and titles of honor which belong'd to his father, as also the great seal, as well as the seal of the butterfly\*.

And as it was near six months since the imperial standard set out, and it always advanc'd towards the north, the army came to a place so near the pole, that in the evening, before the sun was entirely set, the rays of the morning appear'd in the east; and in those places when the sun is in the northern signs, it is not permitted, according to the ordinance of the Mahometan law, that the evening prayer shou'd be made. Timur departed from that place with his standard display'd, and went to encamp on a neighboring mountain; where he staid till next morning, and then decamp'd. Tocatnich Can never expected the arrival of our army; but his scouts appear'd every day to skirmish with us, and surprize us if they found an opportunity: yet as soon as our soldiers oblig'd 'em to give battel, they fled with all speed into the desert.

In the mean while Timur held a council with the princes his sons, and his generals; and as it was there resolv'd on, he order'd the Emir

---


\* A little seal in the shape of a butterfly, which the king of Persia makes use of to this day.

Omar Cheik to put himself at the head of Chap. 14.  
twenty thousand horse, and to march with expedition to engage Tocatmich Can, and if possible to secure his person. He nam'd the Emirs Sevindgie and Sultan Sendger, the Emir Osman, Hasan Jandar, and some others, to accompany him; and at the same time the twenty thousand men departed: and the Mirza made 'em march so expeditiously, that on the morrow they had advice that the scouts of both partys were met. Timur immediately got ready his army, and imploring God's assistance who had always made him victorious, he was full of fury, if one may so say, and march'd to fight the enemy. The air was so dark, the clouds so thick, and the rains so great, that one cou'd not see three paces.

#### C H A P. XIV.

*The army rang'd in order of battel in an extraordinary manner. A terrible fight which ensu'd thereupon.*

**T**H E fifteenth day of the month Regeb 793, July 5, which answers to the year of the Mon- 1391.  
key, the air clear'd up after six days bad weather. Timur rang'd the army in order of battel; and because the affair was of great consequence, he us'd his utmost care. He divided the army into seven bodys, which was never before practis'd among his troops; but it was believ'd this was done by inspiration from God, to make Timur victorious, because the number seven is esteem'd sacred and mysterious. But as this knowledge

 Book III. belongs only to those who are acquainted with the septenary and cabalistic numbers, we will say no more of it. Timur gave the command of the first body to Sultan Mahmoud Can, which was to serve for the vanguard; and the Emir Soliman Chah was his lieutenant general. He plac'd the Mirza Mehemet Sultan at the head of the second, which was more numerous, and pass'd for the main body; and this prince had the most skilful officers to serve under him. The third, which serv'd as the rear or body of reserve, was compos'd of the regiment of guards, and twenty companys of soldiers, chosen out of the bravest of the army, and those who had been inur'd to war; and it was commanded by Timur himself, who kept his post behind the second body, at a distance from the others, that in the heat of the battel, if any part of our army shou'd be overpower'd, fresh men might immediately be sent to succour 'em. The fourth body, which serv'd for a right wing was under the command of Mirza Miran Chah, who had for his lieutenant general the prince Mehemet Sultan Chah. He prepar'd this party of troops for battel, after having made all the soldiers get ready their great and little bucklers. The fifth body, which serv'd for a vanguard to the right wing, was led by the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, a person who was usually in the greatest dangers, and on the most difficult affairs, out of which he wou'd bring himself with glory and distinction. The sixth, which consisted of the troops of Andecan, compos'd the left wing of the army, and had for its leader Mirza Omar Cheik. The seventh body serv'd as a vanguard to the left wing, which was commanded by Birdi Bei, son of Sar Bouga, and by Codadad Huseini, two Emirs who had on a hundred occasions given

given marks of the greatest valor, and the most unblamable conduct.

All the Emirs and soldiers of the Tomans, Hezares and Sedes, being thus fix'd in their posts, every one according to his rank; the cavalry and infantry march'd in order of battel, under their respective generals; and the motion upon the march of this numerous army resembled the waves of the impetuous sea. Some soldiers were arm'd with bucklers, swords and arrows; others had in their hands war-clubs and partizans; others lances and pikes: most of 'em were cover'd with cuirasses. The princes and Emirs had coats of mail, or breast-plates of iron, and all of 'em wore on their heads helmets so neatly polish'd, that the great number of 'em dazzled the eyes of the beholders. On the other hand, they perceiv'd the enemy's army, the soldiers of which were compleatly arm'd. Tocatmich Can had divided 'em into three bodys according to custom, that is, into a main body and two wings. All his generals and captains were princes of the royal blood of Touchi; and among the rest Tach Temour Aglen, Bikyaroc Aglen, Illicmich Aglen, Bic Poulad Aglen, Ali Aglen, Chinta Aglen, and others; as also Emirs of great esteem, as Ali and Soliman Soufi Gangorat <sup>3</sup>, Norouz Gangorat, Actao, Acbouta, Oroufione Cayat <sup>4</sup>, Aïsa Bei eldest brother of Aidecon, Ajan Bei, Serai, Kuke Bouga, Yageibi Behrine <sup>5</sup>, Cougourbi, and other great Emirs of Capchac; they rang'd themselves in form of a half-moon, and then came in view.

<sup>3</sup> Gangorat is an illustrious royal family among the Moguls.

<sup>4</sup> Cayat, a Mogul hord.

<sup>5</sup> Behrine a Mogul hord.



Then Timur, thro an excess of bravery, and despising Tocatmich, order'd all the cavalry to dismount, and to prepare their tents as if they wou'd encamp: which Tocatmich perceiving, he was surpriz'd at the little regard our men had to his troops. This action made him alter his measures, and he rang'd his army with greater care than he commonly us'd. Thus the two partys being in view of each other, it was observ'd that the army of Capchac surpass'd ours by some companys. Timur, who confided more in the assistance of heaven than in the multitude of soldiers, and the abundance of arms, equipages and ammunition, got off his horse, and address'd himself to God by prayer, as he always did before a battel. He twice bow'd his head towards the ground, and pray'd to God, who was the distributor of laurels and victorys. Having remounted his horse, all the army lift up their hands to heaven, crying out, Allahou Ecber; God is the most great; and displaying their ensigns and standards, they beat their drums, as well as their great and little kettle-drums. They made the great cry call'd Souroun, to begin the battel at the sound of the terrible trumpet Kerrenai; and it may be said, there never was so great a confusion between heaven and earth. Then the excellent Imam, Seid Bereke, of the race of Mahomet, who had formerly predicted to Timur his coming to the throne, lift up his hands to heaven, uncover'd his head, and humbling himself before God, besought victory for the emperor: he recited with extraordinary zeal a passage \* of the Alcoran to

---

\* This passage of the Alcoran, according to the mahometan Cabalists, is full of a secret and mysterious virtue.

obtain it ; and at length he took up some dirt, which he flung in the enemys faces, saying, " Your faces shall be blacken'd thro the shame of the defeat : " Then he said to Timur, " Go where you please, you shall be victorious."

At the same time the bravest men on both sides began the fight with half-pikes, swords and iron-clubs. The Emir Hadgi Seifeddin was most active in the service of his prince. He was the first who with sword in hand rush'd violently upon the left wing of the enemy, which was over-against him. This wing sometime disputed the victory ; but by his good conduct he at length overthrew it, and destroy'd all the measures the enemy had taken. As their soldiers exceeded ours in number, they advanc'd to attack the Squadron of Hadgi Seifeddin in the rear ; but Gehancha Behader, who perceiv'd their motion, advanc'd towards them with his regiment, which he had detach'd out of the body of reserve. He so furiously fell on 'em with sword and lance, that he constrain'd 'em directly to return. Calintchac Behader attack'd the enemy on the other side, and made 'em retreat with the like precipitancy. The Mirza Miran Chah, who commanded the right wing, at the same time fell upon 'em ; and his attack was so successful, that having put the cavalry into confusion, he overthrew whatsoever stood in his way, and routed the enemy's left wing. Osman Abbas advanc'd at the head of his regiment of Capchac, and attack'd three companys of the enemy ; but he fell from his horse in the midst of 'em, and had been in great danger if he had not found means to remount. Then he return'd to attack the three companys of skirmishers, whom he put to the rout. Cheik Ali Behader on this occasion per-

Book III. form'd exploits of the utmost valor. On the other hand, the Mirza Mehemet Sultan advanc'd at the head of the main body, and broke thro' that of the enemy. The Mirza Omar Cheik, at the head of the left wing, also perform'd whatever cou'd be expected from a skilful general and a valiant soldier, defeating and cutting to pieces all who resisted him. Birdi Bei and Codadad Huseini, so briskly oppos'd the right wing of the enemy, that they oblig'd it to give ground and fly. All the Emirs resisted those who oppos'd 'em, and the field of battel was cover'd with blood.

Then Tocatmich observ'd how his troops decreas'd. He found he cou'd not be long able to withstand the squadrons which Timur commanded in person; for which reason he turn'd his horse another way. He then attack'd the Mirza Omar Cheik; but finding this prince's troops maintain their ground, he quitted 'em, and attempted to fall on Cheik Temour Behader, who commanded the Hezares of the hord of Selduz. Tocatmich, accompany'd by a great number of the bravest Emirs of his empire, attack'd Cheik Temour with the utmost vigor: and tho' the latter, with his lieutenant Tomanich, defended themselves with courage equal to that of Tocatmich, and let fly great showers of arrows upon their enemys; yet the soldiers of Tocatmich, imitating the Fedais' of the Ismaelites, who sacrific'd their lives at their prince's order, without fear of death, fought with so much fury, that the brave resistance of our men was so far from disheartening 'em, that it even serv'd to animate 'em. They behav'd themselves with

---

\* Those who were formerly call'd assassins.

so much courage in every attack, with their swords and half-pikes, that they gain'd the advantage of our men, and almost defeated the whole hord of Selduz. They rush'd into the very middle of the squadrons, and were about to post themselves behind our army, with design to keep their ground and gain the victory. But the Mirza Omar Cheik perceiv'd their motions, and with his cavalry fell upon Tocatmich; every one, holding his buckler before him, fought with resolution. On the other hand, Timur, who was in pursuit of the enemy's main body which he had routed, was told by Tcheke Tavachi, that Tocatmich had travers'd our army with many squadrons, and had form'd some ranks behind ours, having resolv'd to maintain his ground. Timur reflecting on this advice, which was confirm'd by an express from Mirza Omar Cheik, desisted from the pursuit of those he had defeated, to make Tocatmich repent of his rashness. He carry'd with him his most valiant captains; but Tocatmich on sight of the imperial standard, was dispirited, and fled. He was not long in resolving what to do; for being seiz'd with fear and despair, he quitted the desire and ambition of reigning, to save his life; so that his reflection only on opposing his benefactor, oblig'd him shamefully to fly. The lords and generals of his army, not being able to make any farther resistance, follow'd their master's example, and their standards were overturn'd. Our soldiers on this defeat were exasperated against the conquer'd, and closely pursuing 'em, made a terrible slaughter; so that nothing but confusion was seen in the Mogul troops. All the army of Capchac were dispers'd; and for the space of forty leagues whither they were pursu'd, nothing cou'd be seen



Book III. seen but rivers of blood, and the plains cover'd  
 with dead bodys.

The rashness and ingratitude of Tocatmich being thus punish'd by the justice of God, and Timur having reveng'd himself on the perfidiousness on the king of Capchac, he got off his horse, and fell upon his face, to return thanks to the King of kings for his victory, acknowledging that he had obtain'd it thro his goodness and clemency alone. The children of Timur, the princes of the blood, the generals, and all the great Emirs and officers came to him; they fell on their knees, congratulated him on his success, and sprinkled gold and precious stones upon him, according to the custom of the Moguls, in token of their joy, at this important victory. Timur embrac'd the princes his sons, and gave many testimonys of affection to the Emirs and great officers; and praising their brave actions, he made 'em presents worthy of his grandeur. He then chose seven horse out of every ten in the army, to go in pursuit of the fugitives. These brave conquerors departed with expedition to overtake the conquer'd; But as these miserable people having before 'em the Volga, and behind 'em the vengeance of our men, they cou'd not fly far, despairing of passing the river, or of obtaining any quarter. Thus few of the enemy escap'd their fury. The women, children, baggage, and goods of the conquer'd fell into the hands of the conquerors; and it wou'd be difficult to enumerate the quantity of spoils which our soldiers brought away.

We have related that Condge Aglen, Temour Corluc Aglen, and Aidecou, three princes of the royal blood of Touchi, bore an antient hatred to Tocatmich; that they had fled from  
 him,

him, and seeking refuge at the court of Timur Chap. 14.  
were attach'd to his service both in time of peace and war. This monarch always treated 'em favorably, and with particular marks of distinction. He often made 'em presents of belts, precious stones, robes of honor, and horses of great price. After Tocatmich was vanquish'd, but yet had the good Fortune to save his life from a thousand dangers; these three princes, seeing the empire of Touchi brought so low, and the people dispers'd, fell on their knees before Timur, and told him, that if he approv'd of it, they wou'd go in search of the hords which they formerly commanded, and bring 'em over to his service.

Timur consented to it, and gave 'em letters-patent, that no one might molest 'em, or any who belong'd to 'em; and he exempted their subjects from the right of paying the Gan, which is a kind of tax. These princes, after their orders were given 'em, went in search of their subjects with a great deal of joy. Timur follow'd the troops which he had sent in pursuit of the enemy; and being arriv'd at the bank of the Volga, he encamp'd in the plain of Ourtoupaz, which for its verdure, fresh and pure air, surpasses all others. Here the tent and imperial throne was fix'd, to give a magnificent entertainment to the Emirs. All the camp, which consisted of a great number of tents and pavilions, was compass'd with a curtain of brocade with gold flowers, which appear'd the more magnificent, in that this camp was three leagues in length every way, and a man's voice cou'd not be heard from one side to the other.

Temour Cotluc Aglen, who was gone in search of his former subjects, found 'em; and

Revolt of  
prince Te-  
mour Cor-  
luc Aglen.

**Book III.** he had no sooner got 'em together, than he had the ambition to think of ascending the throne of Touchi. He forgot the obligations he ow'd to Timur; and instead of keeping his promise of returning to court with his subjects, he led 'em into the midst of the desert. Aidecou was not more sincere than the other; for having found his men, he march'd with 'em on his side the country, notwithstanding the agreement he had made. A natural enemy will never become a true friend; a thistle will bear no other fruit than thorns; the seed of the bitter-apple will not produce balm; a reed for mats will give no sugar; nor a female pearl become a male: he who is by nature vitious, will never be made virtuous. There was only Condge Aglen, who having found part of his subjects, return'd to court according to his promise. This prince had always been extremely favor'd, and even familiar with the emperor, having shar'd with him in his most secret pleasures; for which reason he met with a handsom reception.

Revolt of  
Aidecou.

All the Emirs and warriors, whom the emperor had sent out to pillage the country, return'd victorious, loaded with booty, as horses, camels, oxen, sheep, and a great number of captives of every age and sex. They took all the enemys who had hid themselves in the isles of the Volga, and brought 'em laden with chains; and put 'em all into the hands of Timur, to distribute 'em as he thought fit. All the poor men who were in the service of the army, and who by labor and the sweat of their bodys, cou'd scarce find sustenance, on this occasion got together so many horses and sheep, that when they had a design to return to their country, they cou'd not carry with 'em all their  
 † goods,

goods, but were oblig'd to leave part behind  
em. Chap. 14.

Among the slaves were a great many beautiful girls, some of whom were plac'd in Timur's seraglio, and the rest distributed among the Emirs. They also chose five thousand handsome young men, who were put in the Seraglio, to be instructed in the particular service of the emperor, and to have the care of the officers and posts in his household. Then Timur order'd that preparations shou'd be made for a solemn and magnificent feast in the meadow of Ourtounpa, on the bank of the Volga; which was more sumptuous than any that had ever been in the country of Touran. The several sorts of meats, as well as of liquors, were serv'd up in vessels of gold or of precious stone, by the hands of the most beautiful women in the world, which made every thing appear more agreeable. The songs, which celebrated the victories of Timur, were at the same time sung on the Rihavi, a tune us'd in songs of triumph. This piece of music was call'd Fatehnamei Capchac, that is, the triumph of Capchac. This plain of Ourtounpa on the Volga was the seat of the empire of Touchi, son of the great Genghiz Can; and his successors have always made it the place of their residence. Timur had the satisfaction to continue his diversions on their throne. The most beautiful ladys of his seraglio attended him, and each of the lords had his own with the cup in her hand to accompany the voice and airs of the musicians who sung in the tune Ochac, which was only practis'd when the assembly was inclin'd to amorous conversation. All the army had a share in the diversion, which made the soldiers,  
who



Book III. who spent twenty six days in pleasure, forget the fatigues of war.

## CHAP. XV.

*Timur returns from the desert of Capchac to the seat of his empire.*

AFTER this famous victory, there remaining no more enemys in the deserts, or in the isles of the Volga, Timur began his march to Samarcand with the army, follow'd by a great train of captives of both sexes, which exceedingly pleas'd the soldiers, who had their share in the goods, mony, and slaves. The inhabitants of the desert of Capchac live in portable tents, which need not be taken to pieces at decamping, and are with very little trouble fix'd again at an encampment. When they decamp, they place these tents upon camels, and march in that manner to the place where they wou'd encamp next. Our soldiers in the way diverted themselves with the conversation of their beautiful slaves. Tho in other conquests the goods and slaves were only brought away, yet in this, even the houses were carry'd home; which made the camp become so spacious, that if any one lost his tent it wou'd require a long time to find it again.

When the army arriv'd at the river of Tic, the love of his country made Condge Aglen, who was a native of Capchac, fly from the army with his men. Which verify the maxim of men of sense, that one ought not to trust strangers; for sooner or later we shall be betray'd by 'em.

Some days after the army had cross'd the Tic, Timur, leaving the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin and other Emirs, to conduct the body of the army and the baggage, went before thro the rest of the desert, without considering the danger he ran : so that in the month of Zilhadge 793, he came to Sabran, thence to Otrar ; and at length cross'd the river of Sihon, from whence he arriv'd at Samarcand, where the inhabitants testify'd their joy, as well as the princes his sons, the queens, the princesses, and the Nevians \*, who sprinkl'd upon him gold and precious stones, and congratulated him on his victory and happy return. Then public feasts were prepar'd, accompany'd with consorts of vocal and instrumental musick, perform'd by the finest voices and instruments ; in which the newest airs, and charming songs compos'd on the victories of this great prince, were often sung. This feast lasted many days, and there was nothing wanting which might demonstrate a compleat joy. Timur permitted the Mirza Miran Chah to depart for Herat, while himself began his journey to Tachkunt, cross'd the Sihon, and encamp'd in the great plain of Barfin, near that place. In the beginning of Muharrem 794, which answers to the year of the Monkey, the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, whom Timur left at the river of Tic to conduct the body of the army and the baggage, arriv'd at the plain of Barfin. And as the army which rendezvous'd at Tachkunt in order to go to Capchac, departed from that town in the month of Sefer 793, and arriv'd at Barfin in the month of Muharrem, we may say that this important campaign continu'd eleven months.

Chap. 15.

September  
1391.\* Foreign  
princes.December,  
1391.January,  
1391.

As there was a great quantity of booty, and the vast plain of Barfin was cover'd with the flocks

Book III. flocks and cattel taken from the enemy; the emperor was willing that the princes his sons, the princesses, and ladys of the court, the Cherriffs and chief men of the state, who were not at the war, shou'd share in the booty. He distributed among 'em several beautiful girls and boys; gave 'em sheep and cattel in abundance, and a great many fine horses. All the court pass'd the winter in this place with Timur; and in the beginning of the spring this prince return'd to Samarcand. He repass'd the river before Cogende, where he entertain'd this charming court with a general chace, because this place was full of all sorts of beasts, of which a vast number were kill'd.

---

## C H A P. XVI.

*The government of Zabulestan given to Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Gehanghir.*

WHEN Timur with all his court arriv'd at the plain of Akiar near Kech, he appointed the Mirza Pir Mehemet, son of Gehanghir, governor of the kingdom which formerly belong'd to the grand Sultan Mahmoud, that is, all the country from Gazna<sup>4</sup> and Cabul as far as India; and from Candahar to the river Indus<sup>5</sup>, call'd in Persian, Absend. He order'd several officers, great Emirs and Nevians to at-

---

<sup>4</sup> A town between Zabul and Candahar, long. 104. 30. lat. 33. 30.

<sup>5</sup> Otherwise call'd Absend and Mehran. It springs from the lake of Behre, near Lahor. long. 108. lat. 32.

tend this prince : of which number were the famous Corobeddin, cousin of the Emir Solymán Chah, Behloul son of Mehemed, Dervich Berlas, Íslam son of Eltchi Coja Berlas, and many other lords. This young prince with the Emirs went at the head of a great army to take possession of his government : and Timur departed from Akiar to Samarcand, where many princes and great lords begg'd leave of him to marry their children with princesses of their rank and birth : to which this prince not only consented, but he wou'd also be himself at their feasts, to let 'em see that he shar'd in their joy. He went out of the city to encamp in the delicious meadow of Canigheul, where he gave orders that preparations shou'd be made for the magnificent entertainments and diversions which shou'd accompany these marriages. A royal banquet was provided, at which the tables were set in form of an army rang'd in order of battel, Timur being plac'd at the head of 'em on a throne of gold. The bridegrooms were on one side, and the brides on the other, all cloth'd in the richest apparel. The officers of the imperial household waited on 'em, and the throne was surrounded by the greatest lords of Asia; so that they imagin'd themselves in the reign of Efrasiab<sup>6</sup>, an antient emperor of Touran, whose great actions are recorded by historians.

There was the greatest plenty imaginable at this feast; the musicians even surpass'd themselves on the tunes Ochac and Ozzal<sup>7</sup>. And to render this joy compleat, the Mirza Pir Mehemed, son

---

<sup>6</sup> Efrasiab, emperor of Touran, was the enemy of Roustem, celebrated in Fardaousi's history of Persia, which contains one hundred thirty thousand verses.

<sup>7</sup> Oriental tunes for amorous songs.



Book III. of Gehanghir, and his brother the Mirza Roustem, by the emperor's order, the same day marry'd the daughters of Cayafeddin Tercan; and the Mirza Aboubecre, son of the Mirza Miran Chah, espous'd the daughter of the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin. They had apartments prepar'd for 'em, and particular officers assign'd 'em.

---

## C H A P. XVII.

### *Timur departs for a war of five years continuance.*

WE have a tradition of Mahomet, wherein he assures us that he was the child of the sword, and that the most happy moments which he pass'd with God were when he had the sword in his hand; and he adds, that paradise it self is under the protection of the sword: which demonstrates that kings are not peaceable possessors of the throne, but when they are victorious; and that subjects can't enjoy quiet in their familys, but by the protection of the sword of their prince. The scepter and crown, says a certain poet, are the reward of that prince who undergoes the fatigues of war, and marches at the head of his armys, that he may arrive at grandure and glory. Thus Timur did not gain an empire before he was maim'd at the siege of the capital city of Sistan. When this prince was on his return from the toilsom but glorious campaign of Capchac, his ambition prompted him to repass by the kingdom of Iran, which he had before conquer'd, to suppress the disorders which had got footing there, thro the presumption of some rash fellows, who during the absence of the court

court had revolted. The Tavatchis had orders to go into all the provinces to assemble the troops, and to require 'em to get ready for a campaign of five years; and come immediately to the court. Timur departed from Samarcand the fifteenth of Regeb 794, while the season was very hot, and caus'd a new standard to be display'd, on which was the figure of a dragon. When he was near Bocara in the month of Muharrem, the grandes of that city came out to meet him. The troops encamp'd before that city; and he was seiz'd at this place with a distemper on the first of Chaban 794, which he conceal'd a long time, and decamp'd; but when he was at Jouidez, a place dependent on Bocara, his distemper increas'd; and he was oblig'd to stop there, and call to him the ladys, and the princes his children. The empreses Serai Mulc Canum, Tonman Aga, and Sultan Bact Begum, came with the sons of the emperor, who order'd that the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who was gone before at the head of the vanguard, and had already cross'd the Gihon, shou'd leave the troops at the place where he shou'd receive these orders, and return to court. The most skilful Turkish and Arabian physicians were made use of; and the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin was set over 'em, to see that they prepar'd with dispatch the necessary remedys for Timur's relief. But the princes, the princesses, and Timur himself, who knew that health was to be expected from God alone, who is the true physician, employ'd not only temporal but spiritual remedys; and order'd the Alcoran to be read. They sent presents to all religious places, and to the tombs of the great Cheiks; they gave alms to the poor and sick, and sacrific'd the finest horses in the imperial stables, as well as others, distributing

May 10.

1392.

May 25.

- Book III. the flesh among the poor. The people's prayers, and the charitys of the grandees soon had their desir'd effect; and what is writ in many places prov'd true, that alms prolong life: for the night before the fifteenth of Chaban, which is call'd
- June 10. 1392. Chebeberat, or the night of breves, God restor'd the emperor to his health. The joy at this good news was universal: and Timur order'd the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to return to the command of his vanguard; while himself took
- June 20. 1392. horse the twenty-fifth of Chaban 794. to shew himself to the people, who wish'd him health and prosperity.

## C H A P. XVIII.

*Timur departs from Jouidez after his recovery.*

- June 26. 1392. **T**HE first of Ramadan 794, Timur gave orders concerning the conduct of his army;
- July 2. and the sixth of the same month he order'd the drum to be beat, after the astrologers had fix'd the happy moment: and he departed at the head of his troops. He sent the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin to Samarcand, and went to encamp himself
- July 6. at Amouye on the tenth of Ramadan; from whence he sent back to his capital the empresses Serai Mulc Canum, Touman Aga, and other ladys: and two days after, the Mirza Charoc also receiv'd orders to return home. The emperor embrac'd and kiss'd him, and having comforted him for his separation, he caress'd him a thousand times, and recommending him to God, took leave of him. The same day the Mirza set out for Samarcand, Timur departed from Amouye, cross'd the Gihon, and enter'd into
- Coras-

Corassana. Some days after he went to Macan and Abiverd; and on the twenty-ninth of Ramadan to Yassi Daban, where on the appearance of the new moon he read the prayer of Beiram, which is the grand feast of the Mahometans. He there solemniz'd this feast with all the ceremonies us'd on these happy days. He at length departed for Ilgazigage Cabouchan<sup>1</sup>, where he join'd the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who commanded the body of the scouts. He also found there the Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Gehanghir, at the head of his troops, and the Emir Gehancha with his, who according to orders, were already come from Condoz and Bacalan to join the scouts. The princess Canzade, widow of Gehanghir, came thither also from Herat; she put a stole round her neck, according to custom, that she might have the honor to present to Timur the princes his sons, presumptive heirs of the crown. At this place she gave a magnificent entertainment to the emperor, who made her several rich presents. Timur decamp'd on the twentieth of the month Chawal; and arriving in the territory of Ester Abad, he encamp'd on the banks of the river of Jorjiana<sup>2</sup>. The same day the venerable Seid Bereke brought to Timur the Seid Caias Eddin, son of Kemaleddin<sup>3</sup>, with considerable presents. He told his majesty, that his father order'd him to come and submit to him, and to shew his willingness

Chap. 18.

July 26,


Aug. 15

<sup>1</sup> A village between Abiverd and Ester Abad in Corassana. There is another Ilgazigage near Samarcand.

<sup>2</sup> A river which passes by a town of the same name, in the province of Mazendran, on the frontiers of Ghilan, and runs into the Caspian, long. 89. lat. 38.

<sup>3</sup> Kemaleddin was a sort of false devor, of the race of Mahomet, who by his hypocrisy made himself chief of his party, and master of the town of Sari in Mazendran.



Book III.  to pay the tribute, and make a treaty with him, the conditions of which he wou'd perform as a faithful servant and a sincere friend. Timur receiv'd him handsomly, and was satisfy'd with his proposals, for the person's sake who brought him; and Caias Eddin was highly pleas'd with the emperor's favors to him. When Timur arriv'd at Ester Abad, Piri Pacha, son of Locman Pacha; to whom the emperor had given the government of this place after his father's death, paid his devoirs as a faithful servant, made presents to the emperor, and entertain'd him very agreeably.

---

## C H A P. XIX.

### *The taking of Amol, Sari, and Mahanasar.*

THE army, after three days march from Ester Abad, came to a wood extremely thick, the trees of which grew so close together, that the wind cou'd scarce pass thro: whereupon the emperor order'd the soldiers to cut down the trees, and open a passage thro this forest, tho it had been till that time impenetrable. They immediately began to execute his orders; and at last made three great ways, each of which was a bow's-shot in breadth. The middle way was design'd for the main body to march thro, and the others for the two wings. They insensibly arriv'd, cutting down the wood before 'em, at Sari, and there learnt that the Seid Kemaleddin had fled to the Seid Razieddin at

---

<sup>a</sup> A town of Ghilan, long. 88. lat. 37.

Mahanasar<sup>3</sup>, which are three towns situate four leagues from Amol<sup>4</sup> on the shore of the Caspian sea; and that they had built a fort on an adjacent hill, which join'd the sea on one side, and instead of ditches was surrounded with precipices which were commanded for the space of a mile by the sea, which in turbulent weather flow'd within the rocks; so that the place seem'd to be in the middle of water. Round about the wall they had fix'd great trees near one another, the branches of which were so closely join'd together, that they serv'd instead of a second wall. The princes of Amol and Sari retir'd into this place with their relations, household, best captains, treasures, and whatever they had that was precious. The rich inhabitants of these countrys, and the foreign merchants themselves, also retir'd thither with all their effects, confiding in the strength of their walls, and the inaccessibleness of the place: and thus this fortress was fill'd with so great a quantity of gold, silver and furniture, that the most skilful arithmeticians cou'd scarce compute the value of 'em. Timur inform'd of these particulars, order'd his soldiers to march with expedition: he pass'd the lakes and marshes of these forests, and in three days arriv'd at Amol. He order'd the Seid Cayas Eddin to go and confer with his father, and bring him to him. And as this nation had always the character of being faithless, irreligious, and deprav'd in their morals; God permitted that the infamous sentence which was us'd to Kemaleddin and the other Cheriffs, shou'd be pronounc'd by his own son, whom Ti-

<sup>3</sup> Long. 88. 8. lat. 37. 50.

<sup>4</sup> A town of Ghilan near the Caspian, long. 87. 25. lat. 37.

Book III. mur sent to 'em, ordering him to make the following speech: "You are men not to be trusted, and of a corrupt religion; you have no temple to worship God in, and you assemble no where to perform acts of piety according to your duty. You neither observe the commandments of God, nor the counsels of the prophet; and when any one is about to call others to prayer, you cruelly put him to death. The names of Seid and Cheriff are profan'd by you, and you are unworthy of the honor of being descended from the great Mahomet."

As soon as the son of Seid Kemaleddin was set out, Timur order'd that the water in all the reservatorys, cisterns, and other vessels, which were in Amol, shou'd be spilt: which being done, the army began its march, making the usual crys. And as it was absolutely necessary that they shou'd pass thro marshes and sloughs, the soldiers cut down all the wood they cou'd find, which they cast into the marshes. This was tedious work; for they cou'd advance but one league a day, and were oblig'd to encamp in moorish ground upon fascines. Thus at length this country, which was so full of trees that the sun cou'd scarce penetrate it, became like a large plain, after the army had cut 'em down. On

Septemb. the twenty-sixth of Zilcade 794, the scouts of  
21. 1392. both partys join'd, and there were skirmishes, in which the blood flow'd on all sides. Hubbi Coja did surprizing actions; but he was unfortunately slain, being willing to sacrifice his life to his honor, while he imagin'd that a warrior, whose reputation is famous among posterity, never dies. As he was the son of Cheik Behader, his loss was regretted not only for his valor, but because of his birth. Three days after this batel of the scouts, wherein neither party gain'd the

the advantage, the Seid Kemaleddin Deraz and Moulana Amadeddin, came and cast themselves at the feet of Timur, to implore his clemency. They demanded quarter, and besought him to pardon what was past: which Timur granted, on condition that the Cheriffs, who commanded in all those quarters, shou'd send him part of the goods of the inhabitants, and one of each of their children in hostage, so that he might be assur'd of their fidelity. He told 'em, that if the Cheriffs wou'd exactly execute this order, they might sleep in security, and come before him with confidence, since he had given his word for their safety.

The Cheriffs return'd home, and declar'd the will of Timur to their brethren: but their ill fortune depriv'd 'em of their reason; for imagining themselves able to make a defence, they were so far from hearkning to his proposals, that they caus'd the kettledrums to be beat, and war to be declar'd. Timur, on advice of it, sent to the Caspian shore Piri Pacha, Argouncha of Bourdalic, Nadercha of Caragheul, and Cheik Ali of Amouye, with the masters of the barks of the Gihon, and the flingers of artificial fire, that they might get possession of the enemy's barks, and attack Mahanasar. They follow'd their instructions, and were so successful, that they surpriz'd the enemy's vessels, and erected horses-tails on sticks instead of standards. They distributed all their soldiers into these vessels, whom they brought by squadrons to the foot of the walls at the sound of kettledrums and trumpets; their colors being display'd. The soldiers with their cuirasses on, and sword in hand, made the great cry to begin the attack, and besiege Mahanasar in form. They cast a great number of arrows, with pitch and



Book III. and tar set on fire, from the barks into the town; so that it is said that the Caspian sea was become a sea of fire. The attack was so vigorous, that those who guarded the out-parts were oblig'd to fly into the place to save their lives; while ours at the same time scal'd the walls. The first of Zilhadge 794, Timur took horse, and approach'd the place, which put the enemy in confusion. They held a council on what they had to do; and perceiving they wou'd be at last oblig'd to surrender, considering the advantages Timur's men had already gain'd, they resolv'd to implore his clemency, before they were reduc'd to too great extremitys. They came out of the place in companys; and casting themselves at the feet of the generous Timur, implor'd his protection; and confidently trusted all their affairs in his hands, beseeching him to serve as an intercessor for 'em with himself, and consider that they had submitted without waiting the extrémitys, tho they were able to have held out a long time, and to have harass'd his troops; and moreover, that they had acted thus, because they knew they had to do with the most generous prince in the universe. Timur highly reprimanded 'em for their errors in religion, for they were Chiais\*, and threaten'd to hang 'em all if they wou'd not profess the orthodox tenets of the Sunnis†: but he was at length more moderate, because of their nobleness, and the honor they had to descend from Mahomet, whom he regarded as the seal and the greatest of the prophets. He told 'em that this consideration, join'd with the re-

---

\* A sect of Persians at present.


† A sect of the Ottomans and the Moguls of India.

duction of the place and their submission, appeas'd his wrath, and made him change his resolution. After this he treated 'em civilly, and even made 'em several presents; but he continu'd to exhort 'em to embrace the orthodox sect, instructing 'em himself in the charming maxims of the religion of the Sunnis, and errors of the Chiais: he prais'd the professors and doctors of the law of the former, and earnestly invited the Cheriffs to be instructed, that they knowing which law is agreeable to God, there might remain no scruple in their consciences. After having thus exhorted 'em, he sent 'em to the town of Sari, with orders to guard that place strictly.

Timur staid some days at Mahanasar, to give orders for the carrying away the great riches, which were brought thither from all parts; he fill'd the barks with 'em, and generously distributed 'em among the Emirs and soldiers, who had signaliz'd themselves on this occasion. After they had pillag'd and clear'd this place, they destroy'd it, and turn'd it into a large heap of rubbish, which is to be seen to this day.

In the mean while advice was brought to the emperor from all parts, that there were in this country a great number of men of an erroneous opinion, call'd Fedais, whom the Europeans term Assassins. Whereupon he order'd that all those who were of the race of Mahomet shou'd be separated from these men, and be brought to him; and that then they shou'd put to the sword all who were of this sect; which was immediately done, and the country freed from the disorders those assassins had caus'd there. Whenever these fellows found a stranger, or any one else, with a paper or book in his possession, whether he were a lawyer, philosopher, or a man

Slaughter  
of the as-  
sassins.

Book III.  man of letters, they believ'd it lawful to put him to death. Cheik Ali Behader had a great hand in the destruction of these wretches, to revenge the death of Hubbi Coja his son. Ef-kender Cheiki was also resolv'd to revenge that of his father Efrasiab, and other relations slain by the Dervises, the disciples of Seid Caouameddin. They invested Amol, that no one might escape their wrath, and made the most terrible massacre in that city ever mention'd in history. Timur caus'd the Seid Kemaleddin and his son to be put in a vessel to be carry'd to Carezem; and the Seids Mourtaza and Abdalla, with their sons, and several other men, were carry'd to Samarcand, and thence to Tachkunt.

Terrible  
massacre  
in Amol.

## CHAP. XX.

### *Timur sends a letter to Samarcand.*

THE province of Mazendran being entirely brought under subjection, Timur sent to Samarcand the news of the taking of Sari, Amol, and Mahanasar, with their dependencies: he sent for the Mirza Charoc his son, and the Mirzas Calil and Roustem his grandsons, as well as the Sultan Hussein, grandson of the Emir Moussa, and son of Timur's daughter: as also the princess Beghisi Sultan, daughter of the Mirza Mirancha, and the empresses Serai Mulc Canum, Touman Aga, and others. In the month of Muharrem 795. he caus'd a very fine palace to be built in a place nam'd Chafman, in the neighbourhood of Jorjiana. He gave the government of Sari to Gemchid Can,

December  
1392.

ren, native of Cain in Couhestan; and that of Chap. 20.  
Amola to Eskender Cheiki, from whom the Cherifs had taken it, after having traiterously slain his father and brother, as they had also serv'd him if he had not fled for refuge to Timur's court, where he staid a long time. On the twentieth of Muharrem the emperor lodg'd in the palace which he had built at Chafman. He sent out Tavatchis to cause all the troops which were dispers'd to return to the camp. He had advice that his letter got safe to Samarcand, with the riches and rarities of Mazendran; and that on the eighteenth of Zilhadge, they had made public rejoicings, and beautify'd the city, in token of joy for this conquest. The person who brought this news had several presents made him; and much alms were given away to the poor.

Decem. 17.  
1392.Nov. 15.  
1392.

Serai Mulc Canum, Touman Aga, and the other ladys, with the emperor's children, departed from Samarcand on the twenty-fourth of Zilcade 794, and laid the first night at Tutuc<sup>2</sup>. The next day there fell great rains and snow, and it was exceeding cold, by reason of a hurricane which rose from the Caspian sea. This bad weather did not hinder the ladys and princes coming to Chaduman, where they lodg'd in the Caravanfera's. On the 26th they came to Damas, a famous hospital, founded by Timur for the relief of the poor; where they staid two or three days till the storm was over: then they departed, and in three days arriv'd at Carchi, where they met a courier from Timur, who sent orders that they shou'd leave their baggage behind, and make haste themselves. But as the

---

<sup>2</sup> A village five leagues from Samarcand.



Book III. Mirza Charoc excus'd himself from making so much haste by reason of a distemper in his eyes, the others came but slowly, that he might not be left alone. They cross'd the Gihon at A-

Decem. 13. mouye on the sixteenth of Muharrem 795, and  
1392. encamp'd on the other side: from whence they march'd day and night till they came to Macan, where the distemper in Mirza Charoc's eyes abated. Serai Mulc Canum sent to Timur an account of the health of the princes his children, and of all that had happen'd since their departure from Samarcand. The messenger was no sooner set out, than they departed and came for the village of Deli Hendouzn, where they left their baggage to make the more haste. They then march'd day and night, and in thirteen days arriv'd at Chilaoun\*, where they paid their respects to Timur. He tenderly embrac'd his sons, the sight of whom highly increas'd his joy for his new conquest. The princes and princesses made their compliments, and offer'd presents to him, as usual; then they went with him to Chasman, where they found all necessary preparations for their diversion; and the great lords of the court had also furniture and other things to adorn their apartments, which render'd the joy compleat.

---

\* A town near Jorjiana in Corassana.

C H A P. XXI.

*Timur makes war a second time on the kingdoms of Fars and Irac.*

**T**IMUR's courage not permitting him to pass all his life in pleasure, at the end of winter, the sun being in Capricorn, he prepar'd to continue his conquests. He fix'd the campaign of that year for the kingdoms of Fars and Irac: the great generals, the officers and soldiers re-assum'd their courage; and the emperor sent the Mirza Mehemet Sultan at the head of the vanguard, with his brother the prince Pir Mehemet, accompany'd by the Cheik Ali Behader and other Emirs. Then he chose three men out of each ten, who compos'd a separate body, at the head of which he departed from Mazendran the twenty-fourth of Sefer 795, Jan. 20. 1393. leaving the Emirs Yadghiar Berlas, Gehancha Behader, and others to guard the baggage, and conduct the main-body of the army, with orders to follow him slowly. Among the empresses, Serai Mulc Canum, and Touman Aga, staid with the baggage; and Tchulpan Mulc Aga, Duro Sultan Aga, and Neghiar Aga, had the honor to accompany Timur. He gave the command of another vanguard to Mirza Charoc, and went himself to Yeilac Veli<sup>o</sup>; and after having furnish'd victuals for the army at Damgan<sup>1</sup>, Semnan<sup>2</sup>, and Rei Chehriar<sup>3</sup>, he march'd

<sup>o</sup> A town in a mountain, where the Emir Veli prince of Mazendran pass'd the summer; long. 89. lat. 36. 30.

<sup>1</sup> A town of Coumes, frontier of Tabarestan, long. 89. lat. 36. 20.

<sup>2</sup> A town of Coumes, frontier of Irac Agemi, long. 88. lat. 36.

<sup>3</sup> A town of Irac Agemi, long. 86. lat. 35. 30.

Book III. further. The Mirzas Mehemet Sultan and Pir Mehemet at their arrival at Cazuin<sup>4</sup> gave battle to Chahsouar, governor of it; whom Coja Cheik attack'd, took prisoner tho he was arm'd, and brought to the two princes, who sent him to Timur. From thence they went to Sultania<sup>5</sup>, the governor of which Actcheghi was dead, and Aznefcha his intendant had taken the government on him in his stead. This coward fled at their approach. The two Mirzas staid there eight days; furnish'd the troops with victuals; and having put a good garison in the place, march'd towards Bagdad. When they had enter'd Courdistan, there arriv'd a messenger from Timur, who brought orders for 'em to pass by Geb Chumal<sup>6</sup>. Upon which they immediately return'd, and went to take the castle of Sancar<sup>7</sup>, the victuals and ammunition of which they brought away: then they pillag'd the country, and their horses eat up all the unreap'd corn.

At their departure there came a second messenger who brought an order for 'em to reduce all the inhabitants of Courdistan; and to free the country from these robbers. For which reason they went to Tchebtchal<sup>8</sup>, and thence to the mountain of Bistoun<sup>9</sup>, where Sevindgic Behader, Temour Coja son of Acbouga, and Moubacher Behader went from the main-body into

---

<sup>4</sup> A town of Irac Agemi, frontier of Ghilan, long. 85. lat. 37.

<sup>5</sup> A town of Irac Agemi, frontier of Azerbaijan, long. 84. 20. lat. 36. 30.

<sup>6</sup> A town between Irac and Courdistan, long. 82. 40. lat. 36.

<sup>7</sup> On the top of a mountain, frontier of Azerbaijan and Courdistan, long. 81. lat. 36. 50.

<sup>8</sup> Long. 77. 35. lat. 37.

<sup>9</sup> Long. 75. lat. 37.

the country of the Courdes. The Mirzas Chap. 21. march'd towards Derbend Tachi Catun', whether one of the chief men of the country, in hopes of obtaining the government of it, fled. He told 'em no one knew the road so well as he, and if they pleas'd, he wou'd be their guide. The Mirza Mehemet kindly receiv'd him, gave him a belt, a vest, and some gold; and order'd the Cheik Ali Behader to go as a Mangalai, with this man for a guide. Ibrahim Cha, prince of these places, handsomly receiv'd the Cheik Ali, submitted, and sent his son Sultancha to the Mirzas with Arabian horses, and other curious presents, consisting of nine pieces of each sort. Sultancha came to the princes, kiss'd the carpet, and made presents from their father. The Mirza Mehemet Sultan was content with these submissions of the Courde prince, and sent an express for the Cheik Ali to come back. He accordingly began his march; but being upon the road, his guide, frustrated of his hopes by the peace with Ibrahim Cha, traitorously stuck him with a knife while he was eating, of which he fell dead upon the spot. This brave man, who had signaliz'd his courage in twenty famous battles, cou'd not save himself from this coward, who was taken by Cheik Ali's men, and immediately put to death with the most cruel torments, and afterwards burnt.

---

\* A defile of mountains near Eclat in Courdistan.





## C H A P. XXII.

*Timur marches to the kingdoms of Lorestan  
and Coureſtan.*

**T**IMUR, being at Chehriar, choſe a number of brave men, and left the Mirza Mirancha with the reſt of the army in that place, ordering him to wait the baggage which ſhou'd come from Eſterabad; and at the head of this ſelect body he march'd to Ouroudgerd<sup>3</sup>. The Mirza Omar Cheik, at the head of the left wing, march'd by Kiochki Toupan<sup>4</sup> and Ave<sup>5</sup>, to beſiege the fortrefs of Kiou<sup>6</sup>; which he took after a ſhort defence, and put the governor Mehemet Comi in chains. The next day he went to Marvan<sup>7</sup>, the governor of which place, Mehemet Perahhani, who commanded there for Mehemet Comi, came to him, and ſaluted him. From thence he march'd to Kerheroud<sup>8</sup>. Eſfendiari the governor, not imagining himſelf ſtrong enough to make a defence, came out of it, was ſeiz'd and carry'd to the Mirza, who ſent him to the emperor with Mehemet Comi.

Feb. 26.  
1393.

Timur arriv'd at Ouroudgerd the fiſt of Rabiulakher 795; to which place the Mirza Omar

<sup>3</sup> A town eighteen leagues from Hamadan in the province of Couheſtan in Irac Agemi, long. 84. 40. lat. 34. 25.

<sup>4</sup> A hill between Rei and Ave.

<sup>5</sup> A town of Couheſtan between Rei and Hamadan, long. 85. lat. 35. 50.

<sup>6</sup> On a mountain, long. 84. lat. 36.

<sup>7</sup> A town of Couheſtan, near Hamadan, long. 84. lat. 35. 30.

<sup>8</sup> A town of Couheſtan, long. 84. 10. lat. 35.

Cheik came, after he had pass'd by Turvan<sup>2</sup>; and with Timur's permission he return'd to the right wing of the army. Timur gave the command of the militia of Ouroudgerd to Seifeddin; and leaving Cheik Micail with the government of Nehavend<sup>3</sup> three days after he arriv'd at Corram Abad<sup>4</sup>, the governor of which, Malek Azzeddin, not daring to defend himself, fled. Timur staid one night in these quarters, left troops to besiege the place, and order'd the Mirza Omar Cheik to pursue Malek. Then he sent partys of horse into all the quarters of the kingdom of Lorestan, to exterminate the robbers, and put a stop to the disorders they committed. Timur departed from Corram Abad to Toftar<sup>5</sup>; and when he was almost at the end of his day's march, he plac'd some brave men in ambuscade near the high-ways, who slew the Lores robbers as they went into their cottages from the mountains. Timur arriv'd in eleven days at the bridge of the river Abzal<sup>6</sup>. The Mirza Omar Cheik diligently pursu'd Malek

<sup>2</sup> A town of Couhestan, long. 84. 40. lat. 35.

<sup>3</sup> Otherwise call'd Nouhavend, a town of Couhestan, built by Noah, on a mountain fourteen leagues south from Hamadan, near Ouroudgerd; long. 83. 50. lat. 34. 10. Here was a famous barrel between the Mahometans, commanded by the Calif Omar, son of Elcattab, and the king of Persia, Yez Degerd, who was vanquish'd, and lost his kingdom, A. D. 638.

<sup>4</sup> A fortress of Lorestan near the town of Lor, long. 84. lat. 32. 40. the residence of the prince of Lorestan.

<sup>5</sup> Capital of Courestan, between the kingdom of Fars and the Persian gulf, towards Basra and Vaset; long. 84. 30. lat. 31. 30. It is accounted the antientest city in the world.

<sup>6</sup> A river which runs thro Courestan by Toftar, and falls into the Persian gulph at Hush Mehdi. Sapor king of Persia caus'd an aqueduct to be built from one of its branches a mile long, which conveys water to the city of Toftar; it is the most remarkable and curious machine extant.

Book III. Azeddin as far as the castle of Munkere<sup>5</sup>; but he cou'd hear nothing of him: he reduc'd all the places and inhabitants in those mountains<sup>6</sup>, and afterwards join'd the imperial camp at the bridge of Abzal. The Mirza Miran Chah, who conducted the baggage and main body of the army, march'd with a troop of horse to the gates of Cachan<sup>7</sup>. Melouk Serbedal (governor of it for Chah Mansour king of Persia, to whom he fled before from Corassiana, for fear of being seiz'd by the soldiers of this Mirza) had no sooner heard of his arrival than he sent an express out of the town to beg quarter; which was granted, and a vest sent him. Then Melouk came out, and put himself under the protection of the Mirza, who return'd to join the baggage. Timur sent prince Omar Cheik to the right with a body of the army; when he came to Haviza<sup>8</sup>, no one resisted him, and Islam, governor of it for Chah Mansour, fled to save his life. The Mirza fortify'd, and plac'd a garison in Haviza. Timur departed from the Abzal on the sixteenth night of his march; at ten a clock in the morning he cross'd the bridge, and went to a town on the other side. This bridge is very famous, and of curious structure; it is said to have been built by Sapor Zulectaf; has twenty eight lofty magnificent arches, each of which has a lesser, which make in all fifty six. It is built of stone and brick, with great beauty and strength; so that it has always attracted the eyes of the cu-

Description of the  
bridge on  
the river  
Abzal.

<sup>5</sup> Towards Vaset upon the Tigris. <sup>6</sup> On the banks of the river Chat, which joins the Tigris and Euphrates at Gournâ.

<sup>7</sup> A town of Couhestan, where porcelane is dug, with which the walls and houses of Persia are cover'd, three days journey from Ispahan; long. 86. lat. 34.

<sup>8</sup> Corruptly so call'd from Ahouaz, a town of Couhestan on the river Abzal, long. 85. lat. 31.

rious, and brought to their remembrance the king who built it. *Chap. 22.*

Whilst Timur staid at Dez Foul, a town at the foot of this famous bridge, Chamfeddin the governor of it presented him with twenty loads of silver; and the commissarys afterwards carry'd away the very horses and mules. Timur departed for Tostar at noon; and in his way staid upon a hill, where he caus'd the horses to be put to grass; then marching all night, he came the next morning in the sight of Tostar, where he encamp'd on the bank of the river Tchegar Donke. Ali Coutual and Esfendiar Nami, governors of Tostar for Chah Mansour, fled to Chiraz at the report of Timur's approach. But the chief men and Cherifs of Tostar went out of the town at his arrival, cross'd the river, and came to the door of his tent to make their submission, and assure him of their obedience. In the mean while the Emirs and soldiers pillag'd all the inhabitants of the neighbouring country, and brought to the camp a great number of horses and mules, which Timur distributed among the soldiers. Thus the enemys lost all their effects by the emperor's wrath, and his friends obtain'd pardon by his clemency.

On the 20th of Zilhadge, Timur cross'd the river of Tchegar Donke, and went into a forest of palms without the city. The Mirzas, Mehemet Sultan and Pir Mehemet, also departed from Derbend Tachicatun; and after having pass'd several rivers and mountains in Courdistan and Lorestan, exterminated the robbers there, and reduc'd the inhabitants to obedience, they arriv'd here, where they had the honor to salute the emperor. All the troops also join'd the imperial camp at this place. *March 19.*



## C H A P. XXIII.

*An account of the motions of the princes of Fars, or of Persia and Irac, on which the present affairs depend.*

WE mention'd in the second book, that Timur, after a campaign of three years, returning from Persia to Samarcand, pass'd by Chiraz, because the princes of the family of Muzaffer became obedient to him, and several of 'em had list'd themselves in his service; upon which he then gave the government of Chiraz to Chah Yahia, head of that family, and confirm'd him in that of Yezd, which he before possess'd. He likewise gave the government of Ispahan to Sultan Mehemet, eldest son of Chah Yahia; that of Kirman to Sultan Ahmed, brother of Chah Chuja, with permission to return to his own country; that of Seirjan to Sultan Abou Ithac, son of Avis, son of Chah Chuja; and because the Pehlevan, Muhaddeb Corasani, one of the Emirs of Chah Chuja, (who had been long time governor of Abrecouh for this prince, and after his death for his son, the Sultan Zein Elabeddin) had been faithful to his trust in this government, Timur confirm'd it to him. Chah Mansour, younger brother of Chah Yahiah, was then governor of Toftar, whither the Sultan Zein Elabeddin was retir'd, for fear of our army; nevertheless Chah Mansour caus'd him to be arrested and put in irons. By which means, from the year 790, when Timur march'd from Persia to Touran, to the year 795, when he return'd from Mazendran to Persia, there were

An. Dom.

1388.

An. Dom.

1393.

were great disorders among the princes of the house of Muzaffer. At length Zein Elabeddin, prisoner in the castle of Kerikerd four leagues from Tostar, by the assistance of Ahmet Chah Turmetachi, and Mahmout his relation, escap'd with them to Malek Azeddin Kerit at Ouroudgerd, who conducted him to Ispahan. And as the officers of this city were in the interest of Zein Elabeddin, the Sultan Mehemet retir'd into the fortress, and a month after went out with the consent of Mehemet Courtchi, who went with him to Yezd; and by this means Zein Elabeddin became master of Ispahan. Then Chah Mansour departed from Tostar at the head of an army, and came to the gates of Chiraz, where the Cherifs, back'd by their disciples, open'd to him the gate of Salem. Chah Yahia sat in the Divan of Chah Chuja till the arrival of Chah Mansour: then he took horse, went out of the town by the gate of Sader, and took the road of Yezd. Chah Mansour took his seat in the Divan, wou'd not pursue his brother; but was content with establishing himself on the throne of Persia, of which Chiraz is capital. At length he rais'd a powerful army, with which he seiz'd on the castles of Bid, Sermac and Merouset, and march'd to the town of Abrecouh, commanded by the Pehlevan Muhaddeb: tho he did not besiege it, but return'd to Chiraz. The Sultan Zein Elabeddin also rais'd an army at Ispahan, imagining that the Emirs of Chah Mansour wou'd come over to his side, because most of 'em had rais'd themselves in his father's court. He march'd to Chiraz with his small army; while Chah Mansour advanc'd with his to give him battel. They met near the fortress of Estacar, at the foot of the new bridge; and Zein Elabeddin's expectations

Book III. were not accomplish'd. Chah Mansour's soldiers swam over the water, and attack'd him so briskly, that the Sultan's men being mostly kill'd or routed, he was constrain'd to fly to Ispahan. The Pehlevan Muhaddeb, fearing lest Chah Mansour shou'd get possession of the whole kingdom, contracted a strict alliance with Chah Yahia; the latter of whom being by chance on the mountains of Yezd, a day's journey from Abrecouh, the Pehlevan went to him, offer'd his service, and made a treaty with him, which they both solemnly swore to. The Pehlevan at length invited him to come to Abrecouh, to which the prince consented; he conducted him into the town, and prepar'd lodgings for him in a little palace, which he had built and adorn'd for his own use. The courtiers of Chah Yahia, seeing their prince master of the town and castle of Abrecouh, importun'd him to break the treaty with the Pehlevan: he consented to their infamous proposal. They seiz'd on the Pehlevan Muhaddeb, loaded him with chains; and sent him to the castle of Melous on the frontiers of Yezd, where he was put to death by the orders of Chah Yahia, who plac'd a strong garison in Abrecouh under the Emir Mehemet Courtchi, and return'd to Yezd. On advice of this Chah Mansour departed from Chiraz at the head of a formidable army to besiege Abrecouh, the governor of which having fortify'd himself in the castle, he took the town, and having plac'd troops in garison, march'd to Yezd, to attack Chah Yahia: but the latter being inform'd of his march, sent an express to Mehemet Courtchi, ordering him to surrender the place to Chah Mansour, on condition he shou'd not bring his army to Yezd. Chah Mansour having learnt this circumstance from the courier whom he met,

immediately return'd to Abrecough, the castle of which was deliver'd to him without opposition. He plac'd a good garison in the town as well as in the citadel, and took the road to Ispahan, causing the corn and grass to be destroy'd; and after much mischief done, he return'd to Chiraz. The following year he march'd thither again at the head of an army, and return'd after having committed the like disorders. Zein Elabeddin seeing himself so oppress'd by this powerful prince, sought for protection from the princes his relations. The Sultan Ahmed prince of Kirman, and the Sultan Abou Ishaac of Seirjan, came to assist him at the head of their troops, which were well equip'd. Chah Yahia made some fair promises, which he did not keep; for he came out of the town of Yezd, but did not join the princes. Several other lords of the house of Muzaffer join'd in defence of Zein Elabeddin, march'd towards Chiraz in the beginning of the spring, pillag'd several countrys, especially that of Kerbal<sup>1</sup>, from whence they turn'd towards the hot country. On advice of this Chah Mansour march'd against 'em, and gave 'em battel in the meadow of Fesa, in a village nam'd Jurouz. This prince, whose name signifys victorious, was in effect so: for he routed the confederate princes so that every one retreated to his own country.

In the following spring Chah Mansour return'd against Ispahan; as soon as he was encamp'd without the city, he order'd Coja Azadeddin to come to him, whom this prince \* of \* Chah Lorestan, in all appearance, entertain'd at Ispahan, to carry on his intrigues. He came out of

Mansour.

<sup>1</sup> A town between Ispahan and Abrecough.



Book III. the city ; and, what is most surprizing, the inhabitants, as soon as he was got to the tent of Chah Mansour, deliver'd up the place. The Sultan Zein Elabeddin fled ; but he was taken near Rei between Veramin and Chehriar by Moufa Choucar, who sent him to Chah Mansour ; who with unparallel'd cruelty put out this prince's eyes with a hot iron, not thinking of the threatnings of God, which are, *That he will never pity them who shew no pity to others.* Chah Mansour, seeing himself master of Ispahan, march'd twice to the gates of Yezd : the second time his mother, who was also Chah Yahia's, came out of the town, to endeavor to make peace betwixt 'em ; and thus exhorted her son :  
 " Behold your eldest brother, who is con-  
 " tented to live with his two children in the  
 " town of Yezd, and to leave you the kingdoms  
 " of Fars and Irac ! If you endeavor to deprive  
 " him of that place too, you will be justly re-  
 " proach'd." These speeches made him return from before Yezd to Chiraz.

Besides these there were several motions for the last four or five years between the princes of the family of Muzaffer, who naturally delighted to make war on each other, which put the empire of Iran in great disorder. The kingdom of Persia was but one, and yet ten kings pretended to it, who were, as one may say, so many butchers to destroy the people and country. It being too long to give a detail of their history, we will only mention what belongs to our subject. When Timur encamp'd without the town of Tostar, the towns of Chiraz, Ispahan and Abrecouh, were in the hands of Chah Mansour, who resided at Chiraz ; the town of Yezd was possess'd by Chah Yahia, who liv'd there with his two sons ; the kingdom of Kir-  
 man

man was govern'd by Sultan Ahmed; and the Chap. 24.  
Sultan Abou Ithac commanded in Seirjan. All these princes were of the family of Muzaffer.

C H A P. XXIV.

*Timur marches to Chiraz against Ghah Mansour.*

AFTER the Mirzas Mehemet Sultan and Pir Mehemet were return'd in triumph from Derbend Tachi Catun, to the imperial camp without Tostar, Timur sent Sevindgic Behader to Haviza to summon the Mirza Omar Cheik to court; and having made himself master of Tostar, he gave the government of it to Coja Mafaoud Sebzuari, to maintain there the troops of Sebzuar which he commanded. At length Timur left the army, and on the 25th of Rabyulakher 795, which answers to the year of the hen, march'd with diligence towards Chiraz, and on the road sent a second express to the Mirza, who had taken Haviza, to inform him that the emperor order'd him to follow him to Chiraz at the head of the baggage and main-body. The 27th of Rabyulakher 795, Timur cross'd the river Doudanke<sup>2</sup>, and two days after encamp'd on the bank of that of Chouroukan Kende<sup>2</sup>. The 1st of Jumaziulevel he went to encamp at Ram Hermez<sup>3</sup>, where Atabec Pir Mehemet, prince of the upper Lorestan, came to kiss the foot of his throne, and offer him presents; to which honor he was admitted by the mediation of the great Emirs; and being well receiv'd by the

April 17.  
1393.

April 22.

<sup>2</sup> Rivers in Courestan, which fall into the Abzal.

<sup>3</sup> A town of Courestan, long. 86. lat. 31. 25.

Book III emperor, he follow'd his court. Timur took  
 horse about noon, pass'd the river of Ram Her-  
 mez <sup>4</sup>, and encamp'd on the other side. The 2d  
 of Jumaziulevel he encamp'd on the river Fei <sup>5</sup>.  
 April 23. The third, after having march'd all night, he  
 24. went to encamp in the plain of Zohra. The  
 25. fourth he pass'd by Kerdestan <sup>6</sup>, cross'd the  
 Abargoun <sup>7</sup>, and went to encamp at Behbehan <sup>8</sup>.  
 26. The fifth he pass'd the Abchirin <sup>9</sup>, and encamp'd  
 27. in the plain of Lachter <sup>1</sup>. The sixth he march'd  
 to Kedge Havas <sup>2</sup>, and encamp'd at the spring  
 28. of the river Canbidac <sup>3</sup>. The seventh he en-  
 29. camp'd at the village Joulaha. The eighth  
 he went to Bacht <sup>4</sup>, cross'd the Abchob <sup>5</sup>, and  
 30. encamp'd at Malemir Chal. The ninth he pass'd  
 the Cavedan <sup>6</sup>, where he gain'd intelligence  
 concerning the fortress of Calaaesfid: from  
 whence he went to stay at Neubendgian <sup>7</sup>. The  
 May 1. 10th of Jumaziulevel he rang'd his army for bat-  
 tel, and went to encamp at the foot of Calaaes-  
 fid, one of the strongest citadels of Asia. The  
 governor for Chah Mansour was nam'd Sader,  
 which signifies good fortune, tho he was an un-  
 fortunate wicked fellow. The Persians confided

---

<sup>4</sup> This runs thro the town, and falls into the Abzal below A-  
 houaz. <sup>5</sup> A river of Courestan which falls into the Abzal.

<sup>6</sup> A town of Courestan, frontier of Fars.

<sup>7</sup> A river which divides the kingdom of Courestan and Fars,  
 runs by Semirem, and falls into the Abzal.

<sup>8</sup> A town of Fars, long. 86. 25. lat. 30. 30.

<sup>9</sup> A river which comes from the town of Cofsuchirin.

<sup>1</sup> A great town of Fars. <sup>2</sup> A village of Fars.

<sup>3</sup> A river which falls into the Persian gulf near Benderic.

<sup>4</sup> A town of Fars dependent on Neubendgian.

<sup>5</sup> A river which comes from Bouan, accounted by the Arabians  
 one of the seven wonders of the world.

<sup>6</sup> A river which passes by Cazron, and falls into the Persian  
 gulf. <sup>7</sup> A town of Fars, long. 87. 10. lat. 30. 20.

in this place, because it was situate on the top of a very rugged mountain, where there was but one slippery way to ascend. On the top of this mountain there was a beautiful smooth plain, a league long and as much broad. Here are rivers and fountains, fruit-trees, and cultivated lands, with all sorts of beasts and birds. The princes had built there many pleasure-houses, where they had no reason to fear fires or torrents, and much less mines or assaults by battering-rams, and other machines: so that no king had ever undertaken to besiege it, believing it impregnable and inaccessible, as well because of its height and the impossibility of carrying up battering-rams, as for the hardness of the rock which cou'd not be dug. The way which leads to the top of the mountain is made so, that in any strait three men may oppose a hundred thousand, and hinder their ascending. The inhabitants, not contented with its natural strength, had fortify'd and wall'd all the turnings with great stones join'd with mortar. As the cultivated fields were sufficient for the maintenance of the inhabitants, and the cattel and fowl had enough to feed on, no one had dreamt of starving 'em out, seeing nothing but death had any power over the inhabitants. Timur coming to the foot of this mountain, ascended in company with his most faithful captains as far as the gate of the fortress, and caus'd the great cry Souroun to be made in the troops who follow'd him. The two wings encamp'd on the top of another mountain which join'd the place. Timur's tent was pitch'd there; and he order'd his soldiers to give a general assault. The cavalry and infantry march'd up the mountain to the fort: the Mirza Mehemet Sultan attack'd it on the right side, as the Mirza Pir



Book III. Mehemet did on his: the Mirza Charoc parted from the left wing, and ran to the foot of the place with his men, whom he made to dismount: all the army did the same, and gave a furious assault. After having labour'd all day, these men wou'd ascend the highest parts of the mountain, and give a general attack to carry the place: but night being come, every one staid in the place he was in. The next morning the princes, Emirs and soldiers began the assault at the noise of drums, kettle-drums and trumpets. The enemy shot from the place a great number of arrows and stones. Our brave captains sacrific'd their lives in Timur's service: every one took a pick-ax in his hand to break the rock, as formerly Ferhad<sup>\*</sup> did. Acbougá, an officer of the Cheik Mehemet Aicoutmur, by chance mounted a place unseen; when he was there, he prais'd God and the prophet, crying out, *Timur is victorious, and his enemys are confounded.* He acted the part of a valiant man upon this steep rock; for covering himself with his buckler, he fell upon the besieg'd, who were so surpriz'd at being attack'd in a place they thought no one dar'd ascend, that they left off fighting. The soldiers of the Mirza Mehemet Sultan went up the way which leads to the gate of the fortress, where displaying their ensigns, and fixing their horse-tails, they cry'd out, *Victory!* The others mounted the rock which Acbougá had shewn, and some went up by other ways: so that the place was taken, and the garison precipitated from the top of the mountain.

---

<sup>\*</sup> A famous sculptor in the reign of Cosroes king of Persia.

Mehemet Azad seiz'd on the governor Sadet, and brought him to Timur, who order'd that in his blood they shou'd revenge those who had lost their lives in this assault. The sword is the instrument of vengeance to those who forget themselves; and when God chuses any one to command, we must submit to him without resistance. The Sultan Zein Elabeddin, whom Chah Mansour had blinded and kept prisoner in this place, was brought to Timur, who receiv'd him kindly, gave him a vest, and comforted him, promising to revenge him on Chah Mansour, whom he wou'd punish for his injustice and cruelty. The emperor order'd all the women, whom the soldiers had taken, to be releas'd; and leaving Malek Mehemed Aoubehi governor there, he return'd. The 11th of Jumaziulevel, he went to encamp at Neubendgian: He gave Acbouga, who first mounted the rock of Calaaesfid, so much silver-mony, stuffs, tents, women-slaves, horses, camels, mules and other things, that this officer, who the day before was master but of one horse, dazzled with this abundance, did not know whether what he saw was a dream or reality. The next morning Timur pass'd by the defile of Bouan, and encamp'd at Tirmerdan\*; from whence he departed on the 13th, and encamp'd at Jaragian\*; on the 14th he arriv'd at Jouyem\*. On the road he inform'd himself concerning Chah Mansour; who, as every one told him, had fled.

---

\* Towns of Fars between Chiraz and Neubendgian.



## C H A P. XXV.

*Battel between Timur and Chah Mansour.  
The death of the latter.*

**A**S Timur was not troubled at the affair of Chah Mansour, he the same day divided his army into two bodys, one of which was led by himself, and the other by Mirza Mehemet Sultan : he gave the vanguard of his own body to Mirza Pir Mehemet Gehanghir, and the rear to Coja Acbouga. The troops of Mehemet Sultan were on the right, whose vanguard was commanded by Cheik Temour Behader. The Mirza Charoc had no troops, for he always attended on Timur. He sent before as a scout Emir Osman Abbas, and himself at the head of the army took the road to Chiraz. The Emir Osman had not gone far, before he perceiv'd a body of the scouts of Chah Mansour, who were at the end of the gardens without the town, marching forwards : he hid himself in a bottom ground till they had pass'd him ; and then he sally'd out of his ambuscade with Sainte Maure, Acous, Temoue, Mouelli, Cara Mehemet, and Behram Yefouri. The brave Behram overtook 'em first sword in hand, and cut one of the horses bridles : the man fell, and not being able to get away, Behram put him on his own horse bound, and brought him to Timur, who question'd him concerning Chah Mansour, and the number of his soldiers ; and then continu'd his road. When he had gone about a league, he perceiv'd in the fields without the town three or four thousand horse,

horse, arm'd with coats of mail, helmets, and breast-plates of leather lin'd with iron; their horses cover'd with a kind of cuirasses made of thick silk, and their ensigns display'd. These men being inur'd to war and fatigue, and skilful at the bow, Chah Mansour advanc'd at their head like a furious lion, and in opposition to his reason, which should have preserv'd in his mind a suitable idea of the person he had to do with, as one whose arm had cast down all his enemys, on a friday at the hour of prayer he attack'd our main body compos'd of thirty thousand Turks, the most dextrous men of their time, in a place nam'd Patila: he overthrew their squadrons, broke their ranks, made his way into the midst, and gain'd behind our army posts of the utmost consequence: then he return'd furious as a dragon to the fight, seeming resolv'd to lose his life. Timur stopt short with some of his favorites, to consider the extreme vigor, or rather rashness, of this prince, who dar'd attack him in person. Timur seeing him come directly against him, wou'd have arm'd himself with his lance to oppose him; but he cou'd not find it, because Poulad Tchoura, the keeper of it, had been so briskly attack'd, that he fled and carry'd away the lance. Timur, who had only fourteen or fifteen persons with him, did not stir out of his place till Chah Mansour came up to him. This rash person struck the emperor's helmet twice with his scymitar; but the blows did no harm, for they glanc'd along his arms: he kept firm as a rock and did not change his posture. Adel Actachi held a buckler over Timur's head, and Comari Yesaoul advanc'd before him: he did several great actions, and was wounded in his hand with a sword.



Book III.

Then Mamoutcha, Tavakul Baourthi, Amancha, and Mehemet Azad, enter'd into the middle of the enemy's army, and gave extraordinary proofs of their courage and strength. Chah Mansour, who had been repuls'd from before the emperor, fell upon the infantry of the main-body, while Mirza Mehemet Sultan so briskly attack'd the right wing of the Persian army, that it gave way. Mobacher and the other Emirs closely pursu'd them, and made a terrible slaughter. The Mirza Pir Mehemet Gehanghir bravely defeated their left wing, killing some, and obliging the others to fly. The Mirza Charoc, who fought near Timur like a lion, rally'd a whole batallion of soldiers who fled; and Gelathamid, Beiram Soufi, sons of Cayaseddin Tercan, and Coja Rastin behav'd themselves courageously in his presence, and with their arrows made the enemy give way; Abdel Coja Pirau, and Cheik Mehemet Aicoutmur, joining 'em. The regiment of Allahdad, call'd the faithful; that of Cheik Noureddin, son of Sarbonga, nam'd Aimule; and that of Boi, which was the imperial regiment call'd Coutchin; which were in the main-body, having been routed by Mansour, rally'd, and displaying their colors, form'd themselves into a compleat squadron. The three regiments of Cheik Ali, Lalam Coutchin, and Behramdad, wou'd not stir from their post, where they bravely fought. At length the Mirza Charoc, tho but seventeen years old, behav'd himself with so much valor and conduct, that he hem'd in Chah Mansour, cut off his head, and cast it at the feet of the emperor his father, congratulating him on the victory: "May the heads, said he, of all your enemys be thus laid at your feet, as that of the proud Mansour is." This lucky accident

Charoc  
cuts off  
Chah Man-  
sour's head.

dis-

discourag'd the Persian soldiers, who till that time had fought well. These leopards were turn'd into deers, for they who were not kill'd fled. Timur, pleas'd at this great victory, embrac'd the princes his sons and the Nevians, and fell on his knees with 'em to return thanks to God for the victory. At length the Emirs came to him, and having congratulated him, they also fell on their knees: and as they presented him the gold cup, according to the custom of the Moguls, they saw on a sudden come behind 'em a body of the enemys rang'd in order of battle and well equipp'd, who advanc'd to attack 'em. Timur and the Mirza Charoc, with the lords, march'd against 'em; they made the great cry, and receiv'd the enemy with so much vigor, that they immediately gave way and were routed. The fugitives gain'd the mountain of Calatsurc, that is, the red castle; while some Emirs pursu'd 'em, who cut 'em to pieces. Timur pass'd the night at the village of Dinou Can; and the next day this conqueror, like Menoutcher<sup>1</sup>, when he enter'd victorious into Estacar, antiently the capital of Persia, began his march to make his entry in triumph, and in warlike habit, into the famous city of Chiraz, the present capital of that kingdom. He order'd his standard to be display'd on the gate of Selm<sup>2</sup>, where he lodg'd, while the army encamp'd in the out-parts of the town. Eight gates were shut up, while only that of Selm was kept open. Then many chief lords of the court enter'd the city, took down the names of the magistrates and heads of the quarters, according to which they collected the treasures, riches, furniture, stuffs, horses and mules of Chah Mansour, his courtiers, and fa-

<sup>1</sup> Son of Feridon, one of the first kings of Persia.

<sup>2</sup> So call'd from one of the sons of Feridon.

Book III.. mily; which they convey'd out of the city, and presented to Timur, who liberally distributed 'em among the Emirs. The inhabitants were tax'd for having their lives preserv'd, and the tax was regularly paid. Timur sent the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to Ispahan, with orders to fix a garison there, and to receive a tribute for saving the lives of the inhabitants. The Debirs had orders to prepare the letters of conquests, to send to Samarcand and other capitals of the kingdoms of the empire of Timur. The Mirza Omar Cheik, who, according to the orders given him, fraid behind with the baggage, pillag'd all the rebels he cou'd meet, as well the remains of Chah Mansfour's army, as the robbers of Lorestan, the Chouls<sup>3</sup>, and the Courdes. When he had pass'd by Neubendgian, and was come to Cazon<sup>4</sup>, he receiv'd orders to stay there, and place garisons in all those countrys, and make regulations according to the laws of the Moguls: which he accordingly executed with applause. Some days after he had orders to come to court, at Chiraz, where he had the honor to salute the emperor.

The princes of the family of Muzaffer, having no place to retire to, where Timur cou'd not come at 'em, resolv'd in good earnest to submit. Chah Yahia departed from Yezd with his sons, and the Sultan Ahmed of Kirman, to come to court. They made presents to the emperor of precious stones, horses, mules, tents, pavilions, and all sorts of curiositys. The Sultan Mehdi son of Chahchuja, and Sultan Gadanfer son of Chah Mansfour, were in Chiraz. Timur

---

<sup>3</sup> Inhabitants of the mountains of Malemir Chol and Cazon.

<sup>4</sup> A town of Fars, long. 87. lat. 39.

with the princes his sons, the great Emirs and Nevians, spent a month in feasts and diversions; in which musicians plaid upon organs and harps; and red wine of Chiraz was presented in gold cups by the most beautiful virgins in the city. The Sultan Abou Ithac, son of Chahchuja, also came to court from Seirjan, and made presents to Timur, who employ'd himself in regulating the kingdom of Persia, and the affairs of the people; that under the shadow of his laws they might enjoy peace, of which continual wars and tyranny had depriv'd 'em: he eas'd their extraordinary taxes, as a prince of moderation and equity ought to do. He appointed governor of the kingdom of Fars, which is the heart of the empire, and the most full of citys, towns, and villages of any place in Asia, his dear son, Mirza Omar Cheik, who made a magnificent feast to thank the emperor, offer'd him presents on his knees, and assur'd him with an oath of his inviolable fidelity, and exactness in executing his orders.

---

C H A P. XXVI.

*Timur seizes the princes of the house of Muzaffer, and disposes of their effects among his lieutenants.*

THE children and successors of Mehemet Muzaffer having made themselves masters of the provinces of Persia and Irac, every one set himself up for sovereign, coin'd his own mony, and had public prayers read in his own name. These princes, notwithstanding their affinity, hated one other so much, that every one



Book III. made attempts on the life and estate of his brother, and let no occasion slip whereby he might pillage the country; and when any one gain'd advantage over another, if he gave him his life, he was sure to blind him with a hot iron: the father spar'd not the son, nor the son the father. But what was worst of all, the poor people bore the burden of these disorders, and were in a manner the tennis-ball of misfortune and misery, and groan'd under the weight of tyranny and oppression. Our conqueror applying himself to regulate the affairs of this kingdom, the Cheiks, the doctors, the Imams, and the inhabitants of Persia and Irac, presented to him petitions concerning the state of affairs, the changing of the laws and maxims of the country, and the disorders into which the perversity of the Muzafferian princes had brought 'em. The principal intent of their requests was, that Timur wou'd no longer trust the command of two kingdoms in the hands of those tyrants; that under a milder government the Mussulmans might be freed from their miseries, collect their scatter'd effects, re-settle their families, and render this ruin'd once more a flourishing kingdom. In answer to these requests, Timur order'd that these princes shou'd be seiz'd and loaded with chains, and their houses pillag'd; which was done on the twenty third of

June 14. Jumaziulakher 795. The Emir Osman sent  
1393. men to Kirman to bring away the treasures of the Sultan Ahmed: the Mirza Omar Cheik staid at Chiraz, to govern the kingdom of Persia, and the emperor nam'd for his counsellors the Emirs Birdibei, Sarbouga, Mirza Omar Muaid, Zirec Yacou, and Sevindgic Behader, with annual commissions, and assign'd good troops to the prince to maintain his authority.

The emperor was accompany'd by Beiran Temour, Chap. 26. Javakul, Melic Aperdi, Devlet Coja, and other favorites: he gave the government of Kirmān to Aidecou, son of Cayaseddin Berlas, the brother of Emir Yacou Berlas; that of Yezd to Temouke Coutchin; and that of Abrecouh to Lalam Coutchin. He sent troops to besiege the town of Seirdgian, of which Gouderz was governor for Sultan Abou Ishac, grandson of Chahchuja. The strength of this place, situate on the top of a high mountain, had inspir'd this governor with the thoughts of fortifying it, and living independent.

At this time Timur sent to Samarcand the prince Chebeli, whose eyes had been put out by Chahchuja his father, and Zein Elabeddin, who had been us'd in the same manner by Chah Mansour; and assign'd for their subsistence some of the best ground of that city, that they might spend the remainder of their lives with pleasure under the shadow of his clemency. In these retreats there are pleasures which the ambitious never taste. All the men of learning, and the artisans of Fars and Irac, abandon'd their country, and went to dwell at Samarcand. Timur gave the government of the little kingdom of Lorestan to the Atabec Pir Ahmed, with letters patent seal'd with the seal of his red hand<sup>1</sup>. Thus Pir Ahmed return'd to his antient residence with near two thousand families, whom Chah Mansour had pillag'd, and constrain'd to retire to Chiraz; and this old Atabec began to govern the country of Malemir<sup>2</sup>, as his ancestors had done before.

<sup>1</sup> The Mogul emperors make their hand red, and imprint it on their patents as a seal.

<sup>2</sup> The same as Lorestan; and different from Malemir Chol.

## C H A P. XXVII.

*Timur marches to the kingdom of Irac Agemi,  
or Hircania.*

June 18.  
1393.

**T**IMUR departed from Chiraz for Ispahan the twenty-seventh of Jumaziulakher 795, hunting and destroying the game, which abounds in that country, all the way. He encamp'd at Coumcha<sup>a</sup> after twelve days march; at which place he issu'd out that famous order, so much desir'd by the people, and so remarkable in history, that the princes of the house of Muzaffer shou'd be put to death; which was done with rigor, according to the laws of Genghiz Can, to the great satisfaction of all the subjects of this kingdom. All the males of this house, who were then at Yezd and Kirman, were to death by the governors of these countrys, that the people might be deliver'd from the fear of their violence and tyranny.

June 30.  
1399.

Timur decamp'd from Coumcha, and arriv'd at Ispahan the sixth of Regeb 795. Mirza Mehemet Sultan went to meet him, gave him a handsom entertainment, and offer'd presents worthy of the greatest emperors; he executed his commissions very faithfully, which prov'd of service to him for the advancement of his fortune. Timur staid five days at Ispahan in the palace of Nacchidgehan, and departed thence on the fifteenth of Regeb. He permitted Mirza Charoc to go and meet the queen his mother

<sup>a</sup> A village near Ispahan.

Serai Mulc Canum, taking the road to the village of Dehi Alavi. Chap. 27.

Timur in two days march arriv'd at Gerbadecan, and next night went to the village of Anconan, the inhabitants of which, being atheists, had fortify'd themselves in the caverns of rocks. A stratagem was made use of to subdue 'em; all the troops were employ'd in digging rivulets along the mountains where there were rivers or springs, and to break down the banks, that all the waters might flow at once like torrents into the caverns where these miscreants were, and drown 'em presently if they did not make haste out. This design succeeded; the waters fell on a sudden into those cavities, and cast these miserable people into the fires of a dark eternity: and their goods were pillag'd by the soldiers. Timur pass'd the night at Anconan, and departed the thirtieth of Regeb in the morning, and encamp'd in the plain of Perahan, where a general hunting was order'd: all the country was surrounded, and abundance of antelopes and wild-asses were kill'd. The empresses, Serai Mulc Canum, and Touman Aga; the princess Canzade, and the other wives of Timur's sons, partook of the diversions of this chase. As they had left their baggage to come the more easily to court, they join'd the emperor at this place, congratulated him on his conquests and return, sprinkled on him precious stones, and made presents to him. July 10.

The third of the moon Schaban, Timur de-  
camp'd and went down to the meadow of Foul  
Carcara, where he staid three days; he took  
horse on the sixth, and encamp'd the eighth at  
Schaban in the agreeable plain of Hamadan.  
The Mirza Mirancha left the baggage on the  
road, to come to the court of the emperor his  
father.



Book III. father. The Emirs Gehancha Behader, Cham-  
 seddin Abbas, Hadgi Mamoutcha, and Outch-  
 cara Behader, who staid with the baggage and  
 main-body, took the road to Sultania, with the  
 troops they commanded, and had the honor to  
 salute Timur at Hamadan. Mirza Mehemet  
 Sultan, who was left behind at Isphahan, join'd  
 the court at this place : and the two empresses,  
 Serai Mule Canum and Touman Aga, to divert  
 the court, gave Timur a magnificent feast in this  
 agreeable place.

---

### C H A P. XXVIII.

*Timur invests the Mirza Miran Chah in the  
 kingdom of Hulacou Can.*

THE emperor being willing to recompense  
 the Mirza Miran Chah for his services,  
 gave him the sovereignty of the kingdoms of  
 Azerbijana, Rei, Derbend Bacou, Chiruan, and  
 Ghilan, with their dependencys, and the adja-  
 cent countrys as far as Roum or Anatolia, subject  
 to the Ottomans. This Mirza gave Timur an  
 entertainment in Hamadan, becoming the great-  
 ness of the gift he had receiv'd ; he made him con-  
 siderable presents of raritys which he had got at  
 Tauris, Sultania, and other places where he had  
 staid. They spent several days in pleasures and  
 diversions, and were entertain'd with consorts of  
 music on all sorts of instruments. After the feast  
 the emperor departed from Hamadan on the thir-  
 teenth of Schaban 795, sending before him the  
 Mirza Mirancha towards Coulaghi : he order'd

Aug. 3.  
 1393.

---

[ A town of Courdislan, long. 79. 30. lat. 37. 20.

a hunting, and went to encamp in the meadow of Ilma Courouc<sup>2</sup>. On the next day the circle was made, and the game kill'd. The court then went to Toumatou<sup>3</sup>, and staid there five days; and on the sixth having display'd the standard for departure, there was another hunting. The Emirs of both wings form'd the great circle as usual, surrounding all the plain of Bech Parmac<sup>4</sup>. From thence they went to encamp in the meadow of Ghul Loudja<sup>4</sup>; the next day at Dalper<sup>5</sup>, in the plain of Gonbedec, where they made entertainments. The nineteenth of Schaban they departed, and the court went to encamp four leagues from thence. The Mirza Mirancha being arriv'd at the plain of Coulaghi, sent an express to Timur, to acquaint him that the robber Sarec Mehemet Turcoman had fortify'd himself in the mountains with his family, and getting together a company of seditious people, had set himself up for sovereign.

Aug. 9.  
1393.

---

## C H A P. XXIX.

### *Timur vanquishes the Turcoman Hachan Sarec.*

**T**IMUR had no sooner receiv'd this advice from the Mirza, than passing by the castle of Sagafoun, he came to Coulaghi in two nights march. Being at the plain of Gehanaver, he plac'd a strict guard in all the ways whereby

---

<sup>2</sup> A town near Hamadan in Couhestan.

<sup>3</sup> A village of Couhestan.

<sup>4</sup> Towns of the country of Courdes.

<sup>5</sup> Town of Courdistan, long. 80, 45. lat. 35. 30.

Book III. the enemy might get away. These robbers had a fortress nam'd Habachi, as well as other defiles of mountains, wherein the ways were extreme rugged and narrow: in these places the Turcomans had retrench'd themselves, placing troops in the narrow passages, whom our army attack'd. Our soldiers got up to the very top of the mountain, from whence they brought away a great many sheep and cattel. Berat Coja Kukeltach on this occasion gave marks of an extraordinary valor; and ascending the mountain by very difficult ways, fought with extreme courage, and made himself admir'd by all the army: but he was at length unfortunately slain by a poison'd arrow, to the great regret of Timur and all the Emirs. The Cheik Hadgi son of Comari, who ascended the mountain with him, was also wounded in the fight, and constrain'd to return to the camp, where he dy'd of his wound. The great men willingly sacrific'd their lives to their honor and reputation. The Turcomans observing the resoluteness of our soldiers, fled the same night by the by-ways and woods of the mountain Aourman, leaving their baggage behind 'em: our men pursu'd 'em as far as the other mountains, bringing away a great number of horses, mules, sheep and other cattle. The Cheik Temour Behader at the head of a body of horse, pursu'd the fugitives with so much expedition, that he overtook 'em, and slew a vast number of 'em. Our men made themselves masters of the place they had fortify'd, which was fit for the summer-season.

Death of  
Berat Coja  
Kukeltach.

There was another place in these quarters, in which a great number of Guebres<sup>6</sup> were got

<sup>6</sup> Adorers of fire, and professing the religion of the ancient Persians. There are to this day a great many of 'em in the east, particularly in India.

together. Timur order'd 'em to make themselves masters of this place, and to ruin it. The siege lasted some time: but being at length taken, it was reduc'd to a heap of rubbish, and all those who were in the place exterminated. The emperor, with the empress, and the princes his sons, return'd to the plain of Coulaghi: on the tenth of Ramadan he decamp'd to return home, and the next morning join'd the baggage on the banks of the river Acsai. He staid one or two days at every encampment in these quarters, to consult of the means to exterminate the robbers in each place. He sent Mirza Mirancha to besiege Sarec Courgan<sup>7</sup>, and Ouchcara had orders to besiege Caroutou<sup>7</sup>: they assaulted these places with so much fury, that they took and ruin'd 'em, after having put to the sword the soldiers who were in 'em; and then return'd victorious to the imperial camp. Timur order'd Mirza Mehemed Sultan to go to the Derbend<sup>\*</sup> of Courdistan, to reduce that country, and destroy the robbers of those places, who plunder'd passengers at their pleasure. The Mirza departed to obey this order, tho he had made preparations for a magnificent entertainment, which he design'd to give the court. After the court departed for Acboulac<sup>9</sup>, where they spent the month of Ramadan in fasting and prayer. The first of Chawal, after the fast was over, Timur gave great alms, and celebrated the Bairam, that is, the passover of the Mussulmans. Two days after, the great Musti Nouredin Abderrahman Esferaini, famous for

Aug. 30.

<sup>7</sup> Castles in Courdistan.

<sup>\*</sup> Or Demur Capi, iron-gate, a narrow passage like the Portæ Caspianæ.

<sup>9</sup> A town near Arbelle in Courdistan.



Book III. his learning, 'came from Bagdat as ambassador  
 from the Sultan Ahmed Gelair \*: Timur re-  
 \* Descend- ceiv'd him handsomly, as he was wont to do  
 ed from learned men, and noted doctors; he gave him  
 Hulacou. audience, the subject of his embassy being, that  
 the Sultan sincerely submitted to the emperor;  
 but being surpriz'd at the approach of the great  
 Timur, he dar'd not come to cast himself at his  
 feet; that he knew himself not powerful enough  
 to make any resistance; and moreover that his  
 intention was not to oppose him, nor to sustain  
 a siege. The ambassador made his presents,  
 which consisted of nine of each sort; among  
 which were Murkens, a kind of large deer, leo-  
 pards, Arabian horses with saddles of gold;  
 and then he went back. Timur did not receive  
 these presents after his usual kind manner, be-  
 cause he suspected the sincerity of Sultan Ahmed,  
 seeing the prayers were not read, nor the money  
 coin'd in Timur's name, at Bagdad. Neverthe-  
 less he honor'd the Mufti Cheik Nouredin, be-  
 cause of his particular merit, which recommend-  
 ed him more than his embassy; he gave him a  
 very rich vest, a horse of great price, and silver-  
 money, and sent him back to his master without  
 any positive answer.

CHAP. XXX.

*Timur marches to Bagdad.*

AFTER Timur had dismiss'd the ambassador of Sultan Ahmed Gelair<sup>1</sup>, he resolv'd to besiege Bagdad. He order'd Mirza Pir Mehemet Gehanghir to return to Sultania with the baggage, and the empreses and ladys; and the soldiers to provide themselves with two bottles of water a-piece. On the thirteenth of Chawal 795, Timur took the road to Bagdad: he march'd day and night to encamp at Yan Boulac<sup>2</sup>, and after three days he went before as a scout; he march'd all night, and arriv'd at Coura Courgan<sup>3</sup>; the next morning he met Mehemet, prince of the Turcomans, whom he attack'd at the head of a hundred horse, and routed him: the army which came after pillag'd all his subjects who dwelt in Cherezour<sup>4</sup>. At this place Timur made choice of a number of brave soldiers, at whose head he march'd in a litter thro narrow passages between

Octob. 3.  
1393.

<sup>1</sup> Capital of Irac Arabi, seat of the Califs, on the Tigris, long. 80. lat. 33. 20. fifteen leagues from the antient Babylon; it was built by Aboujafor Almanfor, second Calif of the house of the Abassides, A. D. 757.

<sup>2</sup> A Mogul prince; for Bagdad remain'd in the hands of the Moguls from 1256 when Hulacou Can, grandson of Genghiz Can, slew Mustafem Billa last of the Abasside Califs, and extirpated the Califate which had continu'd six hundred years.

<sup>3</sup> Village near Arbelle in Courdistan.

<sup>4</sup> A town in Courdistan near Cherezour.

<sup>5</sup> A city of Couhestan, frontier of Courdistan, long. 82. lat. 34. 30.

Book III. sleep mountains, which were very difficult to get thro'. He order'd 'em to light the Machal-lets, a sort of great torches, by which means he made expedition, stopping no where on the road, so that the army cou'd scarce follow him. When he was at Ibrahim Lic<sup>e</sup>, he enquir'd of the inhabitants whether they had sent pigeons<sup>7</sup> to Bagdad to give advice of his arrival. They told him that as soon as they perceiv'd the dust of his army, they had done so. Timur immediately caus'd another pigeon to be brought; and making the same men write a billet, the contents of which were, that the dust they had perceiv'd at a distance was caus'd by the Turcomans, who fled to avoid Timur, they tied this letter under the wing of the pigeon, which they cast into the air. The bird immediately fled to its pigeon-house at Bagdad: it was brought to Sultan Ahmed, who on this advice gain'd fresh courage. Nevertheless he did not entirely confide in this last billet; for on receipt of the first he had caus'd his furniture to be carry'd to the other side of the Tigris.

Timur having at the tomb of the Santon pray'd to God for victory, and distributed much alms to the poor who resided there, he sent before him as a scout Osman Behader, and departed himself at the head of the army: he went twenty seven leagues, each of which were three measur'd miles, without getting off his horse; and on the twenty first of Chawal 795, in the

1393.

<sup>6</sup> A place of devotion, twenty seven leagues from Bagdad.

<sup>7</sup> This practice is common in the East. They carry pigeons from their pigeon-houses to the place from whence they wou'd have advice. These birds, when set at liberty, immediately fly to their nests, by which means news is brought to a very distant country in a short time.

morning, arriv'd at Bagdad. The Sultan had already cross'd the Tigris, and having broken the bridge, and sunk the boats, resolv'd to stay on the other side, till our army arriv'd, and he was perceiv'd by our men. He had no sooner heard the noise of our trumpets, and the cries of our soldiers, than he fled out of the kingdom by the way of Hille<sup>s</sup>. Our troops, who cover'd near two leagues of ground nigh the city, cast themselves into the water with a great cry, and pass'd the Tigris notwithstanding its rapidity. Mehemet Azad, who was one of 'em, having found the royal galley of the Sultan, to which he had given the name of Chams, that is, the sun, brought it to Bagdad, and Timur cross'd the river in it. The Mirza Mirancha, at the head of the army, cross'd the Tigris, over against Caryatula Cab<sup>s</sup>, below the city. Thus the Tartar troops having pass'd the Tigris, enter'd Irac Arabi; like armys of pismires or grass-hoppers, they cover'd the fields, pillaging on all sides, and endeavoring to find the enemy, that they might block up his way. The inhabitants of Bagdad were as much surpriz'd to see so great a number of Zagataians swim over their river, as their neighbours the Babylonians were formerly at the confusion of languages; and biting their fingers in token of admiration, they were satisfy'd that the progress of Timur, and the courage of his soldiers, were not to be equal'd by those of other potentates of the

---

<sup>s</sup> Otherwise Hille Benimezid, a town of Irac Arabi, between Bagdad and Coufa, in the land of Babel or Babylon; long. 79. 45. lat. 31. 50. There are three other towns of the same name, one near Ahouez in Courestan, another near Moussel, and the other between Vaser and Basra.

<sup>s</sup> The village of the eagle, the suburbs of Bagdad.



Book III.



earth; but that this conqueror was guided by the hand of God, and that his victorys were the immediate work of heaven. Our prince wou'd himself pursue Sultan Ahmed, accompany'd by the princes his sons and the Emirs: he march'd by Serfer<sup>1</sup>; and being arriv'd at Carbatou<sup>2</sup>, Aibadge Aglen, the Nevians, the generals and his chief courtiers, besought him to return to Bagdad to repose himself, while they pursu'd the enemy, and endeavor'd to seize the Sultan, and bring him to him with his hands and feet bound. Timur knowing their sincerity, return'd to Bagdad, where he staid in the palace of Sultan Ahmed, whose treasures which he had left fell into the hands of the officers of Timur's household. The Emirs at the head of the troops march'd all the day and the following night, and next morning arriv'd at the Euphrates, which Sultan Ahmed had pass'd in the night, having broke the bridge, and sunk the boats: he had taken the road of Damas by the way of Kerbela<sup>3</sup>; on advice of which Osman Behader told the other Emirs that he thought it proper to swim over the river, and pursue the Sultan. The other Emirs oppos'd it, saying it was better to go along the bank till they shou'd come to a place where the army might pass without any risk. This proposal was follow'd, and they march'd along the banks till they found four empty vessels. Our Emirs em-

---

<sup>1</sup> A town three leagues from Bagdad, between that and Coufa. The pilgrims of Mecca going from Bagdad, take up their first lodgings here. A little river, call'd the river of Serfer, which falls into the Euphrates, runs by it.

<sup>2</sup> Village in Irac Arabi, seven leagues from Serfer.

<sup>3</sup> A plain, long. 77. lat. 32. 30. on the Euphrates, where Imam Hussein, grandson of the false prophet Mahomet, was slain by Yezide, son of Maavia, first of the Califs of the house of Ommiah.

bark'd, and made their horses cross the water, Chap. 30. while they held 'em on the sides of the vessels: the whole army did the same, and march'd with such expedition, that they overtook the Sultan's baggage; they seiz'd on his furniture, tents, mony, stuffs, and whatever fear had made him leave behind him; by which means he lost all his goods. The Mirza Mirancha arriv'd at Hille, where he sent his troops in pursuit of Sultan Ahmed. Aibadge Aglen, prince of the house of Touchi, Gelalhamid, Osman Behader, Cheik Arslan, Seid Coja son of Cheik Ali Behader, and other Emirs of Tomans, in all forty five, overtook Sultan Ahmed in the plain of Kerbela on the twenty-second of Chawal.

Oct. 11.

These Emirs were oblig'd to pursue him themselves, because the horses of the common soldiers were so fatigu'd, that they were constrain'd to be left behind to rest themselves. The Sultan had with him near two thousand horse, two hundred of whom turn'd upon our Emirs sword in hand. The Emirs got off their horses, and let fly their arrows on the enemy, by which means they repuls'd 'em: then they remounted their horses to pursue 'em; but they fac'd about again and attack'd the Emirs, who got off their horses and took to their arrows, on which the enemy fled once more. Ours pursu'd 'em again; but they return'd to the charge a third time with so much fury, that the Emirs had not time to dismount: thus they fought with extreme vigor, and many were kill'd on each side. Osman Abbas did wonders; but he was wounded in the hand with a sword. At length the enemy were repuls'd; whereupon our men seiz'd on a great quantity of spoils, and pursu'd 'em no longer.

Book III.

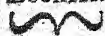
That day being extreme hot, and the plain of  
 Kerbela affording no water, our men expected  
 to perish by thirst. Aibadge Aglen and Gelal-  
 hamid sent men to seek for water, who cou'd get  
 no more than two pots full : Aibadge drank one  
 of 'em without quenching his thirst ; wherefore  
 he said to Gelalhamid, " I shall certainly die  
 " with thirst, if you don't give me the pot which  
 " is your portion." The Emir Gelal answer'd,  
 " I have heard it told the emperor, that a cer-  
 " tain Persian travelling with an Arabian, the  
 " like misfortune which we now suffer happen'd  
 " to them in a desert. The Arabian had a little  
 " water left; on which the Persian said, I know  
 " the generosity of the Arabians is so noted,  
 " that it hath pass'd into a proverb: you will  
 " discover a great proof of it, if you will give  
 " me the cup of water you have left. The Ara-  
 " bian answer'd him, If I give you my water,  
 " I must die of thirst; nevertheless necessity  
 " shall not make me transgress the maxims of the  
 " Arabians; for I prefer a good name to life.  
 " I had rather run the hazard of dying than let  
 " my action put a stop to the celebrating of the  
 " virtue of my countrymen. Then the Arabian  
 " gave his water to the Persian, who by this  
 " means pass'd the desert, and gave occasion to  
 " every one to praise the extraordinary charity  
 " of the Arabians." The Emir Gelal after  
 having related this story, said to Aibadge, " I  
 " will imitate the Arabian in giving you my  
 " portion of water; but on condition that you  
 " mention this charity to the princes of the  
 " house of Touchi, and to their subjects, so  
 " that the fame of my action may bring credit  
 " to the descendents of Zagatai Can, one of  
 " whom I have the honor to be : moreover, that  
 " when you arrive at the imperial camp, you  
 " shall

“ shall inform the emperor of what I have done, Chap.30.  
“ that this action may have a place in history,  
“ and be a monument of my virtue to all our  
“ descendents.”

Aibadge having consented to these conditions, Gelal resolv'd to die ; wherefore he gave his water to Aibadge, who quench'd his thirst. Yet Gelal did not die, God permitting him to escape for this good action. They then departed with the rest of the Emirs, and arriv'd at Mackhad near the Euphrates, where Husein son of Ali was slain. Every one kiss'd the gate of the holy place, and paid his devotions, according to the custom of the Mahometan pilgrims. The brave Emirs gain'd great advantages over the enemys, and took prisoner Aladdole son of Sultan Ahmed, and some others of his children, as likewise his wives and domestics, of whom the Sultan rather chose to be depriv'd, than expose himself to the fury of our Emirs. Thus the Sultan escap'd with a few of his men, and the Emirs return'd to court enrich'd with slaves and spoils.

Aibadge Aglen and the Emir Gelal related what had pass'd about the water ; which extremely pleas'd Timur, who was naturally generous. This monarch extoll'd the great wisdom of the Emir Hamid father of Gelal, and pray'd for the repose of his soul : he then applauded Gelal, telling him that he must acknowledge he had many times offer'd to sacrifice his life to his service, but that this action of exposing himself to a certain death by giving the water to Aibadge to preserve his life, and by this means to gain renown to the Zagataians, more sensibly touch'd him than all his former actions. Timur therefore made great presents to Gelal, who answer'd 'em with an unlimited obedience.





## C H A P. XXXI.

*Return of Mirza Mehemet Sultan after the defeat of the Courdes robbers.*

THE Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who before the expedition to Bagdad was gone against the Courdes, enter'd their mountains, and destroy'd a great number of these robbers; some of whom he had reduc'd to obedience, and precipitated from the tops of the mountains others who were most rebellious, and had fortify'd themselves on the ridge of a high mountain. This severity was not useless, for since that time one or two men may travel securely in their great roads, whereas before large caravans, accompany'd by a hundred archers, were oblig'd to pass thro' by-ways; as I my-self \* can witness, having gone thro' 'em several times. The young prince having successfully finish'd this expedition, return'd to court by Derbend Tachi Catun †, and had the honor to salute the emperor at Bagdad. Some days after he was sent to Vafet ‡, as governor of that town, and the province dependent on it. Then Timur sent express to Mirza Mirancha who was at Hille, to depart for Basra §. At length orders were given that the wives of Sultan Ahmed and his son A-

\* Cherefeddin Ali, author of this book. M. Peris, the translator, has also gone this way twice.

\* A defile of mountains, where one must pass under an arch cut in the rock, more than six hundred paces.

† A town of Irac Arabi on the Tigris, long. 81. 30. lat. 32. 10.

‡ A town near the place where the Tigris and Euphrates fall into the Persian gulf, long. 84. lat. 30. call'd also Bassora.

laddole shou'd be transported to Samarcand, Chap. 32. with all the learned men of Bagdad, and the masters of arts and sciences; as also the famous Coja Abdelcader, author of the book of Edeuars, that is, the several tunes in musick. Letters of conquest were sent to Samarcand, Cachgar, Cotan, Carezem, Azerbijana, Persia, Irac, Corasfana, Zabulestan, Mazendran, Tabarestan, and other kingdoms and citys, that on this good news rejoicings might be made every where for the emperor's victorys.

Timur spent two months at Bagdad in diversions, in gilded palaces, and pleasure houses on the bank of the Tigris; being intirely fatisfy'd with the progress of his campaign, and the other conquests his subjects continu'd to make with so much glory. The officers of justice by his orders seiz'd on all the wines they found in Bagdad, and cast 'em into the Tigris: and the inhabitants of Bagdad paid to the commissarys the accusom'd tribute for the preservation of their lives..

---

C H A P. XXXII.

*Timur sends an ambassador to the Sultan Barcoc in Egypt.*

AS Timur's chief study and ambition was to secure the roads from robbers, to regulate the affairs of kingdoms, and give peace to the people, he thought proper to send the Cheik Save, one of the most skilful and famous doctors of his time, in embassy to Malek Ezzaher Barcoc, Sultan of Egypt and Syria. He order'd several noble Moguls to accompany him, and he gave him a magnificent equipage and a royal

Book III.

garment. The letter which he carry'd was as follows: " The potent emperors of the house of Genghiz Can having been at war with the kings your predeceffors, who opprefs'd the people of Syria; and these wars having ended in a peace by the intervention of ambassadors, security and union have been establish'd between the two nations. And forasmuch as since the death of the invincible Aboufaid Behader Can<sup>7</sup>, there has not reign'd in the empire of Iran any sovereign prince of the race of Genghiz Can, who has regulated the affairs of the people; but on the contrary there have been governors in all the provinces of this great empire, who have set themselves up for kings, and caus'd infinite misfortunes to the people: the King of kings hath made choice of us, by a peculiar favor, to remedy these disorders, and permitted our victorious sword to conquer all the kingdoms of Iran, as far as Irac Arabi which borders on your dominions. We imagine that the love we owe our people requires that, because of the proximity of our two empires, a correspondence should be settled between us by letters, and that ambassadors should go and come mutually from one empire to the other, so that the merchants of both nations might travel with security: which will render the countrys flourishing, produce plenty in the towns, and maintain the people in peace. 'Tis for this reason we have sent an ambassador to you; beseeching God to load you with his favors, if you act as becomes you. Now thanks be

---

<sup>7</sup> Son of Codabende, son of Argouncha, inter'd at Sultania.

“ to him, who is the sole lord and master of Chap. 33.  
“ kings, and of all the people in the universe.”

C H A P. XXXIII.

*The taking of the town of Tecrit<sup>s</sup>.*

AFTER the reduction of Bagdad, the merchants and travellers presented petitions to Timur, importing that in the neighbourhood of Bagdad there was a place call'd Tecrit, which for its strength was esteem'd impregnable, and had drawn thither a great number of robbers, who had fortify'd themselves in that rock, and when caravans pass'd by that place, pillag'd 'em, and especially those of Egypt and Syria, which were the richest of any: they likewise assur'd him that battering-rams and other machines cou'd do no harm to this place; that the inhabitants were not satisfy'd with robbing, but that they murder'd the passengers; and that till this time no prince, how powerful soever, has been able to put a stop to these disorders. For these reasons Timur conceiv'd that the reduction of this place, and the ruin of these villains, wou'd gain him a treasure of merit in the other world, and great honor even in this. He therefore order'd Burhan Aglen, Yaic Soufi, Gelalhamid, Chamelic, and Seid Coja, to march to Tecrit, and block up the place; which they accordingly did. Timur distributed among the Emirs and soldiers the mony which had been collected from the inhabitants of Bagdad for

<sup>s</sup> Long, 79. lat. 34. 30.



Book III. preserving their lives; and left at that place the Emir Osman Abbas, who had been wounded in a skirmish at Kerbela, giving him for a pension a thousand Dinars Copeghi a day, which he generously said was to pay the surgeon. After this he departed from Bagdad the twenty fourth

Nov. 11. of Zilhadge 795, to encamp at the tomb of Cheic  
1393, Behloul, where he pray'd this Santon to inter-

cede with God for the victory. Timur having sent Mirza Charoc with the scouts, march'd all the following day, cross'd the Tigris, and lay on the bank of the river: the next day he arriv'd at a great lake, where he encamp'd. On the morrow he went to Anna<sup>?</sup>, and the day

Nov. 17. after to Lejarma. The first of Muharrem 796, he came to the town of Harbi; the following night he encamp'd at Bendasar, and the next morning he went for Ghez Setani. In his way thither a lion being perceiv'd in the wood, Timur resolv'd to chase these wild beasts, which abounded in this country; for which reason the wood was surrounded, and there came out five lions, which furiously prepar'd their claws and teeth to kill the hunters, whom they fiercely attack'd; but they were receiv'd with so much dexterity and vigor, that all the five were slain at the same time, and made the prey of other beasts.

Nov. 20. After this chase Timur departed, and the 4th of Muharrem arriv'd at Tecrit. He rang'd his army in order, commanded the drum to be beat, and the great cry made. The men surrounded the place, and sapp'd the out-parts, which they overthrew. Timur order'd his tent to be fix'd near the works, to animate the foldiers. Then

---

<sup>?</sup> A town on the Euphrates, long. 76. 30. lat. 34.

Yarali prince of Mouffel, and the Cheik Ali Oirat<sup>1</sup>, prince of Arbelle, came to cast themselves at the feet of Timur, with many presents. Timur order'd his soldiers to enter the place notwithstanding any difficultys. This town was built on a rock near the Tigris<sup>2</sup> in the reign of the Sassanians<sup>3</sup>. The passages were clos'd up with mortar and stones, and it was so well fortify'd, that it cou'd never be taken by force; the rock on which it was built being very high. The Emi Hassan, the governor, robb'd on the highways, not obeying any prince: but when he knew of Timur's arrival, he was afraid, and sent his younger brother to assure him of his obedience and services. Timur receiv'd him handsomly, and having made him a present of a beautiful horse and a vest, he dismiss'd him, ordering him to tell his brother Hassan, that if he came chearfully before him, he shou'd be well receiv'd. Hassan's brother gave him an account of all this: but this unfortunate prince resolv'd to defend himself. Our brave soldiers immediately besieg'd Teorit closely: fixing the battering-rams and machines to shoot stones, with which they ruin'd the houses of these robbers. The third day of the siege, the Emir Hassan sent his mother to Timur to intercede for him, with presents of horses and raritys. She humbly represented that Hassan well knew that he was not powerful enough to defend himself against the imperial army; but that the fear of appearing before

<sup>1</sup> A family of the ancient Moguls.

<sup>2</sup> The Tigris is call'd Dedgele by the Arabians. Tir, in Persian, signifying an arrow, because the Tigris is rapid, some pretend the name of Tigris is from that etymology.

<sup>3</sup> The kings of Persia of the fourth race, the last of whom, Yezdegerd, was kill'd by Osman, An. Dom. 545.

Book III. the majesty of Timur, hinder'd his coming out ; that if he wou'd pardon him, he wou'd send his brother and sons as hostages to the court. Timur was very civil to Hassan's mother, and told her, that for her sake he wou'd pardon her son ; but that he must come out of the place, or be responsible for the death of so many persons who were in the town. These words disquieted the lady, who return'd to the town, the siege of which was continually going forward ; the soldiers having already advanc'd under covert to the foot of the walls, and Seid Coja with his regiment having made the enemy abandon a tower in the night, and oblig'd the guards to retreat into the town. The taking of this tower facilitated the taking of all the out-works, for they were presently abandon'd. Timur's answer to Hassan troubled him so very much, that he resolv'd upon fighting to the last, that he might have the honor of dying sword in hand. Timur order'd all the soldiers to assault the walls together : whereupon the Tavatchis divided the space the walls took up among the troops, and mark'd with a red furrow what each regiment shou'd sap, and gave it 'em in writing. This distribution began with the regiments of the left wing, which was the most honorable of the two ; which regiments compos'd the Toman of Kepek Can, which had for their leader Arslan. This Toman work'd in files, and was follow'd by the regiments of the Toman of prince Charoc, who labor'd with so much earnestness, that in a short time they pierc'd the rock thirty five cubits. The regiments of the other Tomans \* imploy'd themselves in the same

\* The names of the Tomans and Hezares, as well as of their generals, are given in the original ; but the French translator thought proper to omit 'em, as too tedious for the reader.

manner in the places allotted 'em. By this may be known the strength of the town of Tecrit, since they were oblig'd to employ at once seventy two thousand men, the number of soldiers in Timur's army, to undermine the place.

The Emir Hassan seeing the work so far advanc'd, was greatly troubled; wherefore he sent to Timur, to confess his fault and demand quarter. Timur answer'd, that to obtain his request, Hassan must come out of the place. The next day he sent another man to Mirza Charoc to beg his protection, and to intercede for him. Hassan afterwards sent his brother to the same prince, to represent his despair and misery, telling him that every one in the place, and Hassan himself were firmly resolv'd to obey Timur for the future; but that the fear of appearing before him hinder'd Hassan's coming out. Charoc conducted him to Timur, who declar'd, that if Hassan did not come before him to give assurances of his repentance for his crimes, and the robbery he had committed on the high ways, with promise to abstain for the future, he wou'd hear no more excuses; but if he did what he desir'd, he wou'd not only pardon his crimes, but treat him according to his quality. Timur gave Hassan's brother a vest, and sent him back to the town, telling him, that if Hassan wou'd not come, yet he might stay with him. When the two brothers came to a conference, one of 'em argu'd in this manner: " It is  
" a long time since from one generation to another we have been sovereigns in this place, and  
" done what we pleas'd, having no one to controul us. If we shou'd now surrender, those  
" whom we have wrongfully plunder'd, will  
" demand justice against us: then we must not  
" only restore what we have taken away; but  
" shall



Book III.

“ shall be punish’d, and perhaps put to death in a shameful manner. Wherefore I approve of fighting to the last drop of our blood.” The robbers in the place willingly consented to this resolution, and began hostilities. This irritated Timur, who order’d the drums and kettle-drums to be beat, the trumpets to be sounded, and the great cry to be made. Part of the walls fell down, having been propt by large pieces of timber, which were now set on fire. The besieg’d repair’d this great breach, and fought like desperate men resolv’d to die. Timur order’d all the soldiers to advance together, and enter the places they had undermin’d, and where they had fix’d props, to fill ’em with small pieces of dry wood and pitch, which they accordingly did: and on the 20th of Muharrem 796, at night, they set fire to the wood and pitch. The air was darken’d by the smoke, and most part of the walls fell on a sudden; as likewise the tower which had been taken by Yaic Soufi; and twenty of the enemys fell with the walls. The besieg’d, notwithstanding the ruin of the walls, arm’d themselves with planks and great bucklers, and continu’d to make a defence against our men, who advanc’d to the very middle of the place, where there was a furious and bloody battel; the besiegers fighting for glory, and the besieged for their liberty and lives.

Decemb.

6. 1393.

Further orders were given, that the walls which were yet standing shou’d be undermin’d: the bastion where the Tomans of Allahdad and Amancha were working, was destroy’d to the very foundations by Bedreddin. Whereupon the Emir Hassan being terrify’d, retir’d with his soldiers to the edge of the mountain, of which they were yet masters. The brave Emirs begg’d

beg'd leave upon their knees to ascend that mountain, to finish the destruction of these rash people: but Timur answer'd 'em, that it was better to wait the razing of the place. Some of the besieg'd on this came out, to beseech the Emirs to intercede only for their lives: but Timur warmly answer'd, Let him come or not, no quarter shall be given; for I know that by God's assistance I shall gain the victory: I will seize the chief of the robbers, and hinder the retreat of these villains. The soldiers were animated by these words of the emperor, and at length getting up to the top of the mountain, finish'd the assault of the place. They bound the Emir Hassan and those who accompany'd him, neck and heels, and brought 'em to Timur, who order'd the inhabitants to be separated from the soldiers, and prohibited any one to insult 'em; but that the soldiers shou'd be shar'd among the Tomans, and put to death. Thus they made these robbers suffer the punishment due for their crimes, in plundering and killing passengers. The Tavatchis caus'd towers to be built with their heads for an exmple to others, and fix'd the following writing on them, *Thus the malefactors are punish'd.* This conquest was on the 25th of Muharrem 796, which answers to the year of the Hen. Timur order'd that one of the walls of the place shou'd be left entire, that posterity might wonder how it cou'd be taken by assault and the strength of men; and that they might remember with fear the punishment of these robbers, and acknowledged with admiration the valor of the soldiers of so powerful a conqueror.

Dec. 11.

## C H A P. XXXIV.

*Timur continues his journey, and sends his princes and Emirs to make inroads in several kingdoms.*

Decemb.  
17. 1393.

**T**HE first of Sefer 796, Timur return'd to Harbi, which was the rendezvous of all the troops, which were sent to make inroads both before and during the siege of Tecrit; and order'd a general hunting to divert the court and army, wherein they kill'd a great many wild asses and antilopes. The Mirzas and Emirs, who went with troops to make irruptions in the provinces of Irac Arabi, and even further, to put an end to the disorderly practices of the Arabian robbers, came here to wait on the emperor: of which number was the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who went to Vaset along the banks of the Tigris; as likewise Mobacher and Argouncha, who march'd another way with their troops; and the Mirza Mirancha, who went from Hille to Basra at the head of his; Emir Yadghiar Berlas and Gehancha Yakou, who set out together; Mehemet Dervich Berlas, Cheik Ali Margoub, and Ismael Berlas, who had taken another road. All these Emirs establish'd the laws of Genhiz Can, slew a great number of Arabians, and pillag'd their goods and horses, because they robb'd on the high roads, and hinder'd the passage of the caravans going in pilgrimage to Mecca.

They who had brought into subjection and made tributary the princes of the tribes of the furthest

furthest parts of the desert, came also to Harbi to give an account of their progress. The prince Mirancha, having consign'd the government of Basra to Melonc Serbedal, cross'd the great river of Chat Elarab', and join'd the Mirza Mehemet Sultan: and these two princes, having gloriously accomplish'd their designs, destroy'd the common enemys of the empire, and executed Timur's intentions, come also to court, where they had the honor to salute his majesty. Bagdad and all Irac Arabi being brought into subjection to Timur, this conqueror sent the following mandate to all the princes, governors, lords of provinces and towns, and even to the generals of forces, the Cheiks of the tribes and familys of the Turcomans and Ogours.

" You found these countrys without a sovereign; and like players at mell, who finding the ground empty, fling their ball from one side to t'other at their pleasure, you have carry'd your sword wheresoever your ambition hath prompted you, and acted in an arbitrary manner: but now the case is alter'd; for you must submit to our orders, and repenting of what is past, cease to rob on the high-ways, and no longer insult passengers, if you expect that our mercy and justice shou'd extend as far as your estates: but if you obey not this command, know that whatever happens to you for the future in consequence of this refusal, will be thro your own fault, and you will have none to accuse but your selves." Some who receiv'd this order, on serious consideration, came to cast themselves at Timur's feet,

---

' A river into which the Tigris and Euphrates fall; that is, from Courna as far as Basra or Bassora.



Book III. whom he regarded favorably, and gave 'em employments in their own countrys according to their merit and birth: but the others who continu'd in rebellion, by their disobedience brought on themselves the wrath of God, and consequently all the disasters which happen to the most wretched; and these men were at last exterminated, as we shall see hereafter. In the mean while Emir Osman Abbas came from Bagdad with the baggage, and join'd the imperial camp at Harbi.

---

## C H A P. XXXV.

### *Timur marches to Diarbekir*<sup>2</sup>.

WHEN Timur had reduc'd Irac Arabi, he resolv'd to march to the country of Diarbekir; having first committed the government of Bagdad to Coja Mafaoud Sebzuari, and order'd him to maintain peace among the inhabitants; to inform himself of the condition of the poor and infirm; and to shew respect to the Cherifs, the descendents of Mahomet, as well as to the doctors and men of letters; and even to feed the poor as far as he was able. Then he departed for Diarbekir, sending the Mirza Mirancha with many Emirs and troops to conquer other places situate on the Tigris. Timur caus'd a bridge of boats to be built over this river, which he pass'd, and order'd a rumor to be given out, that he was on his return home, that

---

<sup>2</sup> The same as Amed: only that Diarbekir takes in both the town and country; whereas Amed is only the town: it is situate on the Tigris, long. 74. lat. 38.

the enemys might be less on their guard. He Chap. 35.  
chose two men out of every ten in all his army, leaving the rest and the baggage with Osman Behader, ordering him to march slowly: he also gave to Ardechir Tavatchi, the lieutenancy-general of his troops, with the care of his own hord, as well as of proper places and fit ground to encamp in. The Mirza Mehemet Sultan, Emir Cayafeddin Tercan, and Ouchcara Behader, had orders to stay with the baggage, and to take care of it, in conjunction with the commander. Timur embark'd with the greatest diligence; and when he had pass'd by Toouc<sup>3</sup>, and was got to Carcouc<sup>4</sup>, the inhabitants came out to meet him with great ceremony, and sincere marks of respect and obedience: and he gave this place, as a lordship for ever, to Emir Ali Moufeli. Then Czal Mirali Oirat, Pirali, and Gehanghir, ran to cast themselves at the emperor's feet, to assure him of their submission; as did the princes of all these quarters, the governors of towns, especially the prince of Altoun Cupruc: he gave them a handsom reception, and made them presents of belts of gold, magnificent vests, gold, precious stones, and stuffs for their wives and daughters.

Timur departed on the 4th of Sefer 796, for Decemb.  
Arbelle<sup>5</sup>, the prince of which, Cheik Ali, paid 20. 1293.  
his devoirs to him, and treated him magnificently, with all his court. The next day Timur went to encamp on the bank of the river Cuna-

<sup>3</sup> A town in Mesopotamia near Harran.

<sup>4</sup> A town of Mesopotamia, long. 76. 25. lat. 35. 25.

<sup>5</sup> A town of Mesopotamia between Mouffel and Tecri, dependent of Chehrezour, famous for the battel between Alexander and Darius, long. 77. 10. lat. 35. 50.

Book III. zab<sup>6</sup>: two days after he swam over, and arriv'd at Moussel<sup>7</sup>, where he devoutly visited the tombs of the prophets Jonas and Georges<sup>8</sup>, recommending himself to their prayers; he gave ten thousand Dinars Képegghi to each tomb, for the building of magnificent domes over these illustrious bodys: he also distributed much alms among the poor.

In the mean time Mirza Mirancha arriv'd, after having conquer'd the countrys and towns situate on the Tigris, and reduc'd many people to the obedience of Timur, whom he had the honor to salute at Moussel. Yarali, prince of this place, gave a sumptuous banquet to Timur and all the court; at which some one heard this poor prince say, when the victuals was serv'd up to Timur, "Is not this the history of Solomon<sup>9</sup> and the pismire?" He then offer'd his presents on his knees.

## C H A P. XXXVI.

### *Timur marches to Edessa<sup>1</sup>.*

**T**IMUR departed from Moussel for Riha or Edessa, taking Yarali prince of that place for his guide. The Emirs of Tomans rang'd the army in order, advancing by squa-

<sup>6</sup> It falls into the Tigris below Moussel.

<sup>7</sup> A city W. of the Tigris, long. 77. lat. 36. 30.

<sup>8</sup> The Mahometans admit of many prophets unknown to us, as the prophet Georges.

<sup>9</sup> This is a fable of the Mahometans, who believe that Solomon was entertain'd by a pismire.

<sup>1</sup> A town of Mesopotamia, long. 76. lat. 36.

drons. While they were on their march, Sultan Aisa, prince of Merdin<sup>2</sup>, sent an exprest to meet Timur, to offer him his services. Whereupon, at the end of Sefer 796, Timur being near Merdin, sent to this prince to come with expedition to join his army, because he had a design to enter Syria and attack Egypt. Timur having pass'd this place, encamp'd at Raselain<sup>3</sup>, from whence he sent all the army to pillage the enemy's country. The right wing plunder'd the lands subject to Hussein, call'd the black sheep; and the left wing the neighbouring places, from whence they brought away a great many horses, camels, oxen and sheep. When they were return'd loaded with spoils, they decamp'd and march'd to Edessa; the prince of which place, nam'd Ghuzel, had abandon'd that city on the approach of our army, with some of the inhabitants, who took shelter with him on a high mountain. Timur sent Emirs and soldiers in search of 'em, who pillag'd 'em, and took 'em prisoners. Then Timur, accompany'd by the princes his sons, the Nevians, and principal Emirs, made his entry into the city of Edessa, all the houses of which were built with stone. This place is said to have been built by Nembroth\*: and the Mahometans believe that Abraham was cast into the furnace here, the fountain which sprung up in the midst of the fire to quench it, being now to be seen; and round about the fountain the place is black with smoke. Timur and all his court were overjoy'd to see the remains of this miracle, tho they already believ'd it true, by the light of faith. They bath'd in this foun-

Chap. 36.  
Beginning  
of A. D.  
1394.

\* Nimrod.

<sup>2</sup> A town of Mesopotamia, long. 74. lat. 37. 15.

<sup>3</sup> A town of Mesopotamia, where are several springs, from whence the Cabour rises.



Book III. tain, and drank of its water with great devotion.

Timur spent nineteen days in this city in plays and entertainments, giving largesses to the warriors who had expos'd themselves to the greatest dangers for his service. Juneid, a Turcoman prince, had the honor to pay his respects to the emperor in this place, whereby he obtain'd the lives of himself, his family, children, and subjects. The prince of Hafni Keifa<sup>4</sup> had the same honor; for he submitted to Timur, and brought him the keys of his town; he therefore met with a kind reception. The Sultan Aisa prince of Merdin, refus'd to come to court notwithstanding his promise: upon which Timur thinking it not prudent that a rebel shou'd be left in the midst of his dominions, return'd to Merdin the twenty sixth of Rabiulevel 796. Feb. 10. He met the Sultan Ali prince of Arzine<sup>5</sup>, who 1394. cast himself at his feet, and offer'd his service, with magnificent presents. The prince of Batman<sup>6</sup> did the same, and was receiv'd into the number of Timur's subjects. The empresses Tchelpen Mulc Aga, and Dilchadaga, who had been thirty-five days absent from court, and had follow'd the baggage, join'd Timur on the top of a hill. The baggage also arriv'd, having pass'd by Merdin. Timur rang'd his army for battel, and continu'd his march: he encamp'd at Tchumlic, seven leagues from Merdin, where Malek Azzeddin prince of Gezire<sup>7</sup> had the ho-

<sup>4</sup> Town on the Tigris in Mesopotamia, long. 74. 20. lat. 37. 20.

<sup>5</sup> Town of Courdistan.

<sup>6</sup> Town and river which falls into the Tigris, in Courdistan.

<sup>7</sup> A town in Mesopotamia on the Tigris, long. 75. 30. lat. 37. also call'd Geziret Ber Omar.

nor to salute him, making great presents, and submitting to pay tribute. Timur receiv'd him courteously, and permitted him to return home. The Sultan Aisa had no sooner learnt that the emperor was on his march to Merdin, than he came out of that place, to cast himself at his feet, with presents of fine horses, mules, and other curiosities, nine of each sort. He was presented to Timur on the twenty-eighth of Rabiulevel, by the great Emirs: the emperor demanded the cause of his unwillingness to come before him; on which he beg'd pardon for his fault. Timur was willing to pardon him; and to comfort him, gave him a vest. Then he departed from that place, and went to encamp at the foot of the mountain Merdin.

## CHAP. XXXVII.

### *Death of Mirza Omar Cheik, Timur's son.*

THE Mirza Omar Cheik, who among all his royal virtues possess'd a supreme degree of valor and intrepidity, being the head-general of the army under Timur, during the year that he was in the country of Fars, had made himself master of all the provinces and places, which were not subjected to Timur while he march'd thro that country; of which number were the fortresses of Estacar Feree, and Chehriari Ghermesir. He then went into the out-parts of Seirjan, which was besieg'd by many Emirs, who had not yet taken it. But when Timur took up a resolution to make war in Syria and Egypt, and had march'd to Diarbekir, he sent orders to Mirza Omar Cheik to return to court;

Book III. which orders the Mirza receiv'd while he was besieging Seirjan: yet he did not wait till the reduction of the place, but immediately departed, leaving Aidecou Berlas, with Chah Chahan governor of Sistan, and Pirali Selduz, to continue the siege. The Mirza being on his return to Chiraz, equip'd himself for his journey, leaving Sevindgic to govern the kingdom of Persia in his absence. This Emir rebuilt the fortrefs of Cakhender, ruin'd by Chahchuja, while the Mirza with his guards took the road to Choulestan. He pass'd by the country of the Courdes, and arriv'd at a little fort nam'd Cormatou, inhabited by a small number of men. The Mirza got upon an eminence to view the place, where he was shot with an arrow in the Vena-Cava, which kill'd him on the spot. This unforeseen accident had almost made the Mirza Pir Mehemet, and those who accompany'd him, despair, so that they even wish'd their own deaths: but who can escape when fate calls? This misfortune happen'd in the midst of winter in the month of Rabiulevel, 796, which answers to the year of the Hen; the Mirza being but forty years old. After the soldiers had bitterly lamented the death of their prince, they destroy'd with fire and sword all the living creatures they cou'd find in the place, which they raz'd.

Feb. 1394.

When the news of this misfortune came to the imperial camp, which was without the town of Merdin, every one was in so great a consternation, that no one dar'd reveal it: yet as it was improper to keep it secret, after different resolutions they agreed to tell it to the emperor; which they did in his closet, with many sighs and tears. Timur heard all this without being mov'd, only answering in the words of the Alcoran, *We belong to God, and must return to him.*  
Then

Then he gave the kingdom of Fars to Mirza Pir Mehemet son of the deceas'd, tho he was but sixteen years old; and order'd Ouchcara Behader to take care that the corps of the deceas'd Mirza shou'd be carry'd to Chiraz by the Emirs, and that he shou'd accompany 'em. Ouchcara Behader at his arrival at Cormatou signify'd these orders to the Emirs Birdi Bei, and Zirec Yacon, who with their regiments return'd to the camp. And the Mirza Pir Mehemet, with the Emirs of the court of the deceas'd, as also the Emir Ouchara and others, march'd in ceremony from Cormatou to Chiraz with the corps, which was there laid under a dome. Some time after the princesses Sevindgic Cotluc Aga, Bei Mulc Aga, and Melket Aga, the wives of the deceas'd, with his little son the Mirza Eskender, carry'd the body to Kech, where he was inter'd in a mausoleum built by the emperor his father. The cause of this translation was, that Timur had erected at Kech an edifice with several domes, which he design'd for the burying-place of the princes of his household. This fine piece of building was on the south of the tombs of Santon Chamseddin Kellar, and the Emir Tragai, Timur's father; and had on the right and left sepulchres, which the prince had erected, as well for the Mirza Gehanghir, for whom this was principally design'd, as for his other children. God, being willing to honor Timur not only in his life, but also after his death, inspir'd so sincere a love for him in the great Emirs, who seconded him in all his enterprizes, that they all caus'd their burying-places to be erected near this sumptuous monument, according to their quality and birth; and wherever they died, they were, according to their last wills, transported to this place, to testify to posterity the great



Book III.

great love they had for their prince. The Emir Acbougá bore so great a reverence to him, that wherever he sat or lay, he never turn'd his back towards the place where Timur was, and his feet were always stretch'd out that way. All these demonstrations of respect and love in Timur's officers, were not only proofs of his merit, but also mark'd out something divine, which was granted to him above other men.

When the Sultan Aísa, prince of Merdin, came to cast himself at Timur's feet, he submitted to pay the tribute usually impos'd on towns which are taken: upon which the commissarys went into the place to receive these taxes, as did the soldiers to buy what they had occasion for. But a company of young men, who were got together, insulted the soldiers; of which Timur being inform'd, he order'd the Sultan Aísa to come before him, of whom he demanded the cause of this action: and by several questions put to him, they found, that at his coming out of the town he had charg'd his brother and subjects not to deliver up their arms, or surrender the place; and what was found most criminal in his conduct was, that he had order'd 'em not to obey the commands sent to 'em in any letters about receiving a governor; for he had resolv'd to sacrifice his life for their safety. Sultan Aísa being convicted of what was alledg'd against him, orders were given to seize him, and bind him in chains: yet Timur did not think proper to besiege Merdin at that time, because there was not grass enough for the great number of horses, and winter was almost at an end.

Timur decamp'd from before Merdin the eighth of Rabyulakher 796, and march'd towards the mountains, where he encamp'd; and the next day he departed for Espendge. On the third

Feb. 22.  
1394.

third day the Emirs being every one in their posts at the head of their regiments, there hap-  
pen'd a terrible tempest; it lighten'd and thun-  
der'd every where, and such great rains fell, that  
all the tents were full of water, and our men  
were in the utmost confusion; they cou'd not  
stay in the camp for fear of being drown'd; the  
camels as well as the mules were stuck fast, and  
in a short time nothing cou'd be seen but the  
horses ears, because the soil was very soft, and  
caus'd much mud: they suffer'd thus many days,  
whereby a great many beasts were lost. The  
greatest part of the cavalry were oblig'd to dis-  
mount to put their tents in order; but the  
storm still encreasing, they were forc'd to leave  
all their effects, and march on foot. At length  
Timur with his guards, after great fatigues, got  
out of the sloughs, and on the tenth of Jumaziu-  
level 796, encamp'd on ground which was firm  
and full of grass. He immediately sent men to  
inform himself of the condition of the princes  
his sons; and these Mirzas, as well as their  
Emirs, with felts before them, and umbrellas on  
their heads, pass'd the sloughs with their To-  
mans: then they departed from this place for  
old Mouffel.

March 25.  
1394.

Timur had before this time sent to Sultania  
many presents for the princes his sons; and an  
Emir, who had saluted Timur at Thumlic with  
Malec Azzeddin prince of Gezire, was so rash  
and daring as to steal these curiositys, and car-  
ry 'em to Gezire. Malec Azzeddin, notwith-  
standing his promises to be obedient to the em-  
peror's orders, entertain'd this robber, promis'd  
to protect him, and by this action declar'd him-  
self Timur's enemy.

Timur resolving to revenge himself on this  
bold fellow, sent two couriers to Malec, with  
orders

Book III. orders requiring him to seize the Cheik, and to send him to court in fetters, if he was desirous to obtain pardon for the fault he had committed, in protecting him; but if he refus'd to do this, he wou'd bring his cavalry to Gezire, and destroy his country, fortresses, subjects, and domestics, not excepting one. Malec Azzeddin was so blinded by his adverse fortune, that trusting in the strength of his castle, and the Tigris which surrounded it, he refus'd to obey these orders.

---


## C H A P. XXXVIII.

### *Timur marches to Gezire.*

March 8. **O**N the refusal of Malec Azzeddin, Timur departed on the thirteenth of Jumaziulevel, leaving the baggage behind, and crossing the Tigris on floats: he march'd all night, and at break of day, while the enemy were asleep, fell upon 'em with his troops, who pillag'd all the country, took two or three fortresses, and enrich'd themselves with a great quantity of goods and horses.

During this confusion, Malec Azzeddin fell into the hands of one of our soldiers, who took from him many valuable pieces; and not knowing who he was, let him escape.

After Timur had ravag'd the town and country of Gezire, and oblig'd Malec to wander about the desert as a vagabond, he return'd home, repass'd the Tigris, and order'd that all the booty, nay even the sheep, shou'd be conducted to Moussel. Upon which the booty was convey'd over the Tigris in forty barks, and arriv'd

arriv'd at the imperial camp in ten days and Chap. 39.  
ten nights. 

C H A P. XXXIX.

*Timur's second enterprize upon Merdin.*

**W**HEN Timur had taken Gezire, and the fortresses of that province, he held a council with the Emirs, and took care himself of the regulation of the army, providing the infantry with horses. So on the first of Jumaziulakher 796, he began his march towards Merdin, sending the Mirza Mirancha at the head of the vanguard. Timur in his march pillag'd the inhabitants of the plains and mountains, and on the twelfth came in view of Merdin with all his army. Then tents were erected for the soldiers to lie in, and the troops enter'd into the gardens, where they posted themselves to advantage.

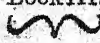
April 15.  
1394.

The next day the princes, Emirs and soldiers of the Tomans, Hezares and Sedes, gave an assault upon the place on the noise of drums, trumpets, kettledrums, the great trumpet Kerrenai, and the terrible cry of Souroun. The main-body placing their bucklers on their heads, fix'd the ladders; and then taking their war-clubs in their hands, and their sabres in their mouths, they scal'd the walls with such fury, that they made the enemy give way. They soon made themselves masters of the town, while the besieg'd fled into the fortress Couh<sup>\*</sup>, which was

<sup>\*</sup> Tho Couh signifies in Persian a mountain, yet it is the name of the fortress of Merdin in particular.

situate



Book III.  situate on the ridge of a mountain, thinking to escape the fury of the conquerors: but our warriors closely pursu'd 'em, taking many girls and boys, besides a great many horses, mules, and camels. Then they posted themselves at the foot of the walls, with design to force the besieg'd, after they had repos'd themselves. There was but one way to get up to the fortress, on the top of which was a fountain sufficient to turn a mill, which falls down the rock. Many poets have describ'd the strength and advantageous situation of this fortress, and among others, Ebni Feraia, who gives it the surname of *Cala Chahba*, that is, the white castle. We attack'd it in the evening, while the enemy cast down abundance of stones; we desisted during night, but the next day our soldiers got upon the mountain level with the walls of the place: here they seiz'd on several of the enemy, who had hid themselves in the caverns of the mountain. The besieg'd observing the fury of our soldiers, and with what vigor they advanc'd, were so dismay'd, that they came with tears and groans to beg quarter; which being told Timur, he retir'd from the foot of the walls, and re-enter'd his camp. Then the besieg'd came out of the place with several presents, nine of a sort, among which were Turcoman horses, of an inestimable value, with large sums of money: they swore to become faithful and obedient, submitting to pay a tribute every year. The present conjunctures were very favorable to the people of Merdin, and appeas'd Timur's fury: for next day an express arriv'd from Sultania from the empress *Serai Mulc Canum*, mother of *Mirza Charoc*, with advice of the birth of a son to this heir of the crown.

C H A P. XL.

*Birth of the Mirza Oluc Bei.*

THE first of Jumaziulevel 796, which answers to the year of the Dog in the Mogul calendar, God was pleas'd to bless the Mirza Charoc with the birth of a son in the castle of Sultania, on whose countenance the splendor of the royal majesty seem'd already to appear. The astrologers took all necessary precautions to assure themselves of the moment of his nativity; and to find the point of his horoscope, that they might observe the centers of all the houses, and fix the situation of the planets and their aspects, they erected the figure of his horoscope. The house of his nativity was Leo, which has the sun for its lord, and which prognosticated the accomplishment of his desires, and his coming to the crown: the sun acquir'd nobleness by means of Aries in which it was at that time, which signify'd that this prince wou'd be learned, and put the sciences in practice. When this news was brought to Timur, he was so overjoy'd, that his fury was abated, and he pardon'd the rashness which the inhabitants of Merdin had been guilty of, and even remitted the taxes they had submitted to pay. Then he gave the principality of the country to Sultan Sale, brother of Sultan Aisa. The next day the drums were beat for their departure, and Timur began his march. The roads were mark'd out for the regiments, and they march'd towards Bosri: the Mirza Mehemet Sultan took the road to Meidan; Timur march'd to Saour, being accompany'd by Mirza Charoc;

April 3.  
1394.

Book III. Charoc; and the Mirza Mirancha went to Jaoufec; the Emirs of Tomans, according to their ranks, took also different ways. Timur, at his arrival at the Tigris near Saour, sent by water the Mirza Mirancha to give necessary orders, as to the regulation of the garisons, and the receiving the revenues from the places conquer'd on the river. Timur cross'd the Tigris, and encamp'd in a delightful meadow, where he staid three days with a design to return to Alatac. But he receiv'd advice from Mirza Mehemet Sultan, and Mirza Mirancha, that the inhabitants of the town of Caratche Coja, which is commonly call'd Hamed, priding themselves in the strength of their walls, refus'd to come before him to testify their obedience.

---

## C H A P. XLI.

*Timur marches to Amed or Hamed<sup>3</sup>, capital of the country of Diarbekir.*

**T**IMUR on information of the insolence of the men of Hamed, sent thither the Emir Gehancha; and on the 23d of Jumazyulakher 796, march'd in person against this city, where he arriv'd in two days and one night. The Tigris was so shallow, that the troops pass'd it on foot: then they encamp'd round the walls of the town, and besieg'd it. The strength of this place consists in the height of its walls,

---

<sup>3</sup> Amed or Hamed, Coratche Coja, Diarbekir, and Caracmit, are the same place, situate on the Tigris in Mesopotamia, long. 74. lat. 38.

which



which are built of free-stone, and in their thickness, which is such, that two horses may pass abreast on 'em. On the top of this wall there is built another, which is also of free-stone, and the height of a man; and on both there is a terrace; on the outside of which there is another stone-wall with battlements. Thus in this great wall there are two storys, so that when it rains, or is exceeding hot or cold, the soldiers may fight in the lowest story. Besides all this, there are high towers distant from each other fifteen cubits. In the middle of the town there are two fountains of rock-water, with many fine gardens: all which have been seen by the author. It is reported the walls have been built four thousand three hundred years, and that the place has never been taken by force of arms. Indeed the Calif Caled, son of Velid, with a detachment of Mahometans during the first progress of religion \*, after having besieged it a long time, entered it by the common-shore, and so made himself master of the town.

\*Mahometanism.

Timur on his encampment without the place, prepared the soldiers to give the assault next morning; and made 'em advance at break of day with their great and little bucklers, to discharge a shower of arrows into the place. The besieged cast down abundance of stones on our men, who nevertheless stood their ground. Osman Behader, who advanced foremost, sapp'd a tower, and made a considerable breach. Seid Coja, notwithstanding the vigorous defence of the besieged, made a second breach. Argouncha did the same, and first entered the town, getting on the top of a tower, where he

\* As likewise by the French translator.



Book III. gave marks of a singular valor. The other Emirs of Tomans also behav'd themselves nobly, every one scaling the walls by different ways: Thus this place, which no conqueror had been able to take in four thousand years before, was carry'd in less than three days by the valor of Timur's soldiers, whose whole life was a continu'd scene of victorys, and prodigious events. They enter'd into this great city, and pillag'd it, setting fire to the houses; while most part of the garison were kill'd in the breaches. The officers began to beat down the walls with axes and other instruments; but as they were built very strong, they work'd a long time without being able to demolish any considerable part; wherefore thinking it wou'd require an age to ruin 'em intirely, they only pull'd down the tops.

May 9.

The last day of Jumaziulakher, Timur decamp'd; and three days after an Uzbek soldier was brought before him, who accus'd Yaic Soufi with fomenting a rebellion, and designing to fly during night. Yaic was arrested, and being question'd by Timur, he confess'd his crime, and discover'd his accomplices. But as he had several times before been convicted of the like crimes, which the emperor had pardon'd; and had receiv'd favors from Timur, who had given him a Toman, and made him the greatest Emire in the left wing of the army, next to the princes of the blood; his judges order'd him and his son to be laid in irons, and all his accomplices to be put to death; which was accordingly executed.

C H A P. XLII.

*Timur returns to Alatac.*

TIMUR took the road to Alatac, and being in the meadow of Mehrouan, the princes and governors of the neighboring places, the chiefs of tribes. and the generals of troops, came from all parts to pay their respects to him, and submit to the taxes impos'd upon 'em. After Timur had pass'd by Miafarekin, Batman and Achma, he mark'd out the roads to the Emirs of Tomans, assigning guides to each. The Mirza Mehemet Sultan took the road to Tche-patchour, with the Emirs of the left-wing. Timur march'd by Sivasler, and continuing his road towards Sahra ' Mouchi, where he encamp'd the 13th of Redgeb with Mirza Charoc, he came to some high mountains, where, tho it was spring time, the snows were so deep, that many horses, mules and camels perish'd. The Mirza Mirancha, with the Emirs of the right wing, join'd the camp at Betlis<sup>a</sup>; which the Mirza Mehemet Sultan did also with the left wing: and the princes of those parts submitted to Timur.

May 25<sup>th</sup>

Hadgi Cheref, prince of Betlis, who was the most sincere and courteous of all the princes of Courdistan, and who had always attach'd himself to Timur's interest, came to salute him; making presents to him of horses, which were

<sup>a</sup> A little town and fine meadow, two days journey in length, at the same distance from Miafarekin, and three from Eclat, long. 74. 30. lat. 39. 30.

<sup>b</sup> A town near the lake of Van, long. 75. 30. lat. 38. 30.

Book III. not only strong, but even swifter than stags and wild-goats; brisk in action, and yet as gentle as lambs: among the rest was a bay-horse, which outrun all Timur's swiftest horses. Timur was pleas'd with Hadgi Cheref, and treated him with the utmost civility, not only confirming him in his former possessions, but even joining other lands to his demesne: and to distinguish this prince above the other princes of Courdistan, he gave him a vest embroider'd with gold, as likewise a belt, and a sword with a gold handle, He then put Yaic Soufi into his hands to be kept prisoner in his castle; and afterwards order'd that the roads shou'd be taken down in writing.

### C H A P. XLIII.

*Timur sends bodys of soldiers into several countrys to enlarge his conquests.*

**T**IMUR order'd Mehemet Dervich Berlas to besiege the castle of Alengic; at whose approach Cara Yousef with his Turcomans fled: whereupon Timur, in council with the princes and Emirs, resolv'd that the troops shou'd march in pursuit of 'em. He made Burhan Aglen general of the horse, ordering him, with Aibadge Aglen, Gehancha Behader, and other Emirs, to decamp from Sahrai Mouch, and pursue these Turcomans to the very utmost, and so deliver the public from the disorders they committed by their robberys.

Then Timur resolv'd to exterminate all the Courdes princes, who refus'd to come before him, according to the orders sent 'em. The  
Mirza

Mirza Mirancha had instructions to give quarter to all who shou'd come and make their submissions to him; to pillage the subjects of them who disobey'd; and afterwards to besiege Alengic. Chap. 43.

Then the emperor having sent Tavachis into all the provinces to get recruits, continu'd his road to Alatac: from which place the empreses and other ladys set out, to join the court, passing by Tauris the 25th of Redgeb. Timur sent the Mirza Charoc to meet 'em, who in four days join'd 'em between Merend and Coi. June 16.

When Timur encamp'd in the neighbourhood of Eclat<sup>a</sup>, Cacan prince of Adeliaouz<sup>b</sup>, one of his old friends, came to pay him his respects, making handsom presents, which Timur receiv'd with pleasure, being persuaded of his sincerity, and zeal in his service. He then gave this prince the lordship of Eclat, with its dependencys, to be enjoy'd by him and his heirs for ever.

The 2d of Chaban, Timur order'd a hunting-match in the plains of Eclat, in which were slain white goats, stags, wild sheep, and many other beasts. After which, it having been eleven months since he had seen the young princes whom he left at Sultania with the baggage, he parted from the army, and rode post to meet 'em, passing by Alichgherd<sup>c</sup>; and encamping that evening at Outch Kilissa, that is,

<sup>a</sup> The Ecba tana of the antient Medes, long. 82. lat. 38.

<sup>b</sup> Capital of lower Armenia or Courdistan, near the lake of Van, long. 76. lat. 39.

<sup>c</sup> A town on the bank of the lake of Van, between Ard-gichet and Eclat.

<sup>d</sup> Or Malaziard, a town of Courdistan.



Book III, the three churches of Alatac<sup>5</sup>. In the morning the empresses and ladys arriv'd with the Mirza Pir Mehemet Gehanghir; and had the honor to salute Timur, and testify their joy at seeing him. But this their pleasure was mixt with bitterness, because of their complements of condolence for the death of the Mirza Omar Cheik; which renew'd the emperor's grief, who only said to 'em, *God gave him to me, and God hath taken him away.* Then Timur sent Temour Coja son of Acboug, with a body of soldiers to assist Mehemet Der-  
 June 24. vic Berlas in the siege of the fortress of Alengic. The 8th of Chaban Timur decamp'd for Aidin, the inhabitants of which place came to assure him of their submission, bringing with 'em all their silver-mony, horses and cattle, stuffs, and provisions; and with tears in their eyes they besought him to grant 'em quarter; which he did, and having blam'd 'em for their remissness in not coming to him before, he restor'd 'em all they had brought. Then he departed for Outch Kilissa, where he arriv'd in one night. Here Taharten, governor of Arzendgian, came to pay his respects to him, and on his knees made him large presents, after having given him assurances of his obedience. Timur being pleas'd with his conduct, accepted of his presents, and treated him with all imaginable honor and civility.

---

<sup>5</sup> A town of Courdistan, where are the three churches of Aichmiadzin; the seat of the patriarch of Armenia, near Nacchivan, long. 77. lat. 40.

## C H A P. XLIV.

*The taking of the town and fortress of Avenic.*

MESSER, son of Cara Mehemet and prince of Avenic, persisting in his design not to come to court, tho he had been summon'd by a circular letter; Timur resolv'd to make himself master of that town: he therefore sent before some troops under the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, and on the 16th of Chaban march'd thither July 2. himself in person, first encamping in the meadow of Alichgherd, from whence, passing by Kiofatac, in two days he arriv'd at Avenic, before the Mirza. The soldiers immediately attack'd the town, and soon made themselves masters of the walls, which they raz'd. Upon this Messer retir'd with his men into the fortress, situate upon a steep and craggy mountain, all the passages of which were block'd up and fortify'd, a wall being also built on one side, on the very edge of the mountain, the gate of which was also fortify'd; so that Messer and his Turcomans resolv'd to defend it to the last.

The Emirs of Tomans, and the bravest men of the army, dismounted, and march'd up as far as the gate, which they assaulted, after having closely invested the castle. At the sound of drums and kettle-drums, the battering-rams were made ready, while the horsemen were mounted as high as the walls, to discharge arrows on those who shou'd be plac'd on the breast-work.

The 19th of Chaban, Messer sent his son and July 5. his lieutenant, with considerable presents, to Timur; to whom they said, That Messer, being

Book III. satisfy'd of his inability to defend himself against the valiant officers of the imperial army, had resolv'd entirely to submit to the emperor's orders, but had not boldness enough to come out of the place; that if Timur wou'd grant him quarter, he wou'd not fail for the future of behaving himself like a faithful servant, in whom he might confide. Timur gave these envoys a handsom reception, presenting each with a vest and a gilt belt; telling 'em that he freely pardon'd Messer, and that he might come out of the place without any fear, since he had promis'd him quarter. The envoys carry'd back this answer to Messer, who had done whatever Timur requir'd, had fortune been favorable to him: but he was so unhappy as to reject the advice given him, and chose to defend himself, discharging on a sudden a whole cloud of arrows on our men, who by that perceiv'd his resolution.

This oblig'd the Emir Taharten to speak to Messer from a place where he cou'd suspect no danger; he demanded of him what unruly passion made him persist in his stubbornness, and commit hostilities against a prince, who had oblig'd the kings of the seven climates of Asia to lay down their arms, being satisfy'd of their inability to defend themselves against him. He told him he wou'd be a self-murderer, if he did not submit to Timur. "Consider, says he, "that all the kings of Asia have laid their "crowns and scepters at this conqueror's feet; "that he has under him two hundred generals, "each of 'em equal in valor to the great Roustem; and that these lords bear so much respect "to him, that they are always ready to sacrifice "their lives in his service. The magnificence "and grandeur of this monarch surpass'd even "that

“ that of Feridon <sup>1</sup>, Gemchi <sup>2</sup>, and the em-  
 “ perors of China. I advise you to consider the  
 “ danger you are in; and not confiding in the  
 “ strength of your walls, to reflect on your  
 “ weakness. Not being able to resist these  
 “ Turks, who make the universe to tremble,  
 “ depart speedily out of the fortrefs. God is  
 “ witness of my fincerity in advising you to  
 “ escape the danger you are in.”

On this advice Messer was in greater perplexity than before; he sent his son, and one of his nearest relations nam'd Setilmich, to the emperor with presents of very beautiful horses. With groans and tears they begg'd pardon, as they had done before. But Timur perceiving Messer had no design to quit the place, caus'd Setilmich and his attendents to be seiz'd.

The 21st of Chaban, the Mirza Mehemet July 7.  
 Sultan rejoin'd the camp with his troops: during this night the soldiers scal'd the mountain as far as the walls, against which they made a vigorous assault, which lasted till day. During this assault an arrow was discharg'd from the place, at the end of which was fasten'd a billet, wherein were contain'd these words: “ Setilmich  
 “ who is with you is one of Messer's nearest  
 “ relations, and being the bravest of all, com-  
 “ mands the garison; if you put him in chains,  
 “ the men within this place, being depriv'd of  
 “ their general, will lose all courage.” This advice was not displeasing, tho it had been already put in execution. Next morning, Timur order'd Messer's son, who was but six years old, to be brought before him: this young prince casting himself on the ground, kiss'd the emperor's

<sup>1</sup> First king of Persia,

<sup>2</sup> Third king of Persia.



Book III. feet, and in submissive terms beg'd pardon for his father, promising that if his highness wou'd grant his father his life, he wou'd go himself and summon him to appear before the throne, with a sword and handkerchief in his hand. Timur being sensibly touch'd with these supplications, said, "Go, my child, I will give your father his life, on condition that he makes his appearance before me." Then he gave the child a vest, and fix'd a collar of gold about his neck, sending him back to Messer with a very obliging letter. When the young prince was introduc'd into the castle in this condition, the besieg'd murmur'd against their prince, and applauded Timur; they very civilly receiv'd the men who were sent to conduct Messer's son, and at their departure gave 'em gold and garments. Yet Messer wou'd not resolve upon going out, tho he had been invited to it with so much civility and complaisance. This oblig'd Timur to order the Emirs of the Tomans to keep fix'd in their respective posts, and make ready the machines for casting stones, and other necessary arms. The assault began, our troops approaching the walls, where they were not less fatigu'd with the stones cast by the besiegers, than these were by our arrows: but at length the stones from our machines ruin'd several houses situate on the top of the mountain. Upon this the mother of Messer came down from the fortress, and throwing her self at Timur's feet, besought him to pardon her son: she represented to him that there was no probability that a hamlet of Turcomans shou'd be able to hold out against the emperor's army; and begg'd of him to consider that this disorder proceeded only from the fear her son was in, which wou'd not let him know his own interest. Next day Timur gave

a magnificent vest to Messer's mother, and told her that if her son wou'd save his life, he must immediately depart out of the place. The empresses Serai Mulc Canum and Touman Aga also gave her vests. When she was return'd to the place, she told her son what Timur had said: but he imprudently continu'd his stubbornness. Timur order'd a hill of earth to be rais'd over-against the walls of the place: whereupon the soldiers went to all places within three days journey of the town to cut down trees, which when they had convey'd to the fortress, Timur order'd Osman Abbas to inspect the workmen in the Meljour (for so they call this sort of work) from evening till morning. When the trees were pil'd one upon another, the spaces were fill'd up with stones and mud mix'd together; and thus the Meljour was finish'd in a short time, and rais'd higher than the fortress. A regiment mounted it, and having prepar'd the machines, discharg'd so great a quantity of stones, that it seem'd as if a mountain had fallen on their heads. The 15th of Ramadan the besieg'd were, thro' scarcity of water, reduc'd to extremity, and oblig'd to turn out the inhabitants, so that there remain'd in the place only the officers and garrison of Messer, who resolv'd to defend themselves to the last. Nevertheless, as the machines, which were continually discharging great stones, ruin'd the houses, and beat down the arches upon the soldiers heads; Messer being astonish'd, sent his lieutenant to implore the assistance of the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who conducted him to the emperor, to whom he made known the disquiet Messer underwent. Timur again promis'd him quarter if he wou'd come to him; and gave the lieutenant a vest at his departure. Notwithstanding all this, Messer

con-

July 30.

Book III. continu'd in his stubborn humour, and resolv'd to defend himself. A company of our brave soldiers remain'd all night in the caverns of the mountain, and in the narrow and almost inaccessible passages. Coja Chahin, one of that number, advanc'd with seven others, and mounting one of the arches, got to the foot of the walls of the place, where he lighted fires to advertise the army. Upon this the Emirs, Argouncha Ectâdgi, and Amancha Cazanedgi, ascended the mountain in the same place, and came to a very narrow arch; where the besieg'd attack'd 'em notwithstanding the darkness of the night. Amancha being dangerously wounded, was constrain'd to return to the camp: while Argouncha and the rest getting upon another arch, which is above three hundred cubits broad, arriv'd at the foot of the walls, which they sapp'd with their hatchets, hammers and pick-axes, fixing at the same time stakes to prop 'em up. The officers and garison, seeing themselves thus put to it, wou'd no longer stand their ground, but abandon'd Messer: some flung themselves off the mountains, while the others exclaim'd against Messer, and in token of submission flung their arms on the ground, and beg'd leave to depart out of the place. Messer, to appease 'em, sent his mother and son to Timur on friday, which was the day of their feast. His mother cast herself at the emperor's feet, and with tears in her eyes begg'd her son's life. Timur, touch'd with her affliction, told her, that for her sake he wou'd grant him his life, but on condition that he came himself to beg pardon; otherwise that after the reduction of the place, he wou'd give order that every one shou'd be slain, whose blood wou'd cry for vengeance against Messer. The mother of Messer

return'd to the castle very much distracted, and gave her son an account of every thing; but he did not go out that day, and wou'd have continu'd to defend himself, if his domestics had not quitted him, and leap'd off the walls. Then seeing himself reduc'd to extremity, he tied a handkerchief about his neck, and took a naked sword in his hand, with which on the second day of the feast he departed out of the fortress of Avenic: he had immediate recourse to the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, whom he besought to intercede for him, promising for the future an entire submission to the emperor, and to lay down his life in his service: he shew'd so many signs of grief in this discourse, that the Mirza was mov'd to compassion, and having comforted him, brought him to Timur. Messer obtain'd favor of the emperor, tho his proceedings had merited another kind of treatment. The arms were taken from the garison, and orders were given that Messer and the Sultan Aisa prince of Merdin shou'd be conducted to Sultania, and that afterwards Messer shou'd be carry'd to Samarcand; which was accordingly done. Timur caress'd those who had given proofs of their valor at the siege of Avenic, and distributed the treasures of Messer among them.

---

C H A P. XLV.

*Timur's return after the taking of Avenic.*

**T**IMUR staid five days at Avenic, to solemnize the feast with plays and banquets; and then putting the castle into the hands of the Emir Atilmich, and leaving some good soldiers



Book III. diers with him, he decamp'd the seventh of  
 ~~~~~ Chawal. Next day his grand visier Seifeddin,  
 Aug. 21. being come from Samarcand, made him rich  
 presents. Timur having inquir'd of him how  
 publick affairs were in grand Tartary, Capchac,  
 Gete, and Turkestan; the Emir told him, there  
 was an entire tranquillity in those parts, where  
 his majesty was lov'd and admir'd by all; and  
 that the news of his conquests having spread as  
 far as Gete, the inhabitants of Cara Coja had  
 abandon'd that kingdom. Timur entertain'd  
 himself in his march with the visier, till they  
 came to the delicious meadow where they were  
 to encamp that night: the variety of flowers  
 in this place charm'd the emperor; and as there  
 was good grazing here for the horses, he easily  
 consented to stay some days. On the seventeenth  
 of Chawal he entertain'd his court with a sumptuous banquet, and the finest musick, which celebrated his conquests. After this regale, Timur confer'd the principality of Arzendgian on Taharten, to whom he gave advice in relation to the government of that place: then having presented him with a crown, and a belt of gold enrich'd with precious stones, he sent him into his own country.

Taharten  
 made  
 prince of  
 Arzend-  
 gian.

During these transactions the Emir Zirec Yakou, who was gone to besiege Aidin with a body of the army, according to Timur's orders, had given such considerable assaults upon that town, that the Emir Bayazid, the prince of it, found he cou'd not hold out against this general: upon which he demanded a truce, promising that as soon as the army shou'd decamp from before the walls, he wou'd go out of the town. Zirec willingly consented to his proposal. Bayazid accordingly went out during the night without Zirec's knowledg, and came straitways to Timur's

mur's camp; he cast himself at the emperor's feet, and presented him with a horse of great price, whose good qualitys he said surpass'd those of Rocche, the horse of Roustem. Timur receiv'd Bayazid with joy, and seem'd pleas'd with his conduct in coming to him; he then confirm'd him in the principality of his town and its dependencys, and call'd home the troops which then block'd it up, whom he prohibited from committing any acts of hostility. He sign'd patents to impower Bayazid to establish a governor in the town of Aidin, whom he sent thither, after having given him a vest, and a belt of gold.

## CHAP. XLVI.

### *Timur sends an army into Georgia.*

ONE of the principal advices of Mahomet to his followers, is, that they shou'd make war on those who profess a different religion from themselves, and sacrifice their own lives for the increase of the faith. This caus'd Timur, who was a strict Mussulman, to send Burhan Aglen, Hadgi Seifeddin Gehancha, and Osman Behader, into Georgia, against Acfica prince of that country, while he himself shou'd march thither by the forests of Alatac with a very numerous army. The Emirs enter'd Georgia, divided themselves into several bodys, and wasted the country of those infidels. Timur before his decampment order'd a hunting; in the evening all this fine country was surrounded, and next morning the circle growing less and less, the meadow was cover'd with game. Timur began the

Book III. the slaughter, and the captains follow'd in their turn; so that there was not one officer who had not for his share at least ten beasts.

After this hunting Timur continu'd his road to Georgia in long marches, seldom dismounting to repose himself; while his troops plunder'd all who were of a different religion, and wou'd not submit to the emperor. As Timur's sole intention in this war was God's glory, he had every day some considerable blessings shower'd on him from heaven. Among other delights, when he arriv'd at Cars<sup>1</sup>, he had the pleasure of encamping in a very agreeable plain, where the green meadows, the infinite number of springs and rivulets of water clear as chrystal, the shady groves, delicious fruit-trees, the variety of ballams and flowers, and the refreshing zephyrs were so charming, that they seem'd to meet together in this place only to receive the greatest emperor of the universe. At this happy place was born to Charoc, a prince, at whose birth all the court was transported with joy, and the whole army made public rejoicings.

---

## C H A P. XLVII.

### *The birth of Ibrahim Sultan, son of Charoc.*

OF all the blessings the Divine-being incessantly bestows upon his creatures, the most learned doctors believe there is none greater than that of the continuation of the species:

---

<sup>1</sup> A town of Georgia, long. 40. 50. lat. 81. 25.

tho it must be confess'd that the favor which God grants to men, of educating their children in virtue, nobleness of mind, and the knowledge of his goodness and almighty power, is infinitely more excellent; because the former is common to the beasts, and the latter places men upon an equality with the angels, renders 'em prophets, and, if one may dare to say it, raises 'em up to divinity it self. God, whom it pleas'd to increase Timur's power, and to furnish him with favorable conjunctures to render himself master of the universe, granted him this blessing in a degree above that bestow'd on other potentates, that so his power might be preserv'd in his august posterity: wherefore on the twenty-sixth of Chawal 796, he bless'd with a son the Mirza Charoc, whose physiognomy prognosticated the height of grandeur to which he shou'd intime arrive; as his horoscope signify'd that he shou'd ascend the throne, and be the heir of his father's crown. Serai Mulc Canum immediately sent this agreeable news to Timur, who testify'd his joy to the court by presents of gold, silver and curious stuffs. All the lords of the court spread gold and precious stones upon the young child: the emperor's children, the queens, the Emirs, and the Nevians, also paid their respects to him; and Timur order'd a sumptuous banquet. That the rejoicings might be general, he elevated many great lords to considerable posts, and deliver'd the poor from their miserys; so that there was scarce one person in the whole empire who had not cause to return thanks to God, for he exempted the people from all sorts of taxes for a whole year. Orders were iss'd out to the most skilful astrologers to come forthwith to draw the horoscope of the young prince. But as Moulla Abdalla Lessan was the

Chap. 47.

Sept. 9.  
1393.



Book III. skilfullest of any present, they chiefly regarded his remarks; which were, that he shou'd be endow'd with all the virtues of a great prince; that from the cradle he shou'd wear a crown, and become the greatest monarch; and that this crown shou'd remain for ever in his family, because the sun was at this time in the tenth house of Leo. Then Timur order'd him to be call'd \*Abraham, Ibrahim \* Sultan, that he might have for his patron that prophet who was God's chief favorite.

## C H A P. XLVIII.

*Solemn rejoicings for the birth of Ibrahim Sultan, son of Charoc.*

NEXT day at sun-rising Timur decamp'd from the meadow of Cars for the plain of Mincgheul', where he had information that the Emirs, who had been sent into Georgia, after having gain'd several battels, conquer'd great part of the country, and taken many strong places from the Christians, were upon their return. Shortly after these Emirs had the honor to salute Timur; and having presented to him \* Georgia, the spoils they had taken in Gurgistan\*, they congratulated him on the birth of the prince his grandson. After this, orders being given for preparations to be made for the banquet, they provided tents and canopys, which they adorn'd with the most magnificent furniture of all Asia. These tents took up two leagues of ground: the

\* A villagenear the mountain Joudi in Georgia.

emperor's was under a canopy sustain'd by forty pillars, and as spacious as a palace; in the middle of it was erected a throne, which was so set off with precious stones, that it resembled the sun. A great number of the most beautiful ladys of Asia were plac'd on each side the throne, with veils of cloth of gold, adorn'd with jewels. At length the emperor came and sat upon the throne with the scepter in his hand, and the crown on his head. The music was plac'd in two rows; the vocal on the right, and the instrumental on the left. Nine Chaoux of a handsome mein, well equip'd, and mounted on Arabian horses, came there in quality of stewards of the feast: who having dismounted, took golden wands in their hands, and march'd in procession before the dishes which were serv'd up. They were follow'd by cup-bearers, having in their hands chrystal bottles, and golden cups; with red wine of Chiraz, white of Mazendran, grey-color'd of Cosrouan, and water as clear as that of the fountain of \*Kiosser. The conversation of charming women, whose hair hung in tresses down to the very ground, did not add a small lustre to this illustrious assembly. The Mirzas, Emirs, Nevians, and foreign lords of Iran and Touran, who came to Timur's court from India even unto Greece, partook of all the diversion which this opportunity cou'd favor 'em with; and to testify their utmost joy, they join'd with the Zagataians in vows for the prosperity of the emperor and the new-born prince. Then Timur chose the princess Touman Aga, who was as wise as Balkis<sup>2</sup>, and as illustrious as Caidasa<sup>3</sup>, to be

\* Fountain in Mahomet's paradise.

<sup>2</sup> Solomon's wife.

<sup>3</sup> Queen of the Amazons, and the Thalestris of Quintus Curtius.

Book III. governess to the young Mirza: on which account she made a magnificent banquet, which lasted eight days, to return thanks to the emperor for the honor he did her. The Emir Osman Abbas was appointed his governor, and his wife Sadekin Aga, a relation of Timur, his nurse. When these entertainments, which lasted three weeks, were finish'd, Timur decamp'd from Mincegheul the eighteenth of Zilcade 796, and went to encamp on the top of a mountain.

## C H A P. XLIX.

*Timur constitutes the Mirza Charoc governor of Samarcand.*

Octob. 8. **T**HE twenty-first of Zilcade Timur confer'd upon the Mirza Charoc the government of Samarcand; he recommended to him entirely to apply himself to the doing acts of justice, and treating his people as his children: in which paternal advices Timur acted with great prudence. Then he embrac'd his son, and having kiss'd his eyes and head, took his leave of him. After Charoc's departure, the empresses Serai Mulc Canum his mother, Touman Aga, and other princesses and ladys of the court, also departed with the baggage for Sultania, at which place they had orders to stay: Charoc having cross'd the Oxus\*, the inhabitants of Transoxiana came as far as the banks of that river to receive him with all the honors due to so illustrious a viceroy: and the ways were lin'd with people from the Gihon as far as Kech. The Emir Solimancha, on advice that the Mirza was near Kech, came to meet him with

\* Gihon.

with great ceremony. \* The city of Samarcand Chap. 50. was adorn'd to grace his entry: the artificers, brought thither from other countrys, strove to excel one another on this occasion in their respective arts. The streets he must pass thro, from the gate of Aserine to the royal palace, were hung with carpets; the gates were adorn'd with pieces of cloth which had been taken from the enemys in the several battels the emperor had won; and the ground was cover'd with satin and scarlet cloth. Charoc made his entry amidst the people's acclamations; and as soon as he was set upon the throne, he order'd (according to the example of the just Anouchirouan \*) the heralds to proclaim that the inhabitants shou'd repair to him for justice against their oppressors. Thus he began to execute the function of viceroy, exactly following his father's advices; so that the contented happy people had cause to thank God for giving 'em so equitable a prince, under whom the weak cou'd live in as great security as the powerful.


\* Cosroes.

## CHAP. L.

### *Timur goes in person to the Georgian war.*

**T**IMUR's zeal for religion made him undertake the war himself in Georgia: wherefore he decamp'd, and enter'd the mountains of those Christians, cutting in pieces all who resisted, and pillaging their country. Then he march'd into the lands of certain Georgians, nam'd Cara Calcanlic, that is, the black buckler, who had fortify'd themselves in castles situate on very steep mountains: by the assistance of hea-



Book III.  ven he vanquish'd these enemys, enter'd their habitations, and plunder'd their goods, after having put 'em all to the sword. He encamp'd some time in their plains to repose his army, and from thence march'd before Teflis<sup>4</sup>; and continuing his road came to the plain of Cheki<sup>5</sup>, where he encamp'd several days. From this place the Emirs Hadgi Seifeddin and Gehancha Behader were sent to pillage the lands of a Georgian prince nam'd Bertaz: they accordingly enter'd this prince's country, made a terrible havoc, and took the inhabitants prisoners, whom they brought to the camp. Timur also sent the Cheik Noureddin, son of Sarbouga, with a considerable body of the army, into other mountains call'd the Conhestan of Georgia; he had no sooner set footing in those parts, than Sedi Ali of Cheki, prince of the house of Erlat, who was governor there, was afraid and fled, abandoning his effects to Noureddin, who having destroy'd his houses, sack'd his country, and pillag'd his goods, return'd to the imperial camp. At this time advice was brought by the way of Chirouan, that the troops of Focatmich Can, having for their generals Ali Aglen, Elias Aglen, Aisa Bei, Yagli Bei, and other great Emirs of Capchac, had pass'd by Derbend, and ravag'd some countrys dependent on Chirouan. Timur having learnt this news by the Uzbeks, said, It was better that the game shou'd run into the nets, than that the hunters shou'd go in search of it; and that there was nothing to fear from the armys of Capchac. Whereupon he immediately departed from Cheki, to

<sup>4</sup> Capital of Georgia, long. 83. lat. 43.

<sup>5</sup> A town between Teflis and the river Cyrus.

meet these rash inhabitants of Capchac, with all his Emirs at the head of their regiments. The enemy, on advice of his march, shamefully fled. Timur, who was then on the banks of the Abcor \*, order'd the quarter-masters to chuse a \* Cyrus. place for passing the winter-season. They pitch'd on the plain of Mahmoudabad †, to which Timur † In Geor. march'd, and encamp'd on the plain of Calin Gon-gia. bed, near the town of Facrabad. Timur, who extremely lov'd the princes his children, sent to Sultania for them, the empresses, and the baggage to come to the imperial camp; which they accordingly did, in their passage crossing the Cyrus. Mirza Mirancha quitted the siege of Alengic, to come to court; and being at Babi<sup>e</sup>, he was inform'd that he had a son born to him, whom the emperor nam'd Aigel. Mirza Pir Mehemet, leaving the Emirs Sevindgic, Hassan Jagadaoul, and Ali Bei son of Aisa, at Chiraz, departed thence, and join'd the imperial camp in the winter-quarters, where they pass'd the season agreeably in plays and feasts, every day furnishing new diversions.

## CHAP. LI.

*Timur marches a second time into Capchac against Tocatmich Can.*

THE winter was no sooner on the decline, than Timur departed for Capchac at the head of a powerful army, to make war on Tocatmich Can, who had not only re-establish'd himself in his kingdom, but was daily making

\* A town of Georgia, long. 79. lat. 41. 50.

Book III. irruptions into Timur's dominions, to repair the loss of his last defeat. Timur distributed among his soldiers several sums out of his treasury; and sent the ladies with the baggage to Sultania, to which place also came Tchelpan Mulc Aga, while the empresses Serai Mulc Canum and Touman Aga, with the young princes, departed for Samarcand. Timur order'd for their convoy Moufa Recmal, to whom he gave the government of Sultania, in concert with Aki Irancha governor of the fortress. The seventh of Jumazinlevel 797, the army began their march in order of battel, with their ensigns display'd: and as their faces were turn'd towards the north-east, the left-wing advanc'd before the rest of the army, which was the manner of the Tartar armys marching<sup>7</sup>. While they were in their winter-quarters, the emperor wrote the following letter to Tocatnich Can.

March 10.  
1395.

" After having given God the thanks which  
 " are due to the governor of the world; I de-  
 " mand of you, whom the devil of pride hath  
 " turn'd from the right way, what is your de-  
 " sign in passing beyond your bounds? who has  
 " put you upon such vain undertakings? Have  
 " you forgot how in the last war your country  
 " and effects were reduc'd to nothing? You  
 " certainly behave your self with great rashness,  
 " since you oppose your own happiness. Is it  
 " possible you can be so ignorant that they who  
 " have testify'd their friendship to me, have  
 " been receiv'd with respect, and drawn great  
 " advantages from the treatys I have made with  
 " 'em, and which I have inviolably observ'd;

<sup>7</sup> Among the Tartars, the left wing is more honorable than the right.

“ while my enemys have not only been under  
“ continual disquiets and fears, but also been  
“ unable to escape my vengeance, tho in the  
“ greatest security? You are acquainted with  
“ my victorys, and are persuaded that peace or  
“ war are equally indifferent to me. You have  
“ experienc’d both my mildness and severity.  
“ When you have read this letter, don’t delay  
“ sending me an answer; but let me know your  
“ resolution, either for war or peace.” This  
letter was carry’d by Chamseddin Almaleghi, a  
a man of great wisdom, experience, and ad-  
dress; who was as well skill’d in contriving any  
noble design, as in executing it with vigor; he  
was perfectly acquainted with the maxims of  
the Tartars of Touran, and with the interests  
of the several princes of that country: and he al-  
ways succeeded in his negotiations by his elo-  
quence, and forcible ways of arguing\*. Because  
of these qualifications he was sent into Capchac,  
where at his arrival he was admitted into the  
presence of Tocatmich Can, to whom he relat-  
ed in a few words the subject of his embassy.  
He afterwards discours’d with Tocatmich in so  
forcible a manner, that the Can was wrought  
upon by it; and being persuaded of the necessity  
of peace, he was about consenting to it, and  
begging pardon of Timur. He had without  
doubt concluded a treaty, if his courtiers and  
generals, whose interest it was to make war,  
had not persuaded him against it, and by that  
means brought ruin upon the state. Tocatmich,  
following the evil sentiments of his courtiers,  
sent a rude and imperious answer to Timur, by  
the hands of Chamseddin, to whom he made a  
present of a vest. This ambassador, at his  
arrival at the court near the river of Sam-  
nour,

\* He was  
afterwards  
Timur’s  
prime mi-  
nister.



Book III. *nour*\*, gave the emperor a detail of his embassy, and presented to him Tocatmich's letter. Timur was enrag'd at the impertinent reasons which he alledg'd in his answer; and at the same time gave orders for the review of his army, which he commanded to get ready with expedition.

## C H A P. LII.

*Timur reviews his army.*

**T**IMUR permitted his soldiers to repose themselves one night, and commanded 'em all to march next day in order of battel to the place of the review; which was on the banks of the Samnour, situate at the foot of mount Alburz, five leagues from the Caspian. The troops having mounted, made the great cry: the Canbol\* of the left wing was at the foot of mount Alburz, and that of the right wing on the banks of the sea; and from one to the other were posted a great number of soldiers upon a line. It is reported that from Genghiz Can's time so numerous and well-equip'd an army had not been seen in those parts: nor do we read of any such in the historys of the kings of Persia. While Timur review'd this formidable army, all the Emirs and principal officers of each Toman on their knees assur'd him of their fidelity, and resolution to sacrifice their lives in his service; for which he encourag'd 'em with the most affecting speeches. After the review, he return'd

\* Van-guard,

\* Different from the river of the same name, which is a branch of the Tic in Capchac.

to the main body; they beat the drums and kettledrums, and founded the Kerrenai and the great bassoon: the soldiers in an instant drew their swords, and turn'd towards the place where the enemy was at that time: after the great cry Souroun, the Emirs of the Tomans, the commanders of thousands, and the centurions took to their respective posts, and march'd in order of battel with the ensigns display'd. When the army had pass'd by Derbend, advice was brought that a hord of Tocatmich's party, call'd Caitagh, was at the foot of mount Alburz. Timur desirous to try his fortune, according to the maxim, That the end of a battel usually succeeds like the beginning, order'd that that hord shou'd be destroy'd. Our Emirs march'd thither immediately, and unexpectedly fell upon these unfortunate persons. They surrounded 'em, so that of the thousand who were there, scarce one escap'd: and after they had pillag'd their houses, they set 'em on fire. At the same time advice was given that an ambassador of Tocatmich, nam'd Ortac, was coming to the camp; but at the sight of so great a number of our troops, he was seiz'd with fear, and immediately return'd to Tocatmich, whom he told, that Timur had sent out a great body of scouts, whom he follow'd in person at the head of a very formidable army. Timur at his arrival at Terki<sup>1</sup>, learnt that Tocatmich's scouts, commanded by Cazantchi, were encamp'd on the banks of the Coi<sup>2</sup>: whereupon he departed with some chosen troops, and having march'd all night, he unexpectedly fell upon the scouts in the morn-

<sup>1</sup> A town of Derbend, long. 85. lat. 43. 30.

<sup>2</sup> A river of Derbend above Terki, which falls into the Caspian.

Book III. ing, who had neither time to prepare for battel, nor means to fly; so that our men made a horrible slaughter of 'em. Timur continu'd his road, and encamp'd on the banks of the Se-vendge<sup>3</sup>, till the remainder of his troops came up to him. In the mean time Tocatmich, at the head of a formidable army, encamp'd on the banks of the Terk<sup>4</sup>. His camp was fortify'd on all sides, and the regiments were surrounded with great bucklers and waggons which serv'd for walls. Timur drew up his army for battel, and march'd to attack Tocatmich; who, either thro fear, or to gain a more advantageous ground, decamp'd, and return'd back with his army, most of his soldiers flinging away their bucklers to fly with the greater expedition. Timur, having found a passage over the Terk, cross'd it with his troops, while Tocatmich arriv'd at the Coura<sup>5</sup>, where he staid to get together the remains of his troops. On the other hand, our army being in want of provisions, march'd along the sides of the river Terk, towards the country of Coulat<sup>6</sup>, where there were provisions in abundance, that our soldiers might be able to pursue the enemys without any obstruction. Our scouts having brought advice that Tocatmich had rally'd his troops, and was marching by the lower part of the river, Timur having resolv'd to give him battel, rang'd his army in order, and always preserving the higher ground,

<sup>3</sup> A river between the Terk and the Coi, which falls into the Caspian.

<sup>4</sup> The same as the Timenki; it arises in mount Alburz, and falls into the Caspian.

<sup>5</sup> A river in Capchac between the Caifou and the Terk: it arises in mount Alburz, and falls into the Caspian.

<sup>6</sup> A fortress in Georgia, near Taous, on the Terk.



wheel'd about towards the part where the enemy advanc'd. Then the two armies encamp'd in sight of each other. Chap. 53.

The twenty-second of Jumaziulakher 797, April. 21. which answers to the year of the Hog, our Tavatchis mark'd out the ground, and the soldiers made entrenchments round the camp, which they fortify'd with stakes and pallisados, inclos'd by a ditch. Then orders were given that every one shou'd remain that night in their respective posts, and be cautious for fear of a surprize. Injunctions were also given that no fire shou'd be made, nor bell sounded, and that no one shou'd speak with a loud voice. This night, Aibadge Aglen, who till that time had faithfully serv'd Timur, went over to the enemy : but the presence or absence of such men is of small importance, seeing no one is hurt but themselves. 1395.

### C H A P. LIII.

#### *Battel between Timur and Tocatmich Can.*

THE morning of the twenty-third of Jumaziulakher 797, the soldiers of both armies began to move, and rais'd a noise which resembled two oceans beating against each other, when agitated by the tempestuous winds. The commanders display'd their standards, and put on their helmets at the first sound of the emperor's kettledrums. Timur form'd his army into seven bodys, placing at the head those who had the title of Behader: the infantry being cover'd with their bucklers, were plac'd before the cavalry. The Mirza Mehemet Sultan commanded the main body, which he strengthen'd with April. 22. 1395.



with the bravest men of the army. Timur again rode before the soldiers, to see whether they had all their arms, which were swords, lances, clubs, bows, and nets to catch men. Then he mounted at the head of twenty-seven chosen companys, who compos'd the body of reserve. The enemy also rang'd his army over-against ours, and display'd his ensigus. The fight began, the great cry was heard on each side, and on a sudden the air was darken'd with arrows, and fill'd with the cries of *dar* or *ghir*, that is, give and slay, hold and take. Then came a man from the left wing, who told Timur, that Condge Aglen, Bicyaroc Aglen, Actao, Daoud Soufi, son-in-law of Tocatmich, and Otourcou, were advanc'd with a considerable detachment from their right wing, to attack our left. Whereupon Timur immediately march'd against 'em with his companys of reserve, and attack'd 'em with so much fury, that they turn'd their backs, and fled. One of the companys Timur had with him pursu'd the enemy, who being arriv'd at their main body, rally'd, and attack'd ours so briskly, that they slew several, and made 'em give ground, and retreat fighting as far as where Timur was. By this means the companys mix'd together, and broke their ranks; and one running away, by his example made several others fly. The enemy were willing to make their advantage of this disorder; for which reason they advanc'd upon our men, as far as where Timur was posted. They boldly attack'd our hero; and notwithstanding his vigorous resistance, accompany'd with a thousand marks of intrepidity, wherein his arrows were all discharg'd, his half-pike broke to shatters, and his sword always in action, they had hemm'd him in, if the Emir Cheik Nouredin, resolv'd to sacrifice his



his life for his master's safety, had not dismounted close by him, with fifty others, who kept off the enemy with their arrows. Mehemed Azad, his brother Alichah, and Touzel Baourchi, made themselves masters of three of the enemy's waggon, which they join'd together just before Timur, to embarrass the enemy, and try to break their ranks. Allahdad came also to Timur's assistance with his faithful company; he got off his horse, and posted himself near the Cheik Noureddin. Hussein Malec Coutchin arriv'd with his club-men; and Zirec Yacou with his. The regiment of guards came also with their ensigns display'd, and the horse-tail erected, and made the great cry: and Ustoui, who advanced with his company, posted himself behind the guards. All these troops having dismounted, stood their ground against the enemy, whose soldiers made continual attacks upon ours, and perform'd actions of the utmost vigor: nevertheless they cou'd not make our infantry give ground, who continually let fly vast showers of arrows. Codadad Hussein, who conducted the vanguard of our left wing, advanced between Conge Aglen, who commanded the enemy's right, and planted himself behind Actao, who boldly fac'd Timur. In the mean time the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, with his recruits, march'd towards the left of the emperor: these brave men rush'd upon the enemy, and with their scimitars and lances routed their right wing, and constrain'd Actao to fly. The Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, who commanded the vanguard of our right wing, found himself more press'd; for the enemy's left, whose vanguard was commanded by the Emirs Aisa Bej and Bacchi Coja, had the advantage of this Emir: they got behind him and inclos'd him; so that despairing of his life, he

Book III. he dismounted with his Toman, and holding his great buckler before him, as all his soldiers did likewise, they put themselves in a posture to discharge their arrows, and defended themselves with an unshaken resolution against the enemy, whose number continually increas'd. But tho they fell upon our men with their lances, scimitars and demi-sabres; yet our soldiers did not cease repulsing 'em with their arrows, slaying the most forward, till Gehancha Behader, who came from another part of the field, seeing the danger Seifeddin was in, fell impetuously with his Toman upon the enemy, who were almost conquerors: the club-men gave way on one side, and the lancers on the other; and the attacks were sustain'd so vigorously that there was a horrible slaughter. When these two great Emirs were join'd against the enemy, they rush'd upon 'em with so much courage and bravery that the vanguard of their left wing gave way. The Mirza Roustem, son of Omar Cheik, rush'd like a thunderbolt with his Toman upon the main body, which he put to flight, after having slain several, and signaliz'd his valor, tho so very young, to the honor of the emperor his father. Yaghlibi Behrin, a favorite and even a relation of Tocarmich Can, being willing to distinguish himself by some great action, advanc'd with a troop of brave men, and haughtily cried out, that he dar'd to the combat the bravest of Timur's army: he even call'd with a loud voice to Osman Behader, and told him that the place he was in was the field of battel, and that he expected him there. This piece of vanity so incens'd Osman, that without waiting any longer, he march'd against him at the head of his Toman: they came to blows, and having broke their sabres, they seiz'd upon their war-clubs and



and poignards, and grappled with one another like two enrag'd lions. The soldiers of their Tomans imitated their chiefs, and fought hand to hand; so that the blood flow'd in this place like a torrent, and never were such furious blows given before. At length Osman Behader had the advantage; he overthrew his enemy, and fell upon his troops with so much fury, that he entirely defeated 'em. All our generals in their respective posts perform'd their duty so well, that after a long obstinate battel, they made the enemy give ground, and put 'em into disorder. Yet we were not certain of the defeat till the flight of Tocatmich Can, who shamefully turn'd his back, with the princes of his blood, that is, of the race of Touchi, the Nevians, or foreign princes dwelling in the kingdom of Capchac, and the Emirs and generals of his troops. Then all our men rally'd, and joining together, fell upon the enemy, loudly crying out, *Victory!* They slew a vast number of 'em, and afterwards hung up a great many of those whom they took alive.

Timur finding himself sure of the victory, got off his horse, and humbly knelt down before God, to return thanks for the assistance he had given him, acknowledging that he had gain'd the victory intirely thro his goodness. The princes the emperor's sons, and the other princes and Emirs, also on their knees congratulated Timur, and cast gold and precious stones upon him. This monarch embrac'd 'em all one after another, loading 'em with praises and thanks. They departed from this place; and when they were come to the bank of the Corai', Timur

---

' A river in Couhestan in Georgia, which falls into the Caspian, north of Terki.



Book III. got an exact information of all who had bravely serv'd the public on this important occasion. He granted great favors to the Emir Cheik Noureddin, who had with so much zeal expos'd his life, to save his prince: he gave him a more honorable and advantageous post than any he had possess'd before, presented him with a horse of great price, a vest of gold brocade, a belt set with precious stones, and besides all this, a hundred thousand Dinars Copeghi. Timur distributed his treasures among the Emirs and captains, who had perform'd extraordinary actions in this battel; and that every one might be contented, he made a general promotion of all the officers of the army.

---

#### C H A P. LIV.

*Timur goes in pursuit of Tocatmich Can, and installs a new Can of Capchac.*

**T**IMUR left with the baggage the great booty taken after this victory; and as the Mirza Mirancha had been wounded in his hand by a fall of his horse before the battel, he order'd this prince to remain behind to be cur'd of his wound; and he left with him, the Emirs Yadghiar Berlas, and Hadgi Seifeddin. Then he march'd at the head of his best troops in pursuit of Tocatmich: but when he was arriv'd at the Volga, this Can having already pass'd it, he staid some time on the bank of the river at a passage call'd Touraton. Then he order'd Coiritchac Aglen, son of Ourous Can, who was an officer of his court, to come before him; he gave him for his household-troops the squadron of brave

brave Uzbeks, who were enroll'd in his service; Chap. 54. he order'd an equipage worthy of a great emperor to be prepar'd for him; he gave him a vest of gold brocade, and a belt of gold: and after having crown'd him emperor of Capchac, and all the empire of Touchi, he made him cross the Volga. This new Can us'd all his endeavors to get together the troops of his nation, which were dispers'd every where, and to govern his new subjects. In the mean while our men closely pursu'd the fugitives as far as Ouкеc<sup>\*</sup>; they slew a great number of those who were in the rear. And as the enemy had our Zagataians behind 'em, and the Volga before 'em, several were made captives, while the others cross'd the river upon floats. Tocatmich seeing himself thus closely pursu'd, abandon'd his effects, houses, and all his possessions, preferring his life before his kingdom; he fled with his most faithful servants, into the unknown and impenetrable forests of Boular<sup>†</sup>. Our army march'd by the west side of the river to the place where it had been in the first campaign of Capchac on the east side, and where it had ravag'd all the country to this very place, which is near the dark ocean, or icy sea. At their return the soldiers pillag'd a great part of Capchac, and brought an immense booty to Timur; as gold, silver, furs of Condoz, rubys and pearls, young boys and girls of great beauty, spotted furs of Vachacs, and even live Vachacs, whose pace is extremely grave tho swift; besides several sorts of animals unknown among the Zagataians.

<sup>\*</sup> The last town of the dependences of Serai, long. 84. lat. 57. in Capchac upon the Volga; between Bulgar and Gerai, and fifteen leagues from each.

<sup>†</sup> Boular is Bulgaria, as far as Siberia, along the river Camal, to the icy sea.



The Mirza Mirancha, and the Emirs who staid behind with the baggage, join'd Timur in a place nam'd Youlucluc Azucluc<sup>†</sup>. And as in this expedition most part of the Emirs of the empire accompany'd Timur, and this prince had a design to advance into the remotest parts of Capchac, that his name might be known in the western kingdoms; he us'd his precautions with regard to the kingdoms he left behind, where there were not Emirs sufficient to guard 'em, on whom he cou'd entirely rely: whereupon he sent to Chiraz the Mirza Pir Mehemet, son of Omar Cheik, with six thousand horse; and to Samarcand the Emir Chamseddin Abbas, with three thousand men, accompany'd by Cayas Eddin Tercan, because he belong'd to his Toman. These Emirs immediately set out; and when they had pass'd Derbend, and were come to Ardebil, they receiv'd news from Tauris, that Cara Yousef had again assembled a troop of Turcomans, with whom he was encamp'd in the neighborhood of Alatac, designing to march to Coi. The Emirs Chamseddin and Cayaseddin continu'd their road towards Samarcand; but the Mirza Pir Mehemet, with the Emirs Aboufaid Berlas, Bekich, Dolet Coja, and Toukel Behader, being come to Tauris, assembled the troops of the neighborhood, and were join'd by the Emirs of the Mirza Miran Chah, who had remain'd at Tauris.

Pir Mehemet receiv'd all the troops he cou'd assemble together, and set out with a resolution to attack the Turcomans. Being arriv'd at Coi, he there join'd Tezic and Jalic, who with their soldiers follow'd the army. Ad-

---

<sup>†</sup> A village in the desert of Astracan.

vice was brought that the scouts of Cara Yousef were in the defile of Caraderra<sup>5</sup>. The Mirza made haste to overtake 'em; and being arriv'd at this defile, the scouts fled towards Cara Yousef, who lay encamp'd at Bend Mahi<sup>6</sup>, to advertize him of the Mirza's approach: which advice made this robber fly. The Mirza pursu'd him, and was join'd at Bend Mahi by Malek Azeddin, a Courde, whom we have before mention'd. They pursu'd him together three days, and encamp'd; they likewise sent Emirs after him, who went as far as Avenic, without being able to join him. Then the Mirza Pir Mehemet departed to return home; he pass'd by Tauris to Sultania, where the princess Canzade gave him a magnificent entertainment and a vest: and he afterwards set out for Chiraz, according to the emperor's orders.

---

C H A P. LV.

*Timur marches into Europe; and pillages the western Capchac, as also Muscovy and Russia.*

AS Timur's courage wou'd not permit him to be satisfy'd with an enterprize, till he had carry'd it to the utmost perfection; so he was not contented with having chas'd Tocatnich Can out of his empire, and having exterminated his army: but the same courage made

---

<sup>5</sup> A defile of mountains, at present the frontiers between Persia and Turkey. The French translator has pass'd 'em.

<sup>6</sup> A little river, where they shut up the fish of the lake of Van, by a countenance in the nature of a sluice. The French translator has cross'd it.



Book III. him take up a resolution to conquer the rest of Asia on that side, and reduce to obedience the nations of these western frontiers. According to this generous sentiment, he enter'd the great desert which leads into Europe, at the river Ouzi, or the Boristhenes. He gave the command of the scouts to the Emir Osman, who being furnish'd with good men for that purpose, march'd before. He found Bikyaroc Aglen at a town nam'd Mankirmen on the Boristhenes, with some other Uzbek Tartars who resided there: he cut almost all of 'em in pieces, and pillag'd their houses, as well as the goods of Bikyaroc, who with a great deal of difficulty sav'd himself with some of his Uzbeks. Bach Temour Aglen and A&ao cross'd the Boristhenes, and fled into the country of Hermedai', the inhabitants of which were their enemys, and did 'em more damage than our men cou'd have done, if they had been pillag'd or made slaves. The Toman of A&ao entirely abandon'd that country, and fled towards the kingdom of Roum in Anatolia, and fix'd it self there in the plains of Isfra Yaca. Timur quitting the country on the Boristhenes, march'd towards Muscovy and grand Russia; he arriv'd at the river Tanais<sup>a</sup>: and the army again overtook Bickyaroc, who had the river before him, and our army behind him. Our soldiers pursu'd him as far as Carasou<sup>b</sup>, a town of grand Russia, which they entirely pillag'd. Bikyaroc finding himself so closely press'd, was constrain'd to abandon his wives and children to the con-

<sup>a</sup> A country between the Boristhenes and the Danube.

<sup>b</sup> Or Don, a river which falls into the Palus Mæotis, near the town of Azac.

<sup>c</sup> A town of Muscovy, otherwise call'd Coreesch, on the frontiers of Poland.

queror, and fly with his eldest son : he was oblig'd to retreat thro' the midst of our troops in the night-time, which he did without being known. The soldiers brought to Timur his wives, children and domestics. The emperor order'd tents to be erected for 'em to lodge in; and after having treated 'em very civilly, he made 'em presents of cattel, horses, stuffs, furniture, and other rarities, and sent 'em back to Bikyaroc. The Mirza Mirancha, Gehancha Behader, and the other Emirs, also went with their Tomans and Hezares to ravage the western countrys. They exterminated Bic Coja, and other Emirs dependent on Capchac, as also the subjects of Oucoul, whom they pillag'd and sack'd. They over-run all the great kingdom of Muscovy, and of Ourousdgic, or little Russia, where they took prodigious droves of cattel, and abundance of women and girls, of all ages, and of an extraordinary beauty and shape. Then Timur went in person to the city of Moscou, capital of grand Russia, which his soldiers pillag'd, as they had done all the neighboring places dependent on it, defeating and cutting in pieces the governors and princes of these parts.

Timur  
marches to  
Moscou,  
and pillages it.

The Russians and Muscovites ne'er beheld their kingdom in so bad a condition, their plains being cover'd with dead bodys. The army enrich'd themselves with whatever precious things they cou'd find in this vast country: as ingots of gold; silver blades; great quantities of flax of Antioch very much esteem'd; cloth wove in Russia with a great deal of skill and nicety; skins of Condoz full of points, of which each soldier had whole mule-loads; vast numbers of fables black as jet, and ermins, with which every person in the army was sufficiently furnish'd, both for his own and his childrens lives; as likewise

skins of Vacach, grey and white, spotted like tygers skins. They also brought away many furs of grey, and skins of red foxes; and an infinite number of young colts, which had not yet been shod. It wou'd be tedious to give a detail of all the booty they obtain'd in this great country.

The Mirza Mehemet Sultan pillag'd all the province subject to Cabendgi Caraoul: he got together all the hords and nations who had serv'd in the enemy's army during the last campaign, as those of Courbouca, Pirlan, Yurkun, and Keladgi, who for fear of falling into the hands of our men wander'd up and down in the desert: he pillag'd their effects, carrying away their wives and children captives.

Timur having got some guides, departed from those quarters towards Baltchimkin<sup>\*</sup> southwards. When he was arriv'd at Azac<sup>†</sup>, situate upon the Tanais, he was join'd by the Mirza Mirancha with his troops, who had been out to make inroads in the enemy's countrys along the bank of the Tanais. Timur order'd that the Mahometans of Azac shou'd be separated from the others, and left at liberty; but that all the other inhabitants of the town shou'd be put to the sword, and their houses pillag'd and burnt.

---

<sup>\*</sup> Baltchimkin is the Palus Mæotis.

<sup>†</sup> A town at the mouth of the Tangais, long. 74. lat. 52. 30.

---

C H A P. LVI.

*Timur makes war in Circassia.*

**T**IMUR departed from Azac for Couban<sup>3</sup>: and as the Circassians had destroy'd their meadows and pasture-grounds between those two towns, a great number of the horses of the army perish'd. They suffer'd this want of forage between seven and eight days: but at length, having pass'd many waters and marshes, they arriv'd at Couban, where they staid some time. Timur sent the Mirza Mehemet Sultan and Mirancha, the Emir Gehancha and other Emirs to make inroads in Circassia, with orders to return as soon as they had made themselves masters of that kingdom. These princes march'd thither with expedition, pillag'd all the goods of the Circassians, brought away an infinite quantity of spoils, and happily return'd to Timur's camp, to whom they gave an account of their expedition.

---

<sup>3</sup> Capital of Circassia, long. 76. lat. 47.



## C H A P. LVII.

*Timur marches to Alburz Couh, or mount Caucasus.*

**T**IMUR being satisfy'd with the conquests of Muscovy and Circassia, return'd with his whole army towards mount Alburz. Then some sorry fellows, who are never wanting in the courts of princes, accus'd the Emir Osman Abbas before Timur, of crimes which had no foundation of truth. These slanders were believ'd by the emperor, who had before suspected the worth and credit of Osman. He order'd that this illustrious Emir shou'd be put to death, who on so many occasions had given indisputable marks of his courage and conduct: but fate is inevitable.

Timur having a design to destroy the infidels, march'd towards Bouraberdi, to attack Buraken, prince of the nation of As: and as there were forests on this road, he order'd 'em to be cut down, in order to make a free passage. There he left the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin with the baggage, and march'd himself to mount Alburz, where he several times attack'd the Georgians, took their castles, and made himself master of their fortify'd defiles, which they imagin'd inaccessible: he put a great number of these Georgians to the sword, after having ruin'd their fortresses, and enrich'd his soldiers with their spoils.

Timur came down from the mountain, very much pleas'd with the advantages he had gain'd. He return'd to his camp, and order'd a feast in joy of his victorys: whereupon the pavilion of

cere-

ceremony was erected, the cords of which were of silk, the pillars of gold, and the pins of silver; the throne, on which he sat with his crown on his head, was of gold enrich'd with precious stones. The princes and great lords were rang'd before him ready to receive his orders. The inside of the tent was sprinkled with an odoriferous rose-water; and then the tables were plac'd, and the meats serv'd up in dishes of gold. After they had done eating<sup>†</sup>, the bottles were unstop'd, and the cups open'd; and every one drank wine of Georgia while they were entertain'd both with vocal and instrumental music. A whole week pass'd in these pleasures, and every one repos'd himself from the fatigues of the campaign. At length Timur made choice of the moment to decamp, which the astrologers found to be most fortunate: which was done at the sound of kettledrums and trumpets.

---

C H A P. LVIII.

*Timur attacks the fortresses of Coula, Taous, and others.*

**T**IMUR again left the body of the army, to march to the fortresses of Coula and Taous in Georgia, which are inhabited by the same people as those in mount Alburz, and who can retreat into strong places situate on steep mountains, the passages to which are almost inaccessible. They are so very steep that one is

---

<sup>†</sup> The Orientals seldom drink till the end of their meals.  
daz-

*Book III.* dazzled in looking upon 'em, and especially that of Taous; which is on the ridge of a high mountain, and is so very high, that the most skilful archer can't hit it with his arrow; which was the reason that no one had ever before attempted the taking of it. Timur order'd the Toman of the Mecrits who were in his army, to come before him: these men are so dextrous in climbing up mountains, that they will go wherever the antilopes or roe-bucks can. He order'd 'em to look out for the most difficult ways to ascend the place. They went all round the mountain; but were not able to find out a single passage to the castle. This very much disquieted Timur: he thought some time upon this enterprize; and at length resolv'd to make a great many high ladders, which might be join'd to one another: in effect they plac'd 'em against the first ridge of the mountain, and some brave men ascended. A troop of the forlorn-hope, who were resolv'd to sacrifice their lives for the success of the action, being upon the top of this ridge, bound themselves with cords; and having fasten'd the ends of the cords to the ridge of the mountain, they came down even with the place, where the besieg'd overwhelm'd 'em with stones. Several on this occasion had the honor of martyrdom: but the others, encourag'd as much by a motive of religion as by the glory of dying in the service of the great Timur, took the place of the slain, and advanc'd with an extraordinary resolution. And as the whole army were continually mounting the ladders, and descending before the place, the besieg'd lost courage, and cou'd not hinder our men from getting to the castle, and making themselves masters of it. They put to the sword all the men of the nation of Ircaoun, who had retir'd  
thither.



thither. The governors of Coula and Taous were also taken and put to death.

From thence the army march'd towards the fortress of Poulad, whither Outarcon, one of the great Emirs of Capchac, was retir'd. Timur in his way staid at a place nam'd Balacan<sup>s</sup>, where there was so great a quantity of hony, that all the soldiers were provided with some. The emperor being willing to make the governor of this place, whose name was also Poulad, own his fault, wrote a letter to him, in which he declar'd, that if he did not send Outarcon to him, who had fled for refuge into his place, he wou'd make him repent of it. Poulad, confiding in the strength of his citadel, slighted the letter, and sent Timur word, that he was in a good fortress, and ready to defend himself if attack'd; that the lord Outarcon having fled for refuge to him, he wou'd not deliver him up, but as long as he had one drop of blood left, he wou'd defend him to the utmost of his power. Timur having receiv'd this answer, was more incens'd, and resolv'd to take the castle at any rate. There was in the way to it a very thick wood, the trees of which grew so very close together, that the wind cou'd scarce find a passage thro it: whereupon he order'd the soldiers to cut down this forest, and make a way thro it; which they accordingly did for the space of three leagues. Then the standards being display'd, they began their march, and arriv'd at the place. The fortress is situate in a very steep defile of mountains; and the inhabitants had stopt up the way which leads to it, and plac'd a

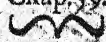
---

<sup>s</sup> A town of Georgia, different from the town of Balacan, also in Georgia.



**Book III.** good guard there, having resolv'd to sacrifice their lives to their master's service, at the incitation of the assassins we have already mention'd. They rashly attack'd our soldiers first; but were soon defeated: our men enter'd the place, and having made themselves masters of it, put to the sword all who were capable of bearing arms. Outarcou fled, and escap'd by the defiles of mount Alburz. Our soldiers pillag'd the goods, and set fire to the houses of these miserable people, making the inhabitants slaves, and carrying away much booty.

Advice being brought that three companys of Georgians, who had fled, were posted on the top of a mountain, Timur march'd immediately against 'em, attack'd 'em, and after their defeat, caus'd 'em all to be cast into the fire. Then the Mirza Mirancha, who commanded the troops of the right wing, acquainted the emperor that he had pursu'd Outarcou, who was got to the very middle of mount Alburz, where he defended himself in a place nam'd Abasa. Timur hereupon immediately departed, enter'd the mount Alburz, and being encamp'd at Abasa, they at length seiz'd on Outarcou, whom they brought before the emperor, who order'd him to be bound, and loaded with chains. The soldiers pillag'd all the habitations of this great and famous mountain, of which they entirely made themselves masters.



C H A P. LIX.


*Timur marches to Semsem\*.*

**T**IMUR march'd against the country of Semsem, where he no sooner appear'd than he became master of all this tract of ground. Mehemet son of Gaiour Can, to whom it belong'd, came to offer it at his feet, and beg the honor for himself and all his subjects to be of the number of his servants : and he was enrol'd among the officers of Timur's court. Several of the inhabitants of these places had fled into the mountain, and maintain'd their ground in steep places, where the foot soldiers were scarce able to stand upon their legs. Timur went himself in search of 'em, and mounted these difficult places; where his soldiers met with some resistance from the enemys, who were at length overcome and brought to Timur, who order'd 'em to be bound, and precipitated from the top of the mountain. There were several places in Georgia, out of which neither horse nor foot cou'd get, without gently sliding down the steep hills. Timur's zeal for the honor of religion, and desire to obtain the rewards promis'd to those who make war for the faith, excited him to hazard his person in all these difficultys, and expose himself to the greatest fatigues. But at length he clear'd this country of the infidels who inhabited it, setting fire to their houses, and destroying their statues and churches. From

---

\* A town and country in mount Alburz in Georgia.

thence

Book III.  thence he march'd to mount Aouhar, which he gave in pillage to his soldiers; and afterwards to Bichkunt<sup>7</sup>, where he gave great largesses to the inhabitants, because they had long since offer'd him their services: he assign'd 'em lordships, with assurances that they need not fear any harm; for he prohibited his soldiers from wronging 'em in the least manner, that every one might see, that what he did was either a recompence for their merits, or a punishment for their crimes. He then march'd on farther, and ravag'd the countrys of the Cossacks of Jutour\*, putting to the sword all these robbers: our soldiers brought from thence great quantitys of goods, and especially of hony, with which this country abounds. From thence they went to Bogaz Com<sup>8</sup>, where the inhabitants of Mamcatou and Cazicomouc came to make their submissions: he gave 'em a handsom reception and largesses, and promis'd 'em his protection against the insults of his soldiers. Then there remain'd unconquer'd in Georgia only the isles, the inhabitants of which confiding in the water which surrounded 'em, had fortify'd themselves, and neglected to come and pay their devoirs to Timur: they were call'd Balcetchian, that is to say, the fishermen. Timur sent troops to reduce 'em: and as it was winter, and the waters were froze above two cubits in thickness, the soldiers pass'd over, and fell upon the houses of these islanders, pillag'd their effects, and carry'd 'em away captive to the imperial camp.

\* In Geor-  
gia.

<sup>7</sup> A town of Georgia, long. 78. lat. 43.

<sup>8</sup> A defile of mountains in Georgia.

---

C H A P. LX.

*Timur marches into Capchac, and pillages the town of Hadgi Tercan', or Astracan.*

**O** M A R Taban, Timur's lieutenant in Hadgi Tercan, having observ'd something treasonable in the conduct of Mahmoudi, who was the Kelanter', caus'd a memorial to be writ of it, which he sent to the emperor, who on that advice took up a resolution to raze the town. He began his march during winter, which was very violent this year, leaving with the baggage the Mirzas Mehemet Sultan and Mirancha, and the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin. He went at the head of his troops thro the snows, and bad ways, caus'd by the severity of the season. Hadgi Tercan is situate on the bank of the Volga: the walls of this town are close to the river, which runs round 'em by means of the ditches of the town, and so serves for a rampart to 'em. And as the river is froze in winter, they usually build a wall of ice as strong as one of brick, upon which they sling water in the night, that the whole may congeal, and become one piece: to which wall they make a gate. The mention of this wall we believe will not displease the reader, because it is so extraordinary. Timur being come near Hadgi Tercan, march'd before the army, and in the morning advanc'd before the town but with few men.

---

' A town of Capchac upon the Volga, long. 87. lat. 47.

' Governor of the town.



Book III. Mahmoudi was oblig'd to go out, to meet the emperor: but Timur caus'd him to be arrested, and sent towards Serai under the conduct of the Mirza Pir Mehemet, and the Emirs Gehancha, Cheik Nouredin, and Coja Acbouga. He then enter'd the place, the inhabitants of which he treated very courteously: but at length he made 'em go out, and after having brought out the men and beasts, and all that was within, he caus'd it to be raz'd. The Mirza Pir Mehemet, having cross'd the Volga which was frozen up, thrust Mahmoudi under the ice, according to the orders they had receiv'd. Afterwards they went to Serai<sup>2</sup>, capital of Capchac, which they set on fire, and reduc'd to ashes, after having made the inhabitants go out. This destruction of Serai was to revenge the insolence of the men of Capchac, who had ruin'd Zendgir Serai<sup>3</sup>, the palace of Sultan Cazan Can, while it was without a governor; and there was ne'er a prince in Transoxiana, Timur being employ'd in the conquest of the kingdoms of Fars and Irac. After Timur had reveng'd himself of these traitors, he return'd to the winter-quarters: and inas-much as the violence of the cold had extremely weaken'd his army, so that most part of the horses perish'd, and the dearth was so great in the camp, that a pound of millet was sold for seventy Dinars Copeghi, an ox's head for a hundred, and a sheeps-head for two hundred and fifty; the emperor order'd that the spoils taken at Hadgi Tercan and Serai shou'd be divided among the soldiers. The Tavatchis had the

---

<sup>2</sup> Capital of Capchac, where the Tartar kings of Decht Barca, which is the Arabian name of Capchac, reside: it is situate on the Volga, long. 81. lat. 52.

<sup>3</sup> Two leagues from Carchi in Transoxiana.

care of this: they gave horses to all those who had none; so that the army was very much eas'd.

C H A P. LXI.

*Timur returns to Capchac.*

AS all the countrys of Capchac, Kefer<sup>s</sup>, and the west and north of the Caspian sea, were reduc'd under Timurs dominion, and his troops had pillag'd and sack'd the towns and provinces of all these climates, as Oukec<sup>o</sup>, Madgiar<sup>\*</sup>, little Russia, Circassia, Bachgorod<sup>?</sup>, \*Hungary, Mekes or Moscow, Azac, Couban, and Alan<sup>o</sup>; and as all the princes of these countrys had given assurances of their obedience, and the enemy who had escap'd with their lives were dispers'd like vagabonds, without either fire or houses: at the beginning of the spring of the year 798 An. Dom. of the Hegira, which answers to the year of 1396. the Moufe, Timur decamp'd from his winter-quarters in the defile of Bougaz Com, march'd into Derbend and Azerbijana; and at the sound of drums, and the acclamations of the soldiers, with the ensigns display'd, he cross'd the river of Terk upon the ice. As soon as he was come to Terki, he left the baggage, rang'd his army in order of battel, and march'd towards Uchendge<sup>?</sup>, to attack the Christians there: he be-

<sup>\*</sup> The province between Corassana and the Caspian sea.

<sup>o</sup> A town of Capchac on the Volga, near Bulgar and Samera; long. 84. lat. 52. 30.

<sup>?</sup> A town of Capchac, long. 90. 35. lat. 58.

<sup>o</sup> A town and country between Georgia and the black sea.

<sup>?</sup> A country of Georgia, north-east of Teflis.

Book III. sieg'd the town, and sent soldiers into all the province to pillage it, and bring away what booty they cou'd. Then Choukel came from Cazi Comouc and Aouscher, with three thousand men, to succour Uchindge, tho Choukel before had wag'd war with 'em. The scouts of the right were the first who perceiv'd their approach, and inform'd the emperor of it, who immediately went to meet 'em at the head of five hundred chosen horse, and found 'em incamp'd behind a hill, having let loose their horses to feed. Timur got upon the hill, that he might take all necessary precautions as to what he observ'd: and when he was come down, he immediately gave a sign to his soldiers to fall upon the enemy, who suspected nothing; which they did with so much fury, that they put almost all to the sword. Mobacher Behader overtook Choukel, who to save his life, got off his horse, and retreated to a mountain. Mobacher let fly an arrow at him, which struck him down, and he was wounded so desperately that he expir'd forthwith: Mobacher cut off his head, and brought it to Timur, with some prisoners, whom Timur thus reproach'd: "Is it possible that you who have had the honor of entering into the Mahometan religion, and have constantly made war on the Christians, shou'd now come to their succour, and abandon your law?" They confess'd their fault, and begg'd for pardon and quarter; which Timur granted, gave 'em a handsom treatment, and presented to 'em vests and other things: he even permitted 'em to return home, that the Kelanters and other grandees of their nation might learn from them the affection he had for those who were strict adherers to the Mahometan religion, and might imitate 'em in coming before

before him to testify their repentance for their fault: he likewise promis'd they shou'd partake of his liberalitys, and that he wou'd confirm 'em in their principalitys. Chap. 61.

Timur was no sooner return'd to his camp, than his soldiers made themselves masters of Uchendge: they put to the sword all the soldiers in the garison, made piles of their bodys, and at length ravag'd all the country. Then the Kelanters of Cazi Comouc and Aouscher, with the Cadis and other great men of the country, came to cast themselves at Timur's feet, confessing their fault, begging forgiveness, and offering their service and obedience. The emperor not only pardon'd 'em, but even honor'd 'em with rich presents, exhorting 'em to make war on the Christians, according to their antient custom, and so procure all the advantages which can be expected to the mussulman religion: he likewise confirm'd 'em in their sovereyntys by letters-patent, and then dismiss'd 'em.

From thence he went to attack the town of Norghes<sup>1</sup>, which he took at the first onset, put the inhabitants to the sword, and order'd the place to be pillag'd and raz'd. Several of the inhabitants were got upon the top of the mountain, and others were retir'd into the clefts and caverns of the rocks. Timur order'd they shou'd be pursu'd, and being overtaken, they were slain with lances and arrows; and our soldiers carry'd away their effects. They afterwards took by assault the towns of Mica, Balou and Dercalou, at the foot of mount Alburz, which they raz'd; and after having pillag'd and seiz'd

---

<sup>1</sup> A town of Georgia or Mingrelia, long. 77. lat. 43.



Book III. on every thing they found in 'em, they return'd laden with spoils to the camp. After all the places and lordships, situate on the north of mount Alburz, were reduc'd to Timur's obedience, he decamp'd, and march'd with all his army, enrich'd with the spoils of Georgia and the northern countrys. Every soldier brought away five or six of the most beautiful young women of the country; and their waggons were fill'd with riches. The inhabitants of Zeregheran, the most skilful workmen in coats of mail, came to meet the emperor, and offer him their services, and presented him with several of the master-pieces of their art: his highness receiv'd 'em with all manner of civility, and was liberal to 'em. Those of the mountain Caitagh also submitted, and came to beg quarter; which Timur granted, and dismiss'd 'em. Then he march'd to Derbend Bacou, that is, the Caspian gates, and caus'd the walls of the fortrefs to be built in a short time.

The news of the emperor's return being spread every where, all the nations came to meet him; and he was receiv'd in triumph, with ensigns display'd. The citys sent to congratulate him upon his conquests with great pomp and ceremony, and made solemn plays and feasts to return thanks to God. The Cheik Ibrahim, prince of Chirouan, who had follow'd the court in this expedition, beg'd leave to set out before the rest. He enter'd into Chaberan, and us'd all his care to prepare a great banquet, to receive the emperor in a magnificent manner: in effect, his regale was splendid, and worthy of the court; and he acquitted himself like a good

---

? A town of Chirouan between Derbend and Chamaki.

servant, and a compleat courtier. From thence Timur march'd to Chamaki<sup>3</sup>, and encamp'd on the bank of the river of Cyrus. The same Cheik Ibrahim, who was also prince of this town, a second time entertain'd the emperor and the court, making presents likewise to Timur, and assuring him of a perfect obedience to his orders. This monarch gave him a vest, and a belt of gold enrich'd with precious stones: he also distributed vests among the relations of this Cheik, and the principal officers of his household: he confirm'd him in the principality of Chirouan and Chamaki, recommended to him the care of the town of Derbend, as a place of importance, and to inform himself of whatever shou'd happen near the frontiers of his principality. Timur spent some days in this fine country in plays and pleasures, cross'd the river of Cyrus, and went to encamp at A&am.

---

## C H A P. LXII.

*Timur gives the government of Azerbaijan to the Mirza Mirancha, who besieges Alengic.*

**T**IMUR having given to the Mirza Mirancha the government of Azerbaijan, and all the country situate between Derbend Bacou and Bagdad, and from Hamadan to the country of the Ottomans; orders were sent by an express to all the officers of this Mirza, who had remain'd in Corassana, to march to Azerbaijan with the Emirs and troops of his household. The

---

<sup>3</sup> Capital of Chirouan, long. 83. lat. 40.

Book III. emperor order'd him to govern this kingdom by himself, and to besiege Alengic. The Mirza, when he came to take his leave of the emperor, was tenderly embrac'd by him, who order'd the Mirza Roustem and Gehancha Behader to accompany him with some good troops, and conduct him as far as Alengic. The Emirs and troops, who were order'd from Corassana, being arriv'd, he fix'd the countrys of Carabagh and Nacchivan, as far as Avenic, for the hords and habitations of the troops of his right wing; and the hords of his left wing were quarter'd in the countrys from Saouc Boulac \* and Derguzin †, as far as Hamadan ‡.

---

### C H A P. LXIII.

*Taking of the town of Seirjan, and the retreat of Behloul to Nehavend.*

WHILE Timur was busy'd in the campaign of Capchac in the most northern countrys, the town of Seirjan suffer'd a siege of three years, wherein Chahchahan with the troops of Sistan were employ'd. This place was so press'd by the besiegers, that all the inhabitants and garison were slain in the assault, except Gouderz the governor and six other persons. At length, the place being deliver'd up, Gouderz was put to death for his obstinacy. Temonke Coutchin, governor of Yezd for Timur, left one of his domestic officers to govern this

---

\* A town between Tauris and Sultania.

† A town near Sulrania.

‡ A town of Irac Agemi, long. 83. lat. 35. 30.

town, whilst himself went to the imperial camp. The Sultan Mehemet, son of Aboufaid Tebesi, with some troops of Corassana, which had formerly been in the service of the princes of Muzaffer, and had staid at Yezd, were so ambitious as to form a design to revolt, tho they had been witnesses of the examples we have mention'd: he slew Temouke's lieutenant, and several of the great officers of Yezd, while others escap'd their hands by flight.

As the lieutenant had amass'd a considerable sum of money, being the revenue of this province for two years, which he had put into the hands of the receiver-general of the finances of Timur's Divan, and besides had bought several loads of stuffs for the empress Serai Mulc Canum, which he had not yet sent to her; this insolent fellow seiz'd upon both the money and stuffs, and made the taylor's of the town come to him, whom he oblig'd to make him several vests of these stuffs, that he might clothe all the rebels who had list'd themselves into his service, among whom he likewise shar'd the money. By this means he assembled an infinite number of robbers and villains, who were come here from all parts, hoping to make their fortune on this occasion. This sedition oblig'd the Mirza Pir Mehemet, son of Omar Cheik, to depart from Chiraz with the Persian army, to put a stop to these disorders, and disperse the rebels. The governors of the neighboring provinces, as Ispahan, Couhestan, and Corassana, also march'd towards Yezd at the head of their troops; and being all assembled without the city, they form'd the siege.

Timur being inform'd of what had happen'd, order'd the Mirza Pir Mehemet, son of Gehanghir, to march thither, with Temour Coja son of Acboug,



bouga, and other Emirs, at the head of his troops. When they were arriv'd there, they receiv'd a second order, that, there not being a sufficient quantity of pasture in the meadows of Yezd to feed all their horses, they shou'd be left in the fresh countrys of Kiochec, and the province of Ispahan, and that the cavalry shou'd march on foot to Yezd, to besiege it. The Mirza and the Emirs departed according to this order; and when they had pass'd by Ispahan, and were come to Yezd, they encamp'd about it and besieg'd it, giving two assaults each day, one in the morning, and the other in the evening.

When Timur was in Capchac, the Emir Mezid Berlas, a courteous, experienc'd, courageous prince, and of irreproachable conduct, was his governor in Nehavend. This lord had an officer nam'd Behloul, a man of a wicked and perverse inclination, and destin'd to an evil end. His natural ingratitude excited him to despise the favors of the Emir Mezid, and treacherously to put him to death: by which means this villain got to be governor of Nehavend, and made preparations for an army, that he might maintain his revolt. Timur being arriv'd at Ardebil, sent the Emir Cheik Nouredin to Chiraz, to receive the revenues of Persia. When this Emir was arriv'd there, the Emir Sevindgic set out thence for the court, according to Timur's orders. Timur departed for Ardebil, and encamp'd at Sultania, where having compassion on the poor Sultan Aisa prince of Merdin, who had then lain in prison for three years, he order'd his chains to be taken off; and after having comforted him, and given him a vest, he pardon'd him, and by letters-patent restor'd him to the principality of Merdin, which he had before enjoy'd; yet not till this prince had solemnly

lemnly sworn before the Emirs who protected him, that he would never fail in his obedience to the emperor, but accompany him in all his wars, and on every occasion give marks of his respect and fidelity: and then he departed to return to Merdin.

Timur after this order'd the Mirza Sultan Hussein, and Codadad Hussein, to march with expedition to Nehavend, with the other Emirs and their troops, to take this place, and destroy the impious Behloul, as a punishment for what he had done. They immediately set out, and Timur went from Sultania to Hamadan. When the Emirs were come to Nehavend, they caus'd the drums to be beat, and the trumpets sound-ed: then they besieg'd the town, which they took with abundance of toil and fatigue, and cut in pieces all the rebels who defended it: the traitor Behloul was seiz'd, and burnt alive.

Timur then order'd the Emirs to march against Toftar, to exterminate the robbers of the highways of Lorestan, and quell the disorders they had committed: he enjoin'd 'em to march along the shores of the Persian gulf, to bring under his obedience all the maritim places as far as the frontiers of Ormus, and return to the court after they had gain'd all these conquests. The Emirs departed from Nehavend according to these orders; and Timur went to encamp in the great plain of Hamadan, with the usual magnificence in his tents and pavilions. This monarch staid there during the whole month of Ramadan, which he spent in prayer, fasting, and the other exercises of piety which good Mussulmans observe: and he was not contented with practising all those things he was oblig'd to, but he perform'd also such acts of devotion as the prophet only advises.

## C H A P. LXIV.

*Timur sends the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to conquer the kingdom of Ormus. The reduction of Yezd.*

WHEN the feast of Bairam was over, the emperor order'd the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to march to Ormus, and make himself master of all the towns near the Persian gulf : and he accordingly departed at the head of the army. Then advice was brought of the reduction of Yezd, which after a long siege was starv'd out, thirty thousand persons dying of famine. Timur pardon'd the inhabitants, because he knew they were not concern'd in the sedition ; but the rebels, who had carry'd on the war, were reduc'd to such extremity, that they were constrain'd to dig a way under the ditch of the town, by which to escape : which our soldiers perceiving, they pursu'd 'em, and near Mehridgerd<sup>7</sup> slew the son of Aboufaid Tebesi, the leader of these seditious persons, some of whom were cut in pieces, and others burnt alive. As Timur prohibited every one from hurting or pillaging the inhabitants ; he was also willing they shou'd pay no tax : and Temouke Coutchin, who had been governor there for Timur before the rebellion, had orders to go into the town with his men, and hinder the soldiers entrance, lest they shou'd insult the inhabitants.

<sup>7</sup> A town of Corassana, otherwise call'd Esferain and Mehredjan, long. 91. 30. lat. 36. 30.

Timur did not demand of 'em even the revenues of the two last years: and as thro the tyranny of the rebels the town of Yezd had been so far ruin'd that there remain'd no shops in it, and most of the houses were empty by the death of the inhabitants, it was now re-establish'd, and in a short time became as flourishing as before the revolt, thro the good conduct of Timur's officers. After the reduction of Yezd, the Mirzas had orders to return to court, and let their troops repair to their quarters. So the Mirza Pir Mehemet Gehanghir return'd by Corassiana to Condoz and Bacalan; the Mirza Pir Mehemet, son of Omar Cheik, came to court; and the troops of the victorious army march'd to their own habitations.

## C H A P. LXV.

### *Timur returns to the seat of his empire.*

THE 2d of Chawal 798, which answers to the year of the Mouse, Timur departed from Hamadan, in order to return to Samarcand. He went to encamp in a delightful meadow, from whence he sent to the Emir Gehancha, with orders to leave the siege of Alengic to the Sultan Sendger, Hadgi Seifeddin, and the troops of the Mirza Mirancha, that he might follow the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to Fars. The same day he gave orders for a hunting: the principal officers of his court and household form'd the great circle, surrounding the plain; and Timur took the diversion of killing the beasts. After the hunting was over, he sent Abdel Malec Caracan, who came from Alengic,

July 30.  
1396.



Book III. to the Mirza Roustem, to summon him to court. Abdel Malec met the Mirza at Sultania: and they came back with expedition. Timur disbanded the whole army, and set out before the baggage, marching in one day as far as others would in three or four. At his arrival at Veramin<sup>s</sup>, the Mirza Roustem paid his respects to him, and was soon after sent to Chiraz to join the Mirza Mehemet Sultan.

Timur at his return from Capchac, had sent the Tavachi Sekizec to the Mirza Charoc at Samarcand, with orders to send the Mirza Aboubecre, the Emir Roustem son of Tagi Bougai Berlas, Pir Ali son of Mamut Chah Yefouri, and other sons of Emirs to the imperial camp, with the five thousand horse which remain'd with him. This Mirza join'd the emperor at Bestan, and was receiv'd with all imaginable caresses. Timur gave him a hundred thousand Dinars Copeghi, with his bay horse call'd Taharten, famous for his largeness and swiftness: he also made presents to all the officers of this prince's household; and then he sent him to his father the Mirza Mirancha at Tauris.

Our conqueror continu'd his road towards Samarcand; and in all the places he pass'd thro, the Emirs, captains and other officers, came to testify their obedience to him, and brought him presents of all sorts of rarities. When he was arriv'd at Corassana, the Emir Acbouga immediately departed from Herat, to pay his devoirs to him; and when he had that honor granted him, he offer'd his presents, and sprinkled upon him gold and precious stones. Timur inform'd

---

<sup>s</sup> A town of Coushestan in the territory of Reja, long. 86. 30. lat. 35. 25.

himself wherever he pass'd of the condition of the people: he aveng'd those who were oppress'd by tyrants, and severely punish'd extortioners as an example to others, putting some of 'em to death. And the better to establish justice, and hinder the great lords from wronging the people, he made the Emir Allahdad inspector-general of Corassana. Chap. 63.

Timur having cross'd the Oxus in boats before Amouye, he enter'd the country of Cuzar, where he found the empresses Sultan Baft Begum, Serai Mulc Canum, Touman Aga, and the other ladys and princesses who came to meet him with prince Charoc; they sprinkled great quantitys of gold and precious stones upon his head, and made their presents to him, which consisted of a thousand horses richly caparison'd, adorn'd with precious stones, and harnesses and bridles of gold; besides a thousand mules all of one colour. They gave thanks to God for the emperor's happy return, who departed from Cuzar and came to Kech, where he lodg'd in the palace of Acserai, which himself had built. He then went to visit the tombs of the Cheik Chamseddin Kelar, and other great Santons of the country, where after his devotions, he gave largesses and alms to the Santons who at that time dwelt there: he enter'd into the tomb of the Emir Tragai his father, that of his dear son the Mirza Gehanghir, and those of his other children and relations, where the whole Alcoran was recited by the readers, to whom he was exceeding liberal. The principal men of the city of Kech, and all the great lords of divers provinces, citys and towns of Transoxiana, came forthwith to court, where they kiss'd the earth before the emperor, congratulated him on his conquests, and wish'd him a long and prosperous

Book III. perous reign. Timur order'd a solemn feast with banquetters and plays in Acserai, to entertain 'em, with all the ceremonys usual on such occasions.

At length Timur departed ; and having pass'd the mountain of Kech, made his entry into Samarcand, which the inhabitants had adorn'd, to receive this great emperor in triumph : on all sides were to be seen garlands of flowers with crowns, amphitheatres, and musicians performing the newest pieces of music to the honor of his majesty. The walls of the houses were hung with carpets, the roofs cover'd with stuffs, and the shops set off with curious pieces. There was a vast multitude of people, and the streets were cover'd with velvet, sattin, silk, and carpets, which the horses trampled under feet. Timur had no sooner made his entry, than he went to visit the sepulchers of the saints, and of learned and illustrious persons : he gave great largesses to the Santons who took care of 'em, and alms to the poor ; and at length he came to his palace, and sat upon the imperial throne. He order'd that for joy at his happy return, a magnificent feast shou'd be made with all manner of diversions, in his own palace of Gheuc Serai, where the greatest splendor and sumptuousness appear'd. All the poets compos'd verses in his praise, and nothing was to be heard but *Long live the emperor*.

After this feast was over, Timur entirely employ'd his time in the government of the state, and regulating the public affairs : he order'd the Cherifs, or descendents of Mahomet, the doctors, the men of letters, and the chief persons belonging to the mosques of his empire, who were then at court, to come before him ; and he gave to every one of 'em, according to his rank



and dignity, some of the booty he had taken in Persia, Media, Hircania, Chaldea, Capchac, Georgia, Muscovy, and the other countrys he had conquer'd since his departure from Samarcand. Then he inform'd himself of the affairs of the people, and did justice to all who made complaints. He order'd the tyrants to be put in chains, and the fork'd branch hung round their necks: and afterwards he put some of 'em to death. He exempted all the subjects of his empire from taxes for three years; and made choice of several men of merit, probity and piety, whom he sent into all his kingdoms, to make an exact inquisition into the public concerns, and render justice to the oppress'd. He also gave great alms to the poor both within and without Samarcand. Thus all his people, either near or at a distance, were so pleas'd with having such an equitable, generous, and valiant emperor, that they justly styl'd his reign the golden age.

Timur pass'd the winter at Samarcand in the palace of Gheuc Serai, with abundance of magnificence, where he exercis'd his justice and liberality. He sent back to Chiraz the Mirza Pir Mehemet, son of Omar Cheik, who was come express to Samarcand to pay his duty to him. In the mean while a son was born to the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who was nam'd Mehemet Ghanghir. Timur order'd feasts, banquets, presents, and the usual compliments to be made in all parts; and he chose Toura Malec Coutchin to carry the agreeable news to the Mirza, the father of the new-born prince, who was then in Persia.



## C H A P. LXVI.

*The building of the palace of Baghi Chemal.*An. Dom.  
1397.April  
1397.

**A**T the beginning of the spring of 799, Timur went to a pleasure-house he had built north of Samarcand, and which for that reason he had nam'd Baghi Chemal, the garden of the north; where his canopy and royal tent were erected. He order'd a palace to be built in this delightful garden, whose beauty and magnificence shou'd be the admiration of the universe; and which shou'd be a proper place for plays and banquets on days of rejoicing. He dedicated this palace to the princess Beghisi Sultan, daughter of the Mirza Mirancha. The architects of Persia and Bagdad, who had been brought into this city, strove to excel each other in their plans, according to the nicest rules of architecture. His highness having made choice of one of these plans, gave orders that the palace should be built according to that model: he commanded the astrologers to come before him, whom he enjoin'd to observe the happy moment for beginning this building. According to their directions, the foundations were laid in the month of Jumaziulakher 799, which answers to the year of the Crocodile, under a fortunate horoscope. The four pavilions of the corners were distributed among the Emirs, who were to inspect the workmen. The most skilful masters in each art were employ'd: and as they were carefully observ'd, the work was soon in its desir'd condition: and Timur was so intent upon his building, that he

he staid here a month and a half, that it might be the sooner finish'd. Care was taken that the angles of the pavilions shou'd be extremely strong and solid: and to that purpose a piece of marble which had been brought from Tauris was plac'd at each corner. The walls were painted in fresco by the most skilful painters from Persia and Bagdad, with so much art and care, that the works of Artenc Mani<sup>9</sup>, several of whose pieces Timur kept in his cabinet of curiosities, were less beautiful than these paintings; and some travellers on seeing 'em, said, that the Neghiar Gané (which is the name of the palace of China, whose magnificence hath pass'd into a proverb) is nothing in comparison of Baghi Chemal. The court of it was pav'd with marble; the bottom of the walls, as well within as without, were cover'd with porcelane: and to crown the work, after the building was finish'd, Timur order'd a royal feast, where, with sumptuous banquets, plays and diversions, this charming retreat was for ever consecrated to the pleasure of the emperors of Zagatai.

---

C H A P. LXVII.

*Timur gives the principality of Corassana to the Mirza Charoc.*

**T**IMUR having several children, whose power, credit and authority approach'd to sovereignty, and who doubtless had in their hearts the ambition of reigning in their turns,

---

<sup>9</sup> The most ancient painter of China and Persia.

Book III. and leaving a crown to their successors, reflected upon the disorders which wou'd arise, if at any time discord shou'd creep in among 'em : but as he foresaw that his august posterity wou'd be perpetuated in the Mirza Charoc his eldest son, he resolv'd to give him during his life the propriety of the kingdom of Corassana, being that of all his kingdoms which by its situation seem'd fittest for the seat of his empire, as it lay in the fourth climate, and was a temperate country in the middle of Asia, between the two empires of Iran and Touran. The feast of the consecration of the palace of Baghi Chermal was a favorable conjuncture for the coronation of the Mirza. Timur was invited thither by this happy occasion : and while most part of the lords of the empire were assembled, he proclaim'd the Mirza Charoc Behader sovereign and absolute prince of the kingdoms of Corassana, Sistan, and Mazendran, as far as to Firouz-couh and the town of Rei. Then he nam'd Emirs and generals of the first rank for the principal posts in the court of this new sovereign, of whom the Emir Soliman Chah was the most considerable, tho the others were also lords of great figure. Each of 'em was plac'd at the head of a company selected out of a Toman ; and all the other Emirs had the honor to send their sons or brothers to accompany this prince. As soon as our conqueror had issu'd out his letters-patent to establish Charoc king of Corassana, he tenderly embrac'd him, kiss'd his eyes and forehead, and dismiss'd him, after having testify'd the sorrow he felt at his absence. The new king took leave of his father, and set out at the head of his army, being accompany'd by the princes his brothers for two days journey, as also by the Emirs and great lords



of the emperor's court, who were no sooner on their return home than this king continu'd his road, and arriv'd at the Oxus near Amouye, where he cross'd it in the month of Chaban 799, which answers to the year of the Crocodile: he encamp'd at Andcoud, where he was entertain'd, as he had been in all the places in his passage, with banquets, plays and dances, which were prepar'd for his honor. When he was at Tchitchestou, the Emir Acbouga, with the Cherifs, the great lords, lawyers, and persons of quality of Herat, came to meet him in ceremony: they offer'd him their presents, and accompany'd him the remainder of his journey. The last day of Chaban he happily came down into the meadow of Kehdestan, situate without the town of Herat, where he chose for his residence the palace of Bagh Zaghhan, which signifies the garden of crows; and there he immediately betook himself to render justice. The governors of Corassana, Mazendran and Sistan, made haste to pay their homage, and make their presents to him: the merchants likewise made theirs, and the artisans carry'd each a specimen of their finest work. The lords of the countrys, and the governors of the citys, brought him the keys of their respective places; and all the sons of sovereigns, after having sent their presents, congratulated him on his coming to the crown. The night of the 21<sup>st</sup> of Zilhadge 799, which answers to the year of the Crocodile, he had a son born to him, who had Gemini for his ascendent; advice of which he immediately sent to the emperor, who nam'd the child Baifancar.

Chap. 67.

June

1399.

Sept. 25.



C H A P. LXVIII.

*Timur stays some time at Kech. Return of the Mirza Mehemet Sultan from the campaign of Fars.*

**I**N the month of Chaban of the same year, Timur departed from Baghi Chermal, pass'd by Rebatyam, and march'd to the town of Sebz: then he went down into the charming meadow of Kech, where he resolv'd to encamp. The abundance of beautiful flowers, its verdure, the freshness of the air, the clearness of its waters, and the fine gravel which appear'd in its gentle streams, and several other charms, invited Timur to stay there some time: but at length he enter'd the town, and lodg'd at Acferai, where he staid during the fast of Ramadan, and the feast of Bairam, after which he departed thence, and ascended a delightful place, nam'd Sultan Artoudge, to spend the summer in. In the mean while the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who by order of the emperor his father had march'd from Chiraz to Ormuz with several Emirs and a good army, return'd to court, after the conquest of many countrys either by himself or lieutenants. He took the road of Darabjerd\*, and Tarom\*, accompany'd by the Emir Gehancha, and having left Seifeddin sick at Kerbal:

\* A town of Fars, where they find salt of all colors; in the middle of the town is a mountain of free-stone, which stands single, not joining any other mountains; it lies in long. 89. 40. lat. 31. 40.

\* A town of Fars near Seirdgian.

so he went to Ormuz, exterminating all those who wou'd not submit. The Mirza Roustem, son of Omar Cheik, march'd thither by the way of Cazon<sup>3</sup> and Fal<sup>4</sup>. Gelalhamid and other Emirs pass'd by Gehrom<sup>5</sup> and Lar<sup>6</sup>. The Emir Aidecou Berlas took the road of Kirman<sup>7</sup> and the province of Kidg<sup>8</sup>, and Mecran<sup>9</sup>, which he pillag'd as far as the plain of Decht Ali. When they were arriv'd at Ormuz, they took at the first onset the seven fortresses, which are as it were the bulwarks of that kingdom, the sovereign of which, Mehemet Chah, was constrain'd to retire to Gerom, where they oblig'd him to make a peace, and pay an annual tribute of six hundred thousand Dinars, which he swore to do. The Mirza left Aidecou and his brother at Girost<sup>1</sup>, to seek the enemy who had hid themselves: and when he was on his return to Chiraz, he march'd towards the country of Courrestan, while the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin return'd to court by the way of Yezd. The day that the Mirza departed, a person nam'd Jumaeddin, native of the mountain of Firouzeoub, who rode at the side of his horse, struck this prince with a knife: but his hour not being yet come, he was only slightly wounded. The villain thinking to save his life, got up to the ridge of the mountain, where he tripp'd as he was running,

<sup>3</sup> A town of Fars, long. 87. lat. 29.

<sup>4</sup> A town of Fars, long. 87. 30. lat. 28. 30.

<sup>5</sup> A town of Fars, long. 89. lat. 28. 30.

<sup>6</sup> A town of Fars, long. 88. 30. lat. 27. 30.

<sup>7</sup> A kingdom, of which Ormuz, Seirjan, Girost, Bam, &c. are citys.

<sup>8</sup> Capital of Mecran.

<sup>9</sup> A kingdom between Kirman and India.

<sup>1</sup> Capital of Kirman, long. 93. lat. 27. 30. four days journey from Ormuz, and two from Seirdgian,

*Book III.* and falling into a precipice, was kill'd. Some of the prince's domestics having pursu'd him to the top of the mountain, perceiv'd the dead body; they cut off his head, and cast it at the Mirza's feet.

This prince, having successfully finish'd his campaign, resolv'd to return to court: he departed by the ways of Ouroudgerd, pass'd by Hamadan, and took the road to Samarcand. Having gone thro Corassiana, he cross'd the Gihon, and had the honor to salute Timur at the summer-palace of Sultan Actouge. Timur tenderly embrac'd him, talk'd with him in relation to what had pass'd in the campaign he was now return'd from, and discover'd a great deal of joy at his arrival. The Mirza fell on his knees to offer his presents; and on this occasion there were banquets and public rejoicings. Then Timur return'd to Samarcand, to which place the princess Canzade also came from Tauris: and when she was near the city, her dear son, the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, went to meet her; she had the pleasure of embracing him, whom she so tenderly lov'd, and had so long desir'd to see with the greatest impatience. As soon as the princess was arriv'd at Samarcand, she went to pay her respects to the emperor in the palace of Bagh Boulend; she presented him with stuffs embroider'd with gold, and Arabian horses with saddles of gold: and to compleat this agreeable present, she gave to each of Timur's sons vests embroider'd with gold.



## C H A P. LXIX.

*Timur demands in marriage for himself the daughter of Kefer Coja Aglen. He celebrates the nuptials of the Mirza Eskender with the princess Beghisi Saltan.*

AS it pleas'd Timur often to tie the sacred knots of marriage, he gave several vests, and other great presents to Chamagehan son of Kefer Coja Aglen, and sent him to his father to demand his sister in marriage: and that this affair might be soon concluded, he order'd Cayafeddin Tercan to accompany him, whom he loaded with presents and riches. He afterwards went to encamp in the plain of Canigheul without Samarcand, the beauty of which surpass'd the cabinets of the Chinese manufactures, for its variety of flowers. The princess Melket Aga arriv'd there from Herat: she offer'd her presents, and after having saluted Timur, made a panegyric on him with her usual eloquence, which inflam'd the whole assembly with zeal and affection for him. The emperor order'd that preparations shou'd be made for a magnificent banquet, at which the princes his sons, the Emirs, the Cherifs and Nevians were present, being conducted by the Chaoux on horseback, with their golden wands in their hands. The empresses also had embroider'd vests, and veils enrich'd with precious stones; and every one appear'd there with an extraordinary splendor and pomp. The music was much finer than on other occasions: for the illustrious Coja



Book III.

Abdel Cader, author of the book of Edonards, and who was the glory of the past ages for his skill in music, was there in person, and presided over the rest. The feast lasted three months; and the princess Beghisi Sultan \* was there marry'd to the Mirza Eskender, according to the laws of the Alcoran, and the maxims of Mahomet. Then the princess Canzade took leave of the emperor to return to Tauris by the way of Bocara.

\* Timur's  
grand-  
daughter.

## C H A P. LXX.

*Timur gives orders for making the garden of Dilencha, and building a stately palace in it.*

An. Dom.  
1397.

**I**N the beginning of the autumn of 799, Timur order'd that at the end of the delightful meadow of Canigheul, a garden shou'd be laid out, whose beauty shou'd surpass all the gardens which had ever yet been in the empire. The astrologers made choice of the hour in which they were to begin it, and the artists prepar'd the plans to regulate the alleys, and the compartments of the parterres. The painters prepar'd some new master-piece, to place in the palace which was to be built there: and the most skilful architects of Asia, who liv'd at Samarcand, laid the foundations on a square plan, each side of which was fifteen hundred cubits; and in the middle of each was a very high gate. The cielings of the palace were adorn'd with flowers of all sorts, in mosaic work. The walls were cover'd with porcelain of Cachan. At each

each of the four corners of the garden a very lofty pavilion was erected, cover'd also with porcelane, with very delicate shadowings, rang'd with admirable art and skill. The parterre of the garden was laid out with perfect symmetry in alleys, square-beds, and little wildernesses of divers figures. Sycomore-trees were planted on the borders of the alleys; and the compartments on all sides fill'd with different sorts of fruit-trees, and others which only bore flowers. When the garden was compleated, Timur gave it the name of Baghi Dilenchâ, that is, the garden which rejoices the heart. In the middle the foundations of the palace, which was three storys high, were laid; the roofs were exceeding lofty: it was adorn'd with all the beautys which cou'd charm the eyes of men: and it was built exceeding strong. It was surrounded with a colonade of marble, which gave it a majestic aspect. As it was customary to dedicate palaces to some lady, Timur dedicated this to his new mistress Tukel Canum, daughter of Kefer Coja Aglen king of the Moguls, whom he had sent Nevians to demand in marriage. The emperor then departed for Tachkunt to meet this princess, cross'd the Sihon, and encamp'd at Dere Ahengheran, near the village of Tchinas, where he pass'd the winter, after having built houses, or rather cottages of reeds by reason of the weather; which sort of houses the Tartars call Couria. Timur went to the village of Issi, to visit the tomb of the Cheik Ahmed Isaici, one of the sons of the Imam Zade Mehemet Hanafi: he caus'd this illustrious sepulcher to be rebuilt, it being partly ruin'd; and he augmented it with a superb edifice, containing a lofty roof, two Minarets, and a dome with four fronts, the south side

side of which was thirty cubits. Near the great dome was another of twelve cubits with an apartment of four bed-chambers, wherein the tomb of the Cheik is; and on the right and left of the dome are two other apartments of four bed-chambers each. Each apartment is thirteen cubits and a half in length, and sixteen in breadth; being design'd to lodge the readers and their familys, with some chambers for strangers who repair thither out of devotion. The walls and the dome were adorn'd with porcelane, and the stone of the sepulcher was of white marble, embellish'd with rich sculptures: and the care of this building was committed to the Moulla Obaidalla Sedre, who got it finish'd in two years.

Timur having perform'd his ordinary acts of piety at this place, distributed large alms among the keepers of the tomb, and the poor who were there. He then departed from that place; and as soon as he was on his return to his camp, advice was brought that the princess Toukel Canum was on her march. All the ladys and Emirs of the court took horse to meet her, according to the orders they had receiv'd: they advanc'd sixteen days journey, and having met her, sprinkled gold and precious stones upon her head. They presented horses to her, and did her all the honor which is due to a great queen; and at each hord they arriv'd at, they made feasts of the utmost magnificence. At length on the third of Rabiulevel of the year of the Hegira 800, they deliver'd this Gaidafa into the hands of our Alexander.

---

<sup>a</sup> Thalestris, queen of the Amazons, who came to seek Alexander, that she might have issue of him. *Quintus Curtius.*



The emperor gave orders for a feast to be prepar'd, to celebrate the marriage: he commanded the grand Mufti, the Cadis, and doctors of the law, to come before him; and they marry'd him to the beautiful princess Toukel Canum according to the mahometan religion. He was at the same time congratulated by the empresses, the princes his sons, the Emirs and Nevians, who sprinkled upon him precious stones and pearls: and the feast lasted several days. Timur gave vests and considerable gratifications to the Nevians and Mogul ladys who accompany'd the new Sultaneſs.

About this time ambassadors arriv'd from Tangouz Can, emperor of Catai\*, with abundance of curious presents. They were introduc'd to their audience by the great Emirs: they offer'd their presents, and after having declar'd the subject of their embassy, and deliver'd their credentials, they had their audience of leave, and return'd home.

The emperor appointed Mehemed Sultan governor of the frontiers of Mogolistan, ordering him to build a fortress at Achira<sup>3</sup>, and use all his care to augment the houses, and have the lands about it sown and cultivated better than they had ever been, and so render this city flourishing. He nam'd for the Mirza's officers, the Emirs Birdi Bei son of Sarbouga, Hadgi Seifeddin, Codadad Hussein, Chamfeddin Abbas, and others, with forty thousand horse. Accordingly they departed, and having pass'd the mountain Coulan<sup>4</sup>, they went

<sup>3</sup> A town of Mogolistan on the frontiers of China.

<sup>4</sup> A mountain at the extremity of Mogolistan towards China.



*Book III.* to encamp at Achira, the lands of which they caus'd to be cultivated.

An. Dom. 800,  
1398.

In the beginning of the spring of the year 800, Timur departed from Tchinas, where he had pass'd the winter, to return to Samarcand: he cross'd the Sihon at Cogende, and happily arriv'd at the seat of his empire, from whence he set out some time after for Kech. On this road there is a mountain about five leagues distant from Samarcand, out of which springs a river. Timur considering that this wou'd be an agreeable place to live in, and that the soil was fit for cultivation, order'd a great garden to be made here, and a pleasure-house built on the top of a rock in the middle of it: which being finish'd, he gave it the name of Taht Carache, the black throne.

Two days after he departed, pass'd by the foot of the mountain, and came to Rebatyam, where the Mirza Charoc, coming from the winter-quarters at Esterabad, had the honor to kiss his hands. Timur gave him a handsom reception, and was well pleas'd to see him. The Mirza made his presents, and sprinkled gold and precious stones upon him. Timur then went to Kech, and encamp'd at Eltchi Balec<sup>s</sup>; where he spent several days in the meadows of that place, which were so much the more agreeable to him, in that they put him in mind of his infancy, and the infinite favors he had receiv'd from the Almighty, who had rais'd him to the highest pitch of grandure that any conqueror ever arriv'd at.

<sup>s</sup> A town in the meadow of Kech.

